



**Expounding the Ultimate Defilement and the Abuse of the Mouthpiece Pertaining  
of the Spoken Word of God and the Way to Effective Witnessing Out of Bondage  
and Sexual Perversion Via Spiritual Warfare, Inner Healing and Deliverance**

by

**HENDRIK PETRUS NAGEL**

*Master of Theology in Ministry (Cum Laude)*

Submitted in accordance with the requirements of the degree of

**PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR**

in

**THEOLOGY**

at

**ST. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY**

PROMOTOR

**PROF DR CONNIE MJ BRAND (DLitt PhD MTh)**

October 2013



## DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY

I, the undersigned, \_\_\_\_\_,  
declare that this dissertation is my original work, compiled and utilized especially to  
fulfil the purposes and objectives of this study and has not been previously submitted  
to any other university for a higher degree. I certify that the publications cited in this  
work have been personally consulted. This dissertation contains no material  
previously published or written by another person, except where due reference has  
been made.

---

Signature

---

Date



## DEDICATION

I would like to dedicate this dissertation to the King of Kings, Jesus Christ, my Lord and Saviour.

Secondly, to the pillar of strength in my life, my dear wife, Faith and my beautiful little boy, Déan, the joy in our lives. Thank you for loving me unconditionally.

Thirdly, to Prof Dr Connie MJ Brand. Thank you for your support and assistance and for seeing in me what I did not see in myself.

-----oOo-----



# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I want to express my deepest appreciation to the following people:

- The Lord, Jesus Christ, for setting me apart and enabling me to pin down the Truth.
- My supervisor, Prof Dr Connie Brand, for her academic input, encouragement, prayers and faithful support.

-----oOo-----





# SUMMARY

## EXPOUNDING THE ULTIMATE DEFILEMENT AND THE ABUSE OF THE MOUTHPIECE PERTAINING TO THE SPOKEN WORD OF GOD AND THE WAY TO EFFECTIVE WITNISING OUT OF BONDAGE AND SEXUAL PERVERSION VIA SPIRITUAL WARFARE, INNERHEALING AND DELIVERANCE

by

HENDRIK PETRUS NAGEL

**SUPERVISOR:** Prof. Dr. Connie M J Brand (DLitt; PhD; MTh)  
**DEGREE:** Philosophiae Doctor in Theology  
**INSTITUTION:** St Clements Private Swiss University

In this day and age there is no topic that is discussed more, argued more or talked about more than “freedom of speech” and the idea that everyone can verbally express himself the way he wishes. Some are of opinion that although it is the twenty first century, people are more confused than ever about what is right and what is wrong, about what is natural and unnatural and about what is deemed true and untrue. The Bible however teaches that “you are snared by the words of your mouth” (Proverbs 6:2.). All things were created by God which includes the mouth as a member of the body. Yet, people are oblivious about the purpose the mouth is intended to be used for other than eating.

God made mankind in His image to have relationship with man. Relation necessitates communication. Communication is not a monologue but a dialogue.<sup>1</sup> Peter 1:16 is a direct command from the Lord “Be ye holy; for I am holy.” What part of this don’t we understand? In Leviticus 11:44 God says; “I am the LORD your God: ‘ye shall’ therefore ‘sanctify yourselves’, and ye shall be holy; for I am holy: neither shall ye defile yourselves.” The phrase “ye shall” includes whatever you do or say with your mouth, let it be a holy and acceptable service unto God.

As believers, God wants to speak through us was the case with the Old and New Testament Prophets and Apostles; hence, God wants to use our mouths as an instrument to convey His will to the world, the unsaved, our colleagues, one's wife, one's children and your neighbour.

Satan however wants the same, to use the mouth as instruments for destruction, sowing seeds of death which often results in the mouth of a person being cursed and in the case of a Christian, this one finds it impossible to speak the Word of God seeing that believers are called to be witnesses for Christ (Matthew 28:19). Satan not only seeks control of the mouth of man, but of the soul of man as well for this is where the battle against sin is won or lost.

Where the enemy has part control of man's soul, resistance, quickly succumbs to an arrow from the army of "Diabolus." At the Fall of Mankind, the promises of Diabolus are familiar; to be enlightened, to enlarge the town of man's soul, to amplify their freedom and in the subtlety of pattern identical to Eden, challenging the prohibition of the Tree of Knowledge itself.

Satan's aim as the deceiver of the whole world (Revelation 12:9) is to wipe out any knowledge and WORDS of the existence of Jesus Christ. If he can prevent believers from witnessing for Christ by silencing their mouths or get them to lie, bringing about discord in the Church, even more souls will be lost. The biggest curse today is found in people's inability to repent of their sins and not forgiving others that sins against us, as such, our Heavenly Father won't forgive our sins.

The message of Mathew 18:18 states that "whatsoever a person/believer shall bind on earth shall be what has been bound in heaven: and whatsoever a person/believer shall loose on earth shall be what has been loosed in heaven". Satan also wants to defile the mouth sexually where people tend to use the mouth as a sex organ. This opens doors for all kinds of curses to come on the mouth when Fellatio is practised.

What does the Bible teach pertaining to the consecration of the mouth? In the Book of Isaiah we read; "And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this has touched your lips; and your iniquity is taken away, and your sin purged (Isaiah 6:7).

Why did God have to sanctify his mouth? He did not feel worthy to speak the pure Words of God as a messenger sent to speak where God wanted to send him for the Lord's Words are "pure as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times" (Psalm 12:6).

To some evil is sweet in their mouths as it hides under the tongue (Job 20:12). The wakeup call pertaining to the mouth and the iniquity of the lips are found in the Book of Revelation 20:8 for the "fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all 'LIARS', shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone."

For God nothing is impossible, to set those free from demonic curses which hinders and prevents them from being effective witnesses for Christ, those to whom the lie became the new truth, to whom the unnatural became the natural in speaking evil and deceit. From the "same mouth proceeds blessing and cursing; my brethren, these things ought not so to be" (James 3:10).

-----oOo-----



## TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated)

DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY.....	iii
DEDICATION.....	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS.....	vii
SUMMARY.....	ix
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	xv
LIST OF FIGURES AND TABLES.....	xxv
PROLEGOMENA.....	1
 <b>CHAPTER 1: AN EXEGETICAL OVERVIEW OF THE ROLE OF THE MOUTH PERTAINING TO THE SPOKEN WORD, THE FORCES BEHIND WORDS, AS WELL AS THE SPIRITUAL REALITY OF WORDS AND THE EFFECT THERE OFF.....</b>	 <b>13</b>
 <b>CHAPTER 2: THE WITNESS OF CHRIST CALLED TO PERSONAL WORK PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF THE MOUTH IN REACHING THE WORLD, THE LOST, THE BACKSLIDDEN AND ONE'S CHILDREN.....</b>	 <b>99</b>
 <b>CHAPTER 3: AN EXEGETICAL OVERVIEW OF SIN, BANDAGE AND SEXUAL PERVERSION IN RELATION TO THE DEFILEMENT AND THE ABUSE OF THE MOUTH, BEING USED AS A SEX ORGAN RENDERING THE CHRISTEN INEFFECTIVE TO PREACH THE WORD OF GOD.....</b>	 <b>161</b>
 <b>CHAPTER 4: DELIVERANCE AND THE ROLE OF THE COUSELLOUR PERTAINING TO THE SANCTIFICATION FO THE MOUTHPIECE OUT OF BONDAGE AND CAPTIVITY TO VERBAL VICTORY.....</b>	 <b>261</b>
 CONCLUSION.....	 321
BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	325
ABBREVIATIONS.....	339
TERMS AND DEFINITIONS.....	341

-----oOo-----






---

**PROLEGOMENA ..... 1**

*Chapter One: An Exegetical Overview of the Role of the Mouth Piece  
Pertaining to the Spoken Word, the Forces Behind Words, as  
well as the Spiritual Reality of Words and the Effect there off*

**1 INTRODUCTION..... 13**

**2 THE SIGNIFICANSE OF LANGUAGE AND THE SPIRITUAL REALITY OF WORDS..... 17**

<b>2.1</b>	<b>The Significance and the Impact of Words.....</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1.1	Signifiers and that What is Signified .....	18
2.1.1.1	Words and there Different Levels of Meaning.....	19
2.2	Negative Signifiers - Affirmations .....	22
2.3	Positive Signifiers - Affirmations .....	23
2.4	Words a Spiritual Reality .....	23
2.4.1	Personal Testimony Pertaining to the Power of Words .....	25
2.5	The Tongue - A World of Iniquity and Immorality.....	27
2.6	Quantum Physics and the Effect of Words Spoken .....	30
2.6.1	The Physical Effect of Words and Prayers, On the Crystalline Structure of Water .....	30
2.7	Words and the Searing of the Conscience .....	32
2.7.1	Man's conscience from a Biblical Perspective .....	33
2.7.1.1	Man can have a "good" conscience .....	33
2.7.1.2	Man can have a "clear" conscience .....	33
2.7.1.3	Man can have a "corrupt" conscience .....	33
2.7.1.4	Man can have a "weak" conscience.....	34
2.7.1.5	Man can have a "seared" conscience .....	34
2.7.2	The Corruption of the Mind and Conscience Pertaining to the Saved and the Unsaved ....	35

---

<b>3</b>	<b>GOD'S WILL FOR MAN PERTAINING TO THE SPOKEN WORD AND THE MOUTH PIECE IN RELATION TO ENLARGING ONES TERRITORY .....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>3.1</b>	<b>The Area God wants to Enlarge in the Life of the Leader .....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>3.2</b>	<b>The Area of the Mouth Piece .....</b>	<b>39</b>
3.2.1	The Confession of the Faith .....	39
<b>3.3</b>	<b>The Significance of the Mouth Pertaining to Sowing Seed of Life or Seed of Death .....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>3.4</b>	<b>The Significance and Power of Spoken Words .....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>THE STRONG MAN AND RELATED SPIRITS PERTAINING TO SPEAKING LIES AND DECEIT .....</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>4.1</b>	<b>Lying, a Complex Phenomenon .....</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>4.2</b>	<b>The Lying Spirit .....</b>	<b>46</b>
4.2.1	Superstition .....	49
4.2.2	Gossiping .....	50
4.2.3	False Teachers .....	51
<b>4.3</b>	<b>Dumb and Deaf Spirit .....</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>4.4</b>	<b>The Perverse Spirit .....</b>	<b>54</b>
4.4.1	Persisting with the Unnatural .....	55
4.4.2	The Battle in Overcoming a Perverse Spirit .....	56
<b>4.5</b>	<b>The Spirit of Heaviness .....</b>	<b>57</b>
4.5.1	This Commandment – Not Hidden – Not Far Off – Not In Heaven .....	59
4.5.2	Turning Your Heart from Ashes Into Beauty .....	59
4.5.3	A Prayer for Overcoming the Spirit of Heaviness .....	60
4.5.4	A Prayer of Conformation .....	61
<b>4.6</b>	<b>The Spirit of Divination and the Familiar Spirit .....</b>	<b>61</b>
4.6.1	One of the Tricks of this Spirit is to Usurp the Reputation of God's Leaders .....	61
4.6.2	Baal a Spirit of Divination .....	63
4.6.3	The Spirit of Divination and the Familiar Spirit - Family .....	63
4.6.4	Some Manifestations of the Spirit of Divination and the Familiar Spirit .....	64
<b>4.7</b>	<b>Spirit of Haughtiness – Pride .....</b>	<b>66</b>
4.7.1	The Robbery .....	67
4.7.2	To Bind The Enemy Pray Proclaim as Follows .....	68
4.7.3	In Addition Pray to Loose the Spirit of God in Your Life .....	69
<b>5</b>	<b>WORDS – YOUR DESTINY AND YOUR SPIRIT .....</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>I'll Advised Words and the Provoked Spirit .....</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Words and the Wounded Spirit .....</b>	<b>72</b>
<b>5.3</b>	<b>Words of Rejection .....</b>	<b>73</b>
<b>5.4</b>	<b>Words of Rejection and Mind Binding Spirits .....</b>	<b>74</b>



<b>6</b>	<b>RUMORS, LIES AND PROPAGANDA.....</b>	<b>75</b>
<b>6.1</b>	<b>How to Combat Rumors, Lies and Propaganda.....</b>	<b>76</b>
<b>6.2</b>	<b>Rumors and False Memories .....</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>6.3</b>	<b>Combat the Rumor – Kill the Lie.....</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>BIBLICAL CASE STUDYS PERTANING TO A LAYING TONGUE.....</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>7.1</b>	<b>Case Studdy No 1: Ananias and Sapphira .....</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>7.2</b>	<b>Case Study No 2: King Johosopha.....</b>	<b>85</b>
<b>7.3</b>	<b>Case Study No 3: Gehazi .....</b>	<b>93</b>
	<b>CONCLUSION.....</b>	<b>96</b>

*Chapter Two: The witness of Christ Called to Personal Work Pertaining to the Role of the Mouth in Reaching the World, the Lost, the Backslidden and one's Children*

<b>1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>EFFECTIVE WITNESSING MEANS TO BE IMMERSED IN CHRIST .....</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>2.1</b>	<b>Witnessing in the Spirit.....</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>2.2</b>	<b>Witnessing and Wrong Thinking .....</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>2.3</b>	<b>Understanding Revelation Through the Language of the Holy Spirit.....</b>	<b>104</b>
<b>2.4</b>	<b>The Frequency of Love Pertaining to Witnessing.....</b>	<b>108</b>
<b>2.5</b>	<b>The DNA of Christ In Our Mouths .....</b>	<b>110</b>
<b>2.6</b>	<b>Immersed in Christ .....</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>2.7</b>	<b>Transformation Through Baptism .....</b>	<b>114</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>THE ROLE OF THE MOUTH OF THE CHRISTIAN IN RELTATION TO BEING A “WITNESS” TO THE UNSAVED, THE SAVED, THE CHURCH AND THE WORLD .....</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>3.1</b>	<b>The Essence of Being a Witness .....</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>3.2</b>	<b>The Relation between being a witness for God Versus Being a Witness in the Commercial Sector .....</b>	<b>120</b>
<b>3.3</b>	<b>Christians Called to be Witnesses.....</b>	<b>121</b>

4	QUALIFICATIONS FOR EFFECTIVE WITNESSING .....	123
5	KEY ASPECTS THAT HINDERS A WITNESS FROM BEING EFFECTIVE .....	124
6	THE PURPOSE OF GOD'S WORD PERTAINING TO BEING A WITNESS .....	124
7	WITNESSING IN THE POWER OF THE HOLY SPIRIT .....	125
8	THE INITIAL EFFECT OF GOD'S WORD .....	126
9	THE SPOKEN WORD AND THE ELLEMENT OF FAITH .....	128
10	THE SPOKEN WORD IN RELATION TO SPIRITUAL NOURISHMENT .....	130
11	THE CHRISTIANS MIRROR OF SPIRITUAL REVELATION .....	131
12	THE ELEMENT OF THE NATURE OF FAITH.....	132
12.1	The Relationship Between Faith, Hope and Love .....	133
12.2	Faith for Salvation Verses Faith for Healing .....	135
12.3	Heart Felt Faith Demonstrated in the Life of Abraham .....	137
12.4	The Relationship Pertaining to Faith and the Physical Senses .....	140
12.5	The Relationship Between Faith and Presumption .....	140
13	SCRIPTURAL FAITH EXPRESSED BY THE CONFESSION OF THE LIPS .....	141
13.1	The Relationship of the Mouthpiece and Christ the High-Priest .....	143
14	THE WORDS OF JESUS A UNIQUELY PENETRATING ARRAY OF LIGHT .....	143
14.1	The Words of Jesus Spoken Into the Heart of Man .....	143
14.2	The Voice of the Shepard .....	144
14.3	Your Word Alone is Enough O Lord.....	145
14.4	The Words of Jesus in the Heart Forever .....	145
14.5	The Comfort in Jesus' Words of Assurance .....	147
14.6	To Know the Voice of the Lamb .....	147
15	HOW DO I WITNESS TO MY CHILDREN? .....	149

<b>16</b>	<b>THE CALL OF JESUS TO OBEDIENCE.....</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>16.1</b>	<b>The Words of Jesus Spoken Into the Heart of Man .....</b>	<b>151</b>
16.1.1	Jesus Applying the Principle of Communication .....	152
16.1.2	Receiving the Kingdom as a Little Child .....	154
<b>17</b>	<b>THE CIRCUMCISION OF THE HEART TO RECEIVE THE FULLNESS OF TRUTH TO LOVE GOD (DEUTERONOMY 30) .....</b>	<b>156</b>
<b>18</b>	<b>CONCLUSION .....</b>	<b>156</b>

*Chapter Three: An Exegetical Overview of Sin, Bondage and Sexual Perversion in Relation to the Defilement and the Abuse of the Mouth, Being Used as a Sex Organ Rendering the Christen Ineffective to Preach the Word of God*

<b>1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>AN OVERVIEW OF THE HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE: PERTAINING TO ENLIGHTENMENT AND REJECTION OF CHRISTIANITY .....</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>THE SIN WAR .....</b>	<b>168</b>
<b>3.1</b>	<b>What is Sin? .....</b>	<b>168</b>
3.1.1	Sin – The Medium of Destruction – At War With Righteousness .....	171
3.1.2	Sin a Multidimensional War.....	172
3.1.2.1	Sin is Personal .....	173
3.1.2.2	Sin is Social: It Comes from Without.....	175
3.1.2.3	Sin is Supernatural, It Comes from Above.....	176
<b>3.2</b>	<b>The Doctrine of Sin.....</b>	<b>177</b>
3.2.1	The Fact of Sin .....	177
3.2.1.1	Sin in the Old Testament.....	178
3.2.1.2	Sin in the New Testament.....	178
<b>3.3</b>	<b>Scripture and the Universality of Sin .....</b>	<b>180</b>
<b>3.4</b>	<b>Mankind's Inheritance of Sin.....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>3.5</b>	<b>The Origin of Sin.....</b>	<b>183</b>
<b>3.6</b>	<b>Sin and the Occult Word.....</b>	<b>184</b>
<b>3.7</b>	<b>The Word of God, Sin and the Heart of Man .....</b>	<b>187</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>SEXUAL SIN AND THE OUTFLOW THEREOF .....</b>	<b>190</b>
<b>4.1</b>	<b>Jezebelic Mothers and Ahab Fathers .....</b>	<b>190</b>
4.1.1	The Ear Gate.....	190
<b>4.2</b>	<b>Gossip and Criticism as Gates to Sexual Perversion.....</b>	<b>193</b>

<b>4.3</b>	<b>Oral Sex .....</b>	<b>195</b>
4.3.1	The Curse of Fellatio .....	195
<b>4.4</b>	<b>Masturbation .....</b>	<b>197</b>
<b>4.5</b>	<b>Pornography and Addiction .....</b>	<b>197</b>
4.5.1	Pornography and the Mouth .....	199
4.5.2	Pornography and Addiction .....	199
<b>4.6</b>	<b>The Bastard Curse.....</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>4.7</b>	<b>Incest, rape or molestation.....</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>4.8</b>	<b>Fornication .....</b>	<b>203</b>
<b>4.9</b>	<b>Adultery .....</b>	<b>203</b>
<b>4.10</b>	<b>Sodomy .....</b>	<b>204</b>
<b>4.11</b>	<b>Prostitution .....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>4.12</b>	<b>Occult Sex and Sex Orgies.....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>4.13</b>	<b>Bestiality n .....</b>	<b>206</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>AN HISTORRAL AND GENERAL OVERVIEW OF SEXUAL STRONGHOLDS.....</b>	<b>206</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>Strongholds and the Ruling Spirits .....</b>	<b>206</b>
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Spiritual Authority and the Braking of Strongholds .....</b>	<b>208</b>
5.2.1	Definition of Authority .....	208
5.2.2	Etymology of the Word Authority .....	209
<b>6</b>	<b>BABYLON – SATAN'S EMPIRE .....</b>	<b>210</b>
<b>6.1</b>	<b>The Spirit of the Antichrist .....</b>	<b>210</b>
<b>6.2</b>	<b>Satan and The Spirit of Mind Control .....</b>	<b>211</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>THE JEZEBEL SPIRIT .....</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>7.1</b>	<b>The Spirit of Whoredom: A Live and Well in This Day and Age .....</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>7.2</b>	<b>Satan Operating through the Jezebel Spirit .....</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>7.3</b>	<b>Exposing the Jezebel Spirit.....</b>	<b>213</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>THE BATTLE FOR THE SOUL PERTAINING TO SOUL TIES AND SPIRITUAL WARFARE..</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>8.1</b>	<b>The Inter-Relationship Between Body, Spirit and Soul .....</b>	<b>215</b>
<b>8.2</b>	<b>What is a Soul Tie?.....</b>	<b>218</b>
8.2.1	The Battle for Captivity and Release of the Soul .....	220
8.2.1.1	Man's Thoughts, the First Aspect Pertaining to the Battle off the Soul .....	221
8.2.1.2	Temptation, the Second Aspect Pertaining to the Battle off the Soul .....	222
8.2.2	Soul Ties Through Sexual Activities .....	223

8.2.3	Regions of Captivity and the Call to Spiritual Warfare .....	225
8.2.4	The Strategy for Spiritual Warfare .....	230
<b>9</b>	<b>SEDUCTION OF CHRISTIAN MEN AND LEADERSHIP .....</b>	<b>231</b>
9.1	The Fall of a General and the Spirit of Error .....	231
9.2	Sex, Sensuality and Demons Related to Sexual Sin.....	235
9.2.1	The Bondage Pertaining to the Spirit of Whoredom .....	236
9.2.2	Asmodee and the Spiritual Marriage.....	237
9.2.3	The Spirit of Perversion.....	239
9.2.4	Water Spirits.....	241
<b>10</b>	<b>SATAN AND SEXUAL PERVERSION .....</b>	<b>241</b>
10.1	The Shadow Pertaining to the Dark Side of Persona .....	241
10.2	The Systematic Promotion of Sexual Deviance .....	245
10.3	The Goddess.....	248
10.4	The Identity of the Goddess .....	250
10.4.1	The Goddess of Witchcraft.....	252
10.4.2	Kali the Mother Goddess.....	252
10.5	Sex and Magic.....	253
10.6	Kundalini and Holy Sex.....	254
10.7	Kundalini Awakening .....	255
10.7.1	Shaktism and the Kundalini Awakening .....	256
<b>11</b>	<b>CONCLUSION .....</b>	<b>258</b>

*Chapter Four: Deliverance and the Role of the Counsellour Pertaining to the Sanctification of the Mouthpiece Out of Bondage and Captivity to Verbal Victory*

<b>1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>260</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>JEHOVAH RAPHE – THE GOD THAT HEALS.....</b>	<b>263</b>
2.1	Lord Do Not Delay? .....	264
2.1.1	One in Need of Deliverance and Inner Healing .....	265
2.1.1.1	The Road Back to Holiness Through Repentance .....	266
<b>3</b>	<b>THE CHRISTIAN COUNSELOR .....</b>	<b>271</b>
3.1	The Role of the Christian Counsellour.....	271
3.2	Perception Verses Belief .....	273

3.3	<b>Curses and Generational Influences .....</b>	<b>274</b>
3.4	<b>The Counsellour and the Counselee .....</b>	<b>275</b>
4	<b>THE MIND .....</b>	<b>276</b>
4.1	<b>The Mind and Door Openers .....</b>	<b>281</b>
4.2	<b>Evidences of Mind Control .....</b>	<b>281</b>
4.3	<b>Deliverance From Mind Control .....</b>	<b>281</b>
4.4	<b>Meditation and the Mind .....</b>	<b>283</b>
4.5	<b>Replacing Lies With Truth .....</b>	<b>284</b>
4.6	<b>The Spiritual Battle Pertaining to Strongholds and Freedom of the Mind .....</b>	<b>286</b>
4.6.1	Putting Down the Old Self .....	287
5	<b>SPIRITUAL WARFARE AND THE WAY TO FREEDOM PERTAINING TO FAITH, PRAYER AND FASTING.....</b>	<b>290</b>
5.1	<b>The Spiritual Weapons of War .....</b>	<b>290</b>
5.1.1	The Mouth Piece as an Instrument for Spiritual Warfare .....	291
5.1.2	Provocation at the Corridor of Breakthroughs.....	292
5.1.3	Prophesying in Problem Areas.....	293
5.1.4	Spiritual Warfare and Words of Commitment to God .....	294
5.1.5	What is Spiritual Warfare? .....	295
5.1.6	The Enemy is Listening .....	295
5.2	<b>Faith and Prayer: A Union of Holiness.....</b>	<b>296</b>
5.2.1	The Aspect of Holiness Pertaining to Spiritual Warfare .....	297
5.3	<b>Binding and Loosing Pertaining to the Area of the Mind in Surrendering Wrong Desires, Wrong Attitudes and Ungodly Habits .....</b>	<b>298</b>
5.3.1	The Aspect of Holiness Pertaining to Spiritual Warfare .....	299
5.3.2	The Implications of the Term “Whosoever” as Seen in a Biblical Perspective in Relation to Authority .....	300
5.4	<b>The Battle of Fasting .....</b>	<b>301</b>
5.5	<b>Fasting .....</b>	<b>301</b>
6	<b>DEALING WITH HIDDEN CURSES.....</b>	<b>306</b>
6.1	<b>Idolatry.....</b>	<b>307</b>
6.2	<b>Detecting Curses in Your Life .....</b>	<b>308</b>
6.2.1	The Aspect of Holiness Pertaining to Spiritual Warfare .....	308
6.2.1.1	Knowledge of Biblical Curses .....	308
6.2.1.2	Compare Your Life with the Blessings that God Has Promised Those who Love Him .....	310
6.2.1.3	Searching for the Effect of Living a Cursed Life .....	311
6.3	<b>A Biblical Case Study of a Hidden Curse.....</b>	<b>311</b>

<b>6.4</b>	<b>Breaking Hidden Curses.....</b>	<b>312</b>
6.4.1	Acknowledge the Source of Your Power .....	312
6.4.2	Learn How to use Your Spiritual Weapons .....	312
6.4.3	Identify Your Enemies .....	313
6.4.4	Target the Weakness of Your Enemies .....	313
6.4.5	Be Battle ready – Be Alert.....	313
6.4.6	The Victory is Yours .....	313
<b>6.5</b>	<b>Breaking Hidden Curses.....</b>	<b>314</b>
6.5.1	Practical Steps in Order to Cancel Evil Curses.....	314
6.5.2	Prayer Point – Spiritual Warfare Prayer .....	315
<b>7</b>	<b>CONCLUSION .....</b>	<b>316</b>

-----oOo-----







*Expounding the Ultimate Defilement and the Abuse  
of the Mouthpiece Pertaining to the Spoken Word of  
God and the Way to Effective Witnessing Out of  
Bondage and Sexual Perversion Via Spiritual  
Warfare, Inner Healing and Deliverance*

---

## **INTRODUCTION / BACKGROUND**

Our words either advance the Kingdom of God or the kingdom of darkness. There is no middle ground, even when speaking about ordinary subjects, our tone, our intention and our motives colour's our words, sliding them onto one side or the other whereas the mouth is either an instrument through which people speak life or an instrument through which they speak death.

The thesis will deem to educate people with regards to the "role of the mouthpiece", not only from a Biblical perspective, but from every spoken word including the physical abuse of the mouth pertaining to the dark-side of sex and the impact as a result on a person's mouth, his personality, the believer's ability to witness for Christ and the impact of the person's sexual relationship within the context of marriage between a him and his spouse.

The question is; why will a Christian willingly, risk, losing his soul by embracing evil speak - lying as-well as committing sexual immorality with his mouth knowing that this could result in sexual addiction and death? It is in this that some churches including the uneducated, fail to identify the real reason why sex is the only sin that if one do give into sexual sin, such sins against his body which defiles not only himself, but the image of God as-well seeing that God, who created everything, created man in His image (Genesis 1).

Is curiosity to be blamed, or is it something far deeper, the covert hidden agenda of the dark kingdom to sexually pervert and defile all of humanity. Satan undoubtedly is the master mind behind this agenda, but curiosity can to a great extend act as the fuel that ignites the flame for exploring new sexual boundaries; however, every sexual sin, stems forth from a sinful sexual thought. The question is what is playing off in a person's mind when accommodating immoral, sinful, sexual thoughts? The battle for a person's soul is won or lost in the mind, Satan's battlefield.

Satan seeks to control the mind of a person which evidently, will lead to him controlling the mouth of a person as well. When it comes to Christians, these are called to preach the Gospel of Christ and to speak God's Word as was the case with all the Biblical prophets. This is exactly what Satan wants to prevent; hence, the he targets the mouths of believers. How can this be possible one might ask? This thesis deems to prove that certain curses pertaining to the mouth can render a believer incapacitated and stagnant incapable of witnessing for Christ or speak the Word of God or read the Bible in front of others.

This thesis also deems to expose the agenda of Satan filling the mouths of people with lies and the repercussions of lying. Satan's aim through the ages is to deceive (Revelation 12:9) and to wipe out any knowledge and WORDS of the existence of Jesus Christ. If he can prevent believers form witnessing for Christ by silencing their mouths or get them to lie, sowing seeds of deceit which could result in discord within the Church, many more souls will be lost.

If one is to ask oneself, what is the reason for people's inability to repent of their sins, what it would be, knowing that if we don't forgive others their sins against us, our Heavenly Father won't forgive our sins?

The spiritual battle between the Kingdom of Light and of Darkness is real, and people's souls are at stake. The field of psychology has no answers for things which can only be spiritually discerned, nor can medicine heal the spiritually depraved. What is the gay person to believe, that he is born gay, is it natural or unnatural?

Satan, not only feeds on mankind's ignorance, he exploits it and uses it as a weapon against the compulsive liar, the sexually enslaved and those who are caught in a world of sexual perversion. Given the right time, the right words can change a nation, can melt a sinner's heart, and can expose the lie, the lie that have the right to express himself sexually as he wishes, the lie that he can speak "Loshon Hora" thinking words are just a jumble of letters.

The Bible attests that all that God created was "good" (Genesis 1:31) and as God's infallible Word, offers humanity the Truth in that God is not a liar, nor is He capable of lying

***God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent: hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and shall he not make it good?***

***Numbers 23:19***

This thesis will also address the way to freedom for the compulsive liar, those whose mouths are a well of poison sowing seeds of death rather than seeds of blessings life, those who can't get themselves to open their mouths and call out to God in repentance and forgiveness.

The significance of the role of the mouth pertaining to praise and worship, spiritual warfare, deliverance, inner-healing and restoration of the spirit, soul and body, will also be looked at in breaking the yoke of bondage as a result of curses applicable to the mouth of a person.

This thesis is a message of hope; FREEDOM IS POSSIBLE and starts with the battle of faith in Jesus Christ.

***Jesus looked at them and said, "With man this is impossible, but with God all things are possible."***

***Matthew 19:26 (NIV)***

## **PROBLEM STATEMENT**

With regards to the spoken word, why don't people perceive the danger of evil speak whereby the tongue, both, has a creative and destructive power to speak either blessings or curses? The Bible attests to the throats of men being like an open grave and that they deceive with their tongues and that the venom of poisonous serpents is under their lips (Romans 3:13). The book of Hosea adds by warning mankind that by rejecting knowledge, people perish (Hosea 4:6).

Why is it that humanity in general reject the knowledge of God's Word, is it because the truth hurts, or a question of people not wanting to face the truth and crucify the flesh in order for it to live? Why don't people want to crucify the flesh if the Bible clearly affirms that there is nothing to profit from the flesh nor is there anything of good nature in the flesh? The answer is pleasure, and people are prepared to offer up almost anything to have it and live a life of pleasure and self-pleasing.

The thing is that all that man does, whether good or bad impacts the spirit soul and body of a person. Man is spirit, first and foremost spirit and they seem not to realize the spiritual impact of not adhering to God's Word or the spiritual impact of evil words in that curses are a reality and some are attributed to the mouth sowing seeds of destruction whether knowingly or unknowingly which opens the door for demonic activity in the person's life which in turn lead to bondage and demonic strongholds.

Neither the field of psychology nor the field of medicine has an answer things spiritual of nature, nor are they able to treat the root problem for those who can't witness for Christ due to their inability to speak the Word of God and those who are sexually-bound and victimized by evil spirits due to sexually defiling the mouths which was not created to be used as sex organs.

These have no choice but to turn to God, the Creator of mankind who are Spirit and who has the keys to understanding the spiritual which the carnal mind can't perceive, for deliverance from demonic control and strongholds is only possible through God as is restoration and healing of the spirit, soul and body of the sexually depraved and enslaved.

The question is, do those in questions, hence, those who want to be free Satan controlling their thoughts and their mouths to do his will as well as those who are sexually enslaved, do they want to experience real freedom which is only possible through Jesus Christ, and will Christians take up their responsibility to be used as an instrument for God to work through and do God's work by helping those in captivity to become free?

**Chapter One** will deem to scrutinize the spoken word from a Biblical perspective, pertaining to the forces behind spoken words and the spiritual reality of words for the unrestrained mouth and the untamed-tongue is like a well of destruction. Also to be addressed is what it means to speak evil in that right is wrong, dark is light, a lie is the truth, and that the Devil is credible and God is out-of-date.

The fact that words are spirit and the significance of words will also be addressed pertaining to what a signifier is and what is actually signified. The mouth will also be looked at as instrument Satan uses to bring about the ultimate defilement of mankind to speak lies and to sow seeds of destruction and death.

**Chapter 2** will deal with the believer called for personal work in being a witness for Christ and one's faith expressed by the confession of your lips. The role of the mouth will be discussed as an instrument God wants to use to reach the world, the lost, the backslidden and one's children.

Also to be addressed is how the words Jesus spoke had a uniquely penetrating array of light and how the initial effect God's Word circumcises the heart of man. Wrong thinking will be looked at in coming to full knowledge as the Holy Spirit guides one unto all truth pertaining to our thoughts and that what we speak.

**Chapter Three** will discuss the historic and generational overview of sexual strongholds, its origin, and its effect on a person, spiritually, mentally and physically. The sexual defilement of the mouth will also be addressed as well as curses related to actions of the mouth and the fruit of one's lips. An in-depth look will be taken at the Spirit of Jezebel and the seduction of Christian men in leadership as well as the outflow of sexual sin. The impact of sexual sins committed with the mouth of a person will be addressed as well as magic sex, the goddess and the Kundalini.

**Chapter Four** will illustrate and affirm the significance of the role of the mouth in setting the captives free and reclaiming the land. The role of the Christian counsellor will be addressed pertaining to soul restoration, compulsive lying, sexual defilement of the mouth and the braking of curses related to sins of the mouth. The significance of prayer, fasting and deliverance will also be looked at in relation to leading the captive from bondage to freedom via verbal victory.

## **PURPOSE & RESEARCH QUESTIONS**

The objective of this proposed thesis is to study the impact of the spoken word on the spirit, soul and body of a person relating to the searing of the conscience, demonic strongholds, the sexually depraved as-well as exposing the hidden agenda of the dark kingdom, relating to the battle of the mind in order to lure a person to the dark side of sex through manipulating, seducing, beguiling and controlling spirits.

To investigate what is meant with deliverance from demonic spirits in order for a person to be totally free from demonic possession and oppression. To interpret the significance of praise and worship concerning spiritual warfare and to offer hope in that all things are possible with God relating to freedom from sexual captivity, restoration and inner-healing.

It is hypothesized that Satan along with his hierarchy, princes, principalities, spirits and demons not only desires defile and ensnare mankind sexually, but to cripple it spiritually, to impose physical harm and to cause death, both on a spiritual as-well as physically level.

The purpose here will illustrate that Satan; the spiritual enemy of humanity, ever since the Garden of Eden, seeks to destroy man and that he uses every possible means including evil speak to find an opening for oppression and alienation in a person's life.

This proposed thesis will also examine the opinions, both of Psychology and Science and at no point is it the intention or purpose to discard their opinions, but to offer deliverance from demonic strongholds and inner restoration in dealing with the root problem and not treating the symptoms.

## **Research Questions**

The thesis will tend to answer the following questions:

- What is the role of the mouth from a Biblical perspective?
- What is the spiritual impact of the spoken word concerning life and death?
- What causes the searing of the conscience?
- Are there demonic entities actively focusing on defiling mankind sexually?
- What is spiritual bondage and what is meant with demonic strongholds?
- Is freedom possible for the sexually depraved?
- What is the curse of Fellatio and how does it impact a believer?
- Can a person have a bright side and a dark side concerning his personality?
- What is meant by fragmentation of the soul?
- Can the field of Phycology offer a cure for spiritual related problems.
- Is there power in praise and worship pertaining to doing spiritual warfare?
- What are the themes relating to the dark side of behavior?
- What is spiritual warfare?
- Is freedom from demonic strongholds possible?
- Is total restoration and inner-healing possible for the sexually enslaved?

## **Aims**

The aims will include the following actions as a prospective contribution to the field.

- To provide an overview of the impact and destructive nature of the tongue embedded in the spoken word.
- To unveil the strategies and evil spirits of the spiritual enemy with regards to defiling and enslaving mankind sexually for the purpose of destroying mankind.
- To provide an exegetical overview of essence of the spoken word and the sinful deeds committed by a person in luring the person into sin.
- To educate people with regards to spiritual warfare, deliverance, restoration and inner-healing concerning the spirit, soul and body.
- To examine the significance and power of praise and worship pertaining to setting captives free and reclaiming the land to freedom.

## **OBJECTIVES**

The proposed thesis will corroborate that Jesus Christ is the answer for the sexually captive to be set free from demonic control via deliverance in the context of evil supernaturalism opposed to those who reject deliverance all together.

This proposed thesis will deliver confirmation that even though Psychology and Science acknowledge that for various reasons such as early life traumatic experiences, some might be more prone to sexual deviancy than others later on in life.

These do not recognize the demonic activity involved in luring the curious, the ignorant and the innocent towards the dark side of sex, and therefore cannot offer a cure for the root problem in setting the captive free and healing as-well as restoring the person in spirit, soul, and body comprehensively.

## **DEMARCATON OF THE FIELD OF STUDY (SCOPE AND LIMITATIONS)**

This proposed thesis will investigate the spiritual impact of the spoken word and it's destructive as-well as life giving consequences concerning the dark side of sex, the evil forces behind it, deliverance from the demonic, the way to freedom and restoration relating to a person's soul, spirit and body.



People are exposed to demonic oppression and in some cases demonic possession when speaking words destructive of nature; sin is the open door to demonic activity in person's life and gives Satan legal right to oppress a person.

This proposed study does not challenge the traditional Christian teachings on sex, rather wants to help the Christian Church, counselors, educators and people in general not to be ignorant of Satan's devices and demonic activity on the subject of perverting sex and using sex as an instrument to defile, entangle and destroy mankind spiritually and physically.

It will prove that there is an utter lack of spiritual knowledge pertaining to understanding and believing that a person can be demon oppressed as-well as demon possessed in some cases and the fact that such can be delivered from sexual entrapment.

The fact that the tongue has creative and destructive power as-well being referred to as ***"like a fire and a world of evil"*** (James 3:6) must be investigated, and the reason why a sexual deviant lifestyle is the acceptable norm for some, and the fact that this could lead to the dark side of sex.

This proposed thesis will exclude the following:

- Sexual processes, principles, goals, guidelines, charts, information, pictures, and research results on sex.
- Statistical data, charts and results on sex related diseases.
- Other common forms of addictions: Smoking, alcoholism, and gluttony etc.
- Intensive overviews on the Physical and Medical examinations in determining extent of sexual abuse.
- Legal Recommendations will not be included.
- Political environments, poverty related issues and Apartheid.

The proposed study is unique in the attempt to provide a valuable contribution to knowledge and freedom in that it is the knowledge of the truth that will set the captive free as promised in the Word of God.

***And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.***

***John8:32***

## **THESIS / HYPOTHESIS / RESEARCH STATEMENT**

This proposed thesis will examine several abridged hypotheses.

The first hypothesis is that the spoken word has creative and destructive power which can have a positive or negative impact on a person's spirit, soul and body.

The second hypothesis is that sexual sin opens the door for the strongman or lying spirit to enter a person which in turn opens the door for sexual demons to enter as well; Gossiping and Criticism also attracts demons and can lead to sexual deviation.

The third hypothesis is that the mouth, when used as a sex organ results in a curse coming on the mouth of a person which leaves him incapacitated and unable to witness for Christ or speak the Word of God.

The fourth hypothesis is that evil strongholds can be broken and the captive set free from demonic control and bondage beginning with the battle of faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

The Fifth Hypothesis is that praise and worship, creates a foundation of affective spiritual warfare and that it has a significant role in scattering, and breaking the shackles, of the spiritual enemy.

The thesis deem to proof the role and power of praise and worship in restoring and bringing inner-healing to the spirit, soul and body of the one who has been set free from demonic control and en-slavery.

## **RESEARCH METHODOLOGY**

For the purpose of this study methodology, a combination of diverse qualitative research design types including historical analysis, evaluation of evil supernaturalism, theology and psychological analysis will be used.

This study will acknowledge the viewpoints relating to the fields of Psychology, and Science; statistical analysis however, is excluded.

### **Qualitative Research**

An extensive literature and internet study will represent the fields of Historical analysis were applicable, Psychology, Science, Hermeneutics, Evil Supernaturalism, Anthropology, and Theology.

### **Quantitative Research**

Previous case studies were possible will be examined. It must be emphasized that no statistical research will be studied and or challenged.

### **Biblical Research**

An exegetical research will be done with regards to the role of the mouth as an instrument for the spoken word as-well as the spiritual impact of words from a Biblical perspective.

The argumentative suggestions of deliverance and freedom will be challenged by the candidate to illustrate God's power over the power of evil.

## **Literature Research**

This proposed thesis will include the following Literature Studies:

- Data collection (books, magazine articles, internet resources, academic publications and papers, conferences attended, and various dictionaries)
- Audio material (Documentaries, television programming, Digital Visual Disks).
- Case studies were possible from specialized Christian counselors.
- Structured, semi-structured and unstructured interviews

## **ETHICAL CONSIDERATIONS**

This proposed thesis will examine ethical considerations from a Biblical perspective only seen that the Word of God is the only norm and the axiom off this research.

## **TERMS, DEFINITIONS AND ETYMOLOGY**

Terms, Definitions and Etymology will be created as this thesis progress and summarized at the end of the compilation.

## **ABBREVIATIONS**

This proposed thesis will make use of abbreviations during the progress which will be footnoted at its first use.

## **REFERENCING**

The Harvard referencing method will be used in the footnotes and Bibliography throughout the thesis.

-----oOo-----



*An Exegetical Overview of the Role of the  
Mouth Piece Pertaining to the Spoken Word,  
the Forces Behind Words, as well as the Spiritual  
Reality of Words and the Effect there off*

---

**“Your-thoughts-become-your-words; Your beliefs become your thoughts, Your thoughts become your words, Your words become your actions, Your actions become your habits, Your habits become your values, Your values become your destiny.”<sup>1</sup>**

***Mahatma Gandhi***

## **1 INTRODUCTION**

Unregenerate man is not synchronized with God’s universe or with His purpose for man. Sin has twisted him so that right is wrong, dark is light, **“a lie is the truth,”** the Devil is credible and God is out-of-date.

---

<sup>1</sup> Goodreads. (<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/50584-your-beliefs-become-your->).

The prophet warns,

***But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.***

***Revelation 21:8***

The proposed intend of this thesis deem to prove that the “mouth piece” as a member of the body of a person, is an instrument to be set apart for holy purposes. All that was created was created by God and was deemed well in the sight of God (Genesis 1). This brings to question the role of the mouth pertaining to the fruit of the lips for if not guarded, so called “freedom of speech” can be manipulated which could give birth to deceit, violence, desolation, destruction and death as portrayed in Proverbs 10:11 which reads; ***“The mouth of the righteous is a fountain of life, but the mouth of the wicked conceals violence”***.

Romans 12:1 reveals the principle of mankind’s reasonable service to present ones body and the “mouth” as a member of the body, as a ***“living sacrifice, holy, and acceptable unto God”***. How then can some men of the cloth who have sworn to feed and to protect, to preach and to defend the Truth as portrayed in the Bible, justify ***“Loshon Hora”***<sup>2</sup> (evil speak) under the umbrella of freedom of speech in order to promote humanism<sup>3</sup> whereby, and if something seems noble and good, such is deemed noble, acceptable and good, hence, everything goes that pleases.

The Bible refers to rebellion as the sin of witchcraft (1Samuel 15:23), needless to say, the ***“rebellious tongue”*** is what caused the Israelites from entering their Godly given land of milk and honey. To reject God’s will, is to rebel against God; upon taking Promised Land God gave in their hands, Israel ***“murmured, if only, we have stayed in Egypt”*** – evil speaking – against God which gave birth to various outflows and in this case, ***“physical death”*** (Numbers 14:32).

---

<sup>2</sup> Loshon Hora: See Terms and Definitions.

<sup>3</sup> Humanism: See Terms and Definitions.

In similar manner can the root cause of things in people's lives be traced back to what they uttered with their mouths in the form of gossiping and flattering with the tongue and in extreme cases, "**verbal diaree**", a mouth filled with filth, negativity and destruction. How wicked is the heart, for as the heart thinks, in like manner does the mouth speak (Luke 4:45).

Faith comes by hearing the Word; however, the Word needs be spoken in order to hear. Where does this leave the believer with an uncontrollable tongue? Can the person in question then speak blessings and life over his children, his finances, his marriage, and his work not to mention when he faces a life and death situation? What is the believer to do?

Spiritual warfare for the believer is not a choice, it is a necessity and in this, the role of the mouth is critical prayer, praise and worship as the foundation for effective spiritual warfare. It is in this that people fail to realise that there is a spiritual element to words that proceed from the mouth!

Jesus taught as follows: "***It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the WORDS that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life***" (John 6:63).

The word of God states that God's people perish because of a lack of knowledge (Hebrews 4:6) and that whatever a man sows he will reap (Proverbs 18:21). Are we then to understand that this principle as taught in the Bible is applicable to what people speak? Given that words are "spirit" is an unfamiliar concept in itself and it is in this that humanity are oblivious to the forces operating behind words spoken as well as their implication and effect.

The text of the subject of the mouth as seen through an exegetical point of view will reveal new definitions, clarity and nuance pertaining to the subject of the spiritual element of words and the unique role of the "mouthpiece which" will act as a useful tool for those of faith in Christ Jesus as well as those in the business world and to an extent, the public sector when coming to knowledge in this regard.

This thesis also deem to prove that words are not simply a jumble of letters, but that it is in the signifier that meaning is created; blessings or curses that are spoken which negatively impacts the human spirit.

Satan and his hierarchy are diligently working towards corrupting people's mouths for he fully understands the Biblical principle of "sowing and reaping." The problem arises in that the evil thoughts deeply rooted in the wicked human heart plays off in the mind of a person, Satan's battlefield, for it is in the mind that the war against sin is won or lost. As a matter of life and death, the mouth projects these evil thoughts only to manifest in the physical.

Speaking lies result in serious ramifications and it is in this that Satan is out to gain control of a person's mouth. Evil spirits scouts mankind waiting and enticing them to fall into temptation in order to open a door for control and demonic affliction. These evil spirits will be discussed in depth.

The world of psychology holds that lying is a complex phenomenon, yet the Bible firmly attests that is a sin. The ruler of this world being cast out from heaven is out to destroy as many souls as he can; hence, he deceives the whole world.

Propaganda is a vehicle Satan uses to promote his evil plan founded on lies and half-truths. The problem is that once a word is said, the bell cannot be unsung. The question is asked; how do you combat a lie, a spiritual truth? The weapons of our warfare are not carnal but spiritual.

This thesis deem to prove that words uttered together with a man's thoughts does play a role in shaping a person's character. A single word can change your destiny for as such the believer's destiny constitutes to doing the Father's will.

In essence; **"watch the words that come out of your mouth and you will have a good idea of the direction your thoughts are facing, and as a result, your life."**<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup>Positive words. (<http://www.creativeaffirmation.com/positive-words.html>).



As an addition, this thesis offers three Biblical case studies pertaining to the mouth and a lying tongue which will be looked at in depth.

## 2 THE SIGNIFICANCE OF LANGUAGE AND THE SPIRITUAL REALITY OF WORDS

Language is the human capacity for obtaining and using multifaceted systems of communication, and a language is any specific example of such a system.<sup>5</sup> The scientific study of language is referred to as linguistics. Human language is unique because it has the properties of productivity, recursivity, and displacement, and because it depends entirely on social agreement and learning.<sup>6</sup>

According to Dr Daphne Bavelier,<sup>7</sup> an associate professor of brain and cognitive sciences; “all spoken languages draw their sounds from a small subset of the possible sounds humans can produce. All combine these sounds in sequences to form **words**, phrases, and sentences. In every culture, there are **words** for a similar set of concrete and abstract concepts that refer to objects and actions.

In essence; “natural languages are verbal or signed, but any language can be encoded into secondary media using auditory, visual, or tactile stimuli, for example, in graphic writing, braille, or whistling. This is because human language is modality-independent”.<sup>8</sup> To perceive the intricacy of words, one must consider the significance of words, the impact they have as well as the meaning behind them.

### 2.1 The Significance and the Impact of Words

To a great extent, your life is what it is today not only because of certain choices you made, but also because of words spoken over you, either by yourself or someone else.

---

<sup>5</sup> Language. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Language>).

<sup>6</sup> Ibid.

<sup>7</sup> Signed or Spoken, Children Need Natural Languages. (<http://www.bcs.rochester.edu/people/newport/pdf/Bavelieretal-Cerebrum03.pdf>).

<sup>8</sup> Language. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Language>).

This section will deal with words, the spiritual element of words, signifiers and what is signified.

Proverbs 18:21 reads; ***“death and life reside in the power of the tongue, and those who love it will eat its fruit.”***

From this verse we note four important factors:

- That a person either **“speaks death or life”** into a situation or over a person by the words that proceed from his mouth.
- That whatever you sow, you will reap, (Galatians 6:7) in other words; **“you will eat the fruit of that what you speak,”** be that life or death.
- The mouth and tongue represents the instrument which is a part of the body.
- **“Power is directly related to the words spoken,”** the meaning thereof and the **force** behind it whether that be the forces of Light (God/Holy Spirit) or darkness (Satan).

In order to fully understand the impact of words, one has to understand that words are signifiers. Of great importance to understand is, what has been signified?

### 2.1.1 Signifiers and that What is Signified

It must be understood that when we consider words in the context of spoken or written language, words are referred to as signifiers. A signifier by definition is;

**“A symbol, sound, or image as a word that represents an underlying/basic concept/idea or meaning), and their meaning as that what is actually signified or implied.”<sup>9</sup>**

---

<sup>9</sup> Signifiers. (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/signifier>).

In other words, the term **signified** refers to the meaning of the word indicated by the **signifier**. The signifier is the image signified or the concept/idea/meaning behind the image. In Essence, the signifier is the “pointing finger, the *word*, the sound-image.”<sup>10</sup>

### 2.1.1.1 Words and there Different Levels of Meaning

In order to illustrate the various levels of meaning, the word “HATE” will be looked at as an example. The term hate has a negative connotation, negative implication and a negative meaning to it and it is a term extensively used within the circles of witchcraft and Satanism.

Regina Sunderland<sup>11</sup> refers to the word “Hate” and the different levels of meaning by using two examples. Example number one:

- “Hate, is an extreme emotion with a very serious potential outcome.
- If I hate a person, he bothers me and his existence offends me.
- I wish him gone - out of my life – distance myself from him.
- I wish **harm** on him.
- To **hate is evil** and you have already committed **murder** to the very thing or person you hate in your **mind**.”<sup>12</sup>

In this context, what is Sunderland saying?

By implication; **“to speak hatred is to speak death and destruction”** over something or someone to the extent of killing that thing or person in your mind.

Proverbs 10:11 reads; **“The mouth of a righteous man is a well of life: but violence covereth the mouth of the wicked.”**

---

<sup>10</sup> Signifier and Signified. ([http://changingminds.org/explanations/critical\\_theory/concepts/signifier\\_signified.htm](http://changingminds.org/explanations/critical_theory/concepts/signifier_signified.htm)).

<sup>11</sup> Witchcraft: The Power and Magic of Words (<http://voices.yahoo.com/witchcraft-power-magic-words-451971.html?cat=7>).

<sup>12</sup> Ibid.

The question is asked; where is Satan's battle field?

A persons mind is where the battle over sin is won or lost.<sup>13</sup> In saying this, the majority if not all sinful deeds start's off as a sinful thought.

James 1:8 states; ***"A double minded man is unstable in all his ways."*** Evident here is that there is a battle playing off in the mind of this person. The battle is one off souls.

If Satan wins the battle in a person's mind, he can manipulate that person to do and say something against his will by means of "manipulating spirits" which will be dealt with later in this Chapter.

Romans 12:2 warns us; ***"...not [to be] conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God."***

Satan seeks control of the mind in order to bend and twist a person's will to use him as he pleases.

- **Example number two:**

Sunderland is quoted in saying;

"Assume that there is a Child Molester that just moved into our Area. By law, we ... cannot do anything about it. Now this person, I wish a nice slow painful death that starts at the tip of his smallest toe and works itself in slow possession up to the top of his hair. Preferably with a lot of painful sores etc in the meantime and paralyzes so all he can do is suffer".<sup>14</sup>

---

<sup>13</sup> See Chapter 3 – The Sin War

<sup>14</sup> Witchcraft: The Power and Magic of Words (<http://voices.yahoo.com/witchcraft-power-magic-words-451971.html?cat=7>).

What does “hate” in this context speak of?

- Hating this person with a passion.
- Hating everything he stands for.
- Hating the very idea that he lives.
- A death wish, not to harm, but to kill.

The question arises; what is the difference when considering these two examples of hatred? The latter is a lot more **“lethal in desire”** than the former.

### **The two levels of desire:**

- **The first level of desire;** “hate” herewith referred to as the signifier, signifies a *desire to wish harm only* or simply to *put distance between you and the person*.
- **The second level of desire;** “hate” signifies a *desire for that person to die*; that is; a desire for the person to get a cramp and drown while swimming for example.

One might think wishing someone harm through destructive words is not harmful, but the repercussions off one’s words are endless. (See Spiritual Reality of Words later on).

**Your will and your mind are expressed through your *words* and your deeds.** Submitting and bending your will to Satan’s influence, is nothing else than Witchcraft in the highest form.

Does the Bible teach that we should submit to Satan and or his influence? What does the Bible teach with regards to submitting your will?

- James 4:7        ***"Therefore submit to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you".***
- 1 Peter 5:5,6    ***"Likewise you younger people, submit yourselves to your elders".***
- Colossians 3:18 ***"Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as it is fit in the Lord,"***

The Bible unequivocally affirms that a believer must submit his will to God; this includes one's thoughts and words uttered. To say that you hate a person is not to be taken lightly, and it is our responsibility to focus on **"training the tongue and using our mouths to speak LIFE."** Should you find yourself in a position where a person speaks destructive or negative words over you or your children, it is your duty to rebuke and declare those words null and void in the name of Jesus Christ.

## 2.2 Negative Signifiers - Affirmations

Some words which signify destruction or negativity are:

- **Words of abuse:** You worthless excuse of a person.
- **Words of destruction:** That marriage will never last, the kids will be the reason they get divorced.
- **Words of war:** The tongue can be weapons of mass destruction, launching holocausts and wars.
- **Words of death:** I hate that man with a passion. People can die because of something they or some else said about them.

The tongue can also be the death of marriages, families, friendships, churches, careers, hopes, understanding, reputations, missionary efforts, and governments.

## 2.3 Positive Signifiers - Affirmations

Some words – phrases signifying life and positivity are:

- I am absolutely wealthy
- I am willing
- For the highest good
- I feel rejuvenated

In general, included are positive affirmations, words of praise, words of gratitude, words of healing, but the most striking of all, as Jesus proclaimed; ***“not my will, but your will O Lord”***

## 2.4 Words a Spiritual Reality

The question is asked; are words spirit?

John 6:63 reveals the answer:

***It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the words that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life.***

***John 6:63***

From the above we see that ***“words are spirit and they are life.”*** Proverbs 18:21 affirms that ***“life and death reside in the power of the tongue.”*** In this we notice that words can either be life giving or destructive of nature.

Proverbs 15:4 states that;

***A wholesome tongue is a tree of life: but that which is immoderate (perverse), shall CRUSH THE SPIRIT.***

***Proverbs 15:4***

The Bible affirms that a perverse tongue can crush the spirit of a person. This usually leads to spiritual passivity and impacts the character of a person in a negative way.<sup>15</sup>

What is to learn from this verse?

- Words do contain spiritual elements be that positive or negative.
- Every word has distinctive power that represents it (positive/negative power).
- The fruit thereof is either life giving or death depending on the seed sown.
- The fact that words can impact your spirit is clearly demonstrated.
- You will read according to what you sow – that which you utter.

The destructive nature of the tongue is clearly demonstrated in the Book of James.

James 3:7-10 reads;

***For every kind of beasts, and of birds, and of serpents, and of things in the sea, is tamed, and hath been tamed of mankind: but the tongue can no man tame; it is an unruly evil, full of deadly poison. Therewith bless we God, even the Father; and therewith curse we men, which are made after the similitude of God. OUT OF THE SAME MOUTH PROCEEDETH BLESSING AND CURSING. My brethren, these things ought not so to be.***

***James 3:7-10***

The purpose of the tongue, first and foremost, is to praise God in all what is said, uttered, proclaimed and preached. Pertaining to the Christian, every word should be one of blessing and speaking life. In order to grasp the power behind destructive words; the following personal testimony is offered. For the sake of privacy, the source will however remain unknown.

---

<sup>15</sup> See Personal Testimony p. 13.



### 2.4.1 Personal Testimony Pertaining to the Power of Words

God as-well as Satan and his demons hears and knows what you declare with your mouth. Many of you will agree that the major contributor that cripples Christians and prevents them from entering their Godly ordained calling; is fear, be that fear of man, of failure or being rejected, it all boils down to fear of some kind.

The question is; where did a spirit of fear get an opening in my life? Thinking back, I just realise what an awesome God we serve, you see, God took me back to the day some twenty years ago, when during a very low time in my life, one day, I looked at myself in the mirror and called my south a coward.

#### **The Result:**

- The person condemned himself the moment he uttered those words “I am a Coward.”
- He made a false oath and opened a door for a spirit of fear to control his life.
- A padlock was put on his mouth - Satan succeeded in silencing him knowing full well of his previous oath not to keep silent for the Lords sake.
- By speaking that lie, not only did he choose to belief it, he also released that negative power over himself.

Satan understands the principle of speaking blessings and curses as-well as the impact it has on our spiritual lives. He is an expert in manipulating circumstances to get a person to feel sorry for himself. The enemy is waiting for you to hit rock bottom and it is in that moment of weakness and anger that Satan catches you off guard just waiting for you to say things you shouldn't.

The question arises; what effect did these words have on the person's spiritual life?

- Passivity set in not wanting to commit to anything which could expose him.
- Feelings of Worthlessness.
- It kept him glued to his comfort zone.

- He used it to protect (false protection) and excuse himself when needed spirit of fear.
- Was at a spiritual low - no prayer life – no reading of the Bible.
- Refused to accept or take ownership of the idea that there is a Godly calling on his life.
- Constant battle between his flesh and his spirit.

The question is can the person be set free? Luke 18:27 gives the answer: ***“And he said, The things which are impossible with men are possible with God.”***

The following must be stressed; ***“the road to Victory however states the moment the person opens his mouth.”*** This principle is mentioned in James 4:2; ***“You do not have because you do not speak.”***

The steps to victory include:

- Making a decision who you want to serve.
- Repent – ask forgiveness – break the curse. (See Chapter four)
- Proclaim that Jesus Christ is your master.
- Let your life show your change of heart.
- Read, eat, and speak the Word of God.
- Make yourself available for God to work through.
- Accept your Godly ordained calling and embrace it.
- Live by faith in God alone, not in your own ability.
- God will never call you without strengthening, guiding and equipping you.
- Stand on God’s Word and remind Him of His promise

The believer’s assurance in God wanting to help him can be found in the book of Deuteronomy 31:8 which states:

***It is the Lord who goes before you. He will be with you; he will not leave you or forsake you. Do not fear or be dismayed.***

***Deuteronomy 31:8***

The following must be stressed; Satan will not give up. It is only the beginning off the battle, for he will always throw it in your face and attack you with negative thoughts of worthlessness.

## 2.5 The Tongue - A World of Iniquity and Immorality

James 3:4-6 reads;

***Behold also the ships, which though they be so great, and are driven of fierce winds, yet are they turned about with a very small helm, whithersoever the governor listeth. Even so the tongue is a little member, and boasteth great things. Behold, how great a matter a little fire kindleth! And THE TONGUE IS A FIRE, A WORLD OF INIQUITY: so is the tongue among our members, that it defileth the whole body, and setteth on fire the course of nature; and it is set on fire of hell.***

**James 3:4-6**

In adding:

***Flee from sexual immorality. Every other sin a person commits is outside the body, but the sexually immoral person sins against his own body.***

**1 Corinthians 6:18**

The question is asked; With regards to the mouth and the tongue, does sexual immorality only include speaking things of a perverse sexual nature, or does it extend to the physical?

Romans 12:1 portrays as follows;

***I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that you present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service.***

**Romans 12:1**

From the above verse we see that the body which include the mouth must be presented holy and a living sacrifice.

In the account of Isaiah 6:1-8 we read of the Prophet who had a vision in the year of King Uzziah's death where Isaiah saw the Lord sitting on a throne lofty and exalted, with Seraphim/Angels above Him who called out one to another and said;

***“Holy, Holy, Holy, is the Lord of hosts, The [a]whole earth is full of His glory”***

In verse 5 Isaiah cried out to the Lord saying;

***Woe is me, for I am ruined! Because I am a man of unclean lips, And I live among a people of unclean lips; For my eyes have seen the King, the Lord of hosts.***

***Isaiah 6: 5***

Isaiah saw the Lord in all His glory and Holiness and he knew that he fell short, that he was a man of unclean lips, a mouth corrupted and defiled. The Lord however already had an answer to his plea. In verse 6 we read as follows:

***Then one of the seraphim flew to me, having in his hand a live coal which he had taken with the tongs from the altar. 7 And he touched my mouth with it, and said: Behold, this has touched your lips; Your iniquity is taken away, and your sin purged.***

***Isaiah 6:6***

This touching off the lips, speaks of sanctification and consecration!

Sanctification<sup>16</sup> is the **“process of consecration or setting something (in this instance your mouth) apart for holy purposes.”**

---

<sup>16</sup> Knight George W (2005) The Illustrated Bible Dictionary. Thailand: Barbour Publishing, p. 290.

The question arises; why was it necessary for his mouth to be consecrated? Isaiah 6:8; portrays as follows;

***And I (Isaiah speaking) heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who shall go to you?***

***Isaiah 6:8***

Whereby the prophet answered and said;

***Lo! I; send thou me.***

***Isaiah 6:8b***

The question abounds; what was the Lord looking for? A man with clean lips, a mouth purified to go and proclaim His Holy words which He himself will put in the prophets mouth! First and foremost, the believers mouth is an instrument for God to speak through, to ***“proclaim the gospel to the poor, to heal the broken hearted and to preach deliverance to the captives”*** (Luke 4:18).

Psalms 12:6 states as follows:

***For the words of the LORD are flawless, like silver refined in a furnace of clay, purified seven times.***

***Psalms 12:6***

The “mouth piece” is a vital instrument to proclaim God’s will. The Word of God is power that carries out His will, and accomplishes that where to God sends it for His purpose.

## **2.6 Quantum Physics and the Effect of Words Spoken**

The following refers to an experiment done in the field of Quantum Physics. According to quantum physicists,<sup>17</sup> all “atoms, neutrons and protons actually respond to human words. Scientists have literally watched atoms, neutrons and protons become excited and respond positively as positive words were vocalized to them. They have also literally watched as atoms, neutrons and protons slowed down, becoming irresponsive and seemingly lifeless as negative words were spoken to them.”

The question is asked; would prayer or words of destruction have an effect on water?

In asking this question and seeing that God created everything that was created; this thesis firmly believe that Jesus understood the Law of Quantum Physics and that He created it.

### **2.6.1 The Physical Effect of Words and Prayers, On the Crystalline Structure of Water**

Through the 1990's, Dr. Masaru Emoto<sup>18</sup> performed a series of experiments observing the physical effect of words and prayers, on the crystalline structure of water. Emoto hired photographers to take pictures of water after being exposed to the different variables and subsequently frozen so that they would form crystalline structures. The results were nothing short of remarkable

As seen on the next page the first two results pertain to the before and after images of prayer.

---

<sup>17</sup> There's a Miracle in Your Mouth. ([http://www.johnhamelministries.org/miracle\\_in\\_your\\_mouth.htm](http://www.johnhamelministries.org/miracle_in_your_mouth.htm)).

<sup>18</sup>The physical effect of words, prayers, usic and environment on the crystalline structure of water (<http://www.highexistence.com/water-experiment/>).

For example:



**Figure 1:** Water before prayer<sup>19</sup>

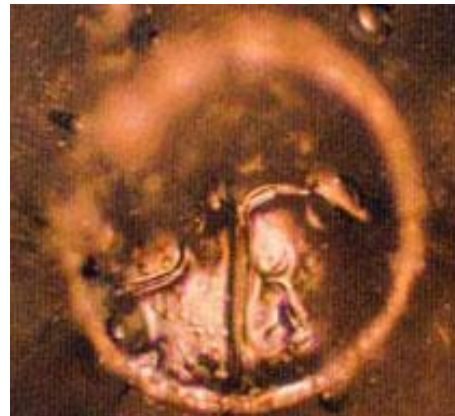


**Figure 2:** Water after prayer<sup>20</sup>

After observing these miraculous results, Dr. Emoto went on to type out different words, both positive and negative in nature, and taped them to containers full of water. The results were as follows:



**Figure 3:** You make me sick, I will kill you<sup>21</sup>



**Figure 4:** Adolph Hitler<sup>22</sup>

---

<sup>19</sup> The physical effect of words, prayers, music and environment on the crystalline structure of water (<http://www.highexistence.com/water-experiment/>).

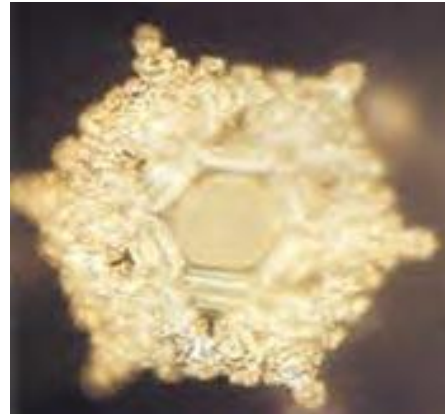
<sup>20</sup> Ibid.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid.

<sup>22</sup> Ibid.



**Figure 5:** Thank you<sup>23</sup>



**Figure 6:** Love and Appreciation<sup>24</sup>

From a scientific point of view; these tests prove that positive and negative words do have an effect for the better or worse. The Bible teaches this principle as recorded in Proverbs 15:4 which testifies to a wholesome tongue being a **“tree of life”** and **“that which is perverse, shall crush the spirit.”**

In summary: Words are spirit and they are life. Every word signifies something whether good or bad and destructive words can result in a curse and death for that matter. Not only does the Bible affirms that words have an effect on a person’s spirit; tests has revealed that words do have an effect on water as well. Considering the above, the significance of words is much more complex than what we know considering God literally spoke creation in to existence.

## **2.7 Words and the Searing of the Conscience**

Searing of the conscience has to do with the progression from sin to evil.

Conscience is referred to as: **“An aptitude, faculty, intuition or judgment of the intellect that distinguished right from wrong derived from values or norms (principles and rules).”**<sup>25</sup>

---

<sup>23</sup> The physical effect of words, prayers, music and environment on the crystalline structure of water (<http://www.highexistence.com/water-experiment/>).

<sup>24</sup> Ibid.



It refers to the faculty of man that evaluates our thoughts, words and our actions, that either accuse or excuse a person of sin.

## 2.7.1 Man's conscience from a Biblical Perspective

The question is asked; what does the Bible teach with regards to a person's conscience?

### 2.7.1.1 Man can have a "good" conscience:

Acts 23:1 reads; ***"And Paul, earnestly beholding the council, said, Men and brethren, I have lived in all good conscience before God until this day."***

In addition I Timothy 1:5 declares; ***"For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake."***

### 2.7.1.2 Man can have a "clear" conscience:

Acts 24:16 reads; ***"And herein do I exercise myself, to have always a conscience void of offence toward God, and toward men."***

In addition I Timothy 3:9 declares; ***"Holding the mystery of the faith in a pure conscience."***

### 2.7.1.3 Man can have a "corrupt" conscience:

Titus 1:15 reads; ***"Unto the pure all things are pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled."***

---

<sup>25</sup> Malan Dr Tessie (2013) Seminar: The Dark Side of Leadership. Râdâh Academy: Pretoria.

#### 2.7.1.4 Man can have a “weak” conscience:

I Corinthians 8:7 reads; ***“Howbeit there is not in every man that knowledge: for some with conscience of the idol unto this hour eat it as a thing offered unto an idol; and their conscience being weak is defiled.”***

In addition 1 Corinthians 8:10 declares; ***“For if any man see thee which hast knowledge sit at meat in the idol's temple, shall not the conscience of him which is weak be emboldened to eat those things which are offered to idols;”***

#### 2.7.1.5 Man can have a “seared” conscience:

I Timothy 4:2 reads; ***“Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron;”***

From the above verse, the searing of the conscience is a result of ***“speaking lies in hypocrisy.”***

The Bible teaches that to lie is a sin. Proverbs 12:22 states; ***“Lying lips are abomination to the LORD: but they that deal truly are his delight.”***

In addition Colossians 3:9-10 warns the believer; ***“do not lie for you have put off the old self with its sinful practices”*** which speaks of sanctification and the proses of being renewed in knowledge after the image of God.

This is exactly what Satan wants to prevent for his aim from him being cast out of heaven (Revelation 12:7-9) is to defile and perverse the image of God in an attempt to get back at God by targeting God’s most precious of creation, mankind.

## 2.7.2 The Corruption of the Mind and Conscience Pertaining to the Saved and the Unsav

The apostle Paul warned:

***Unto the pure all things are pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled.***

***Titus 1:15***

Romans 2:14-15 pertaining to the unsaved states as follows; ***“For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves: Which shew the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;”***

The Bible testifies to every living human, having a conscience. The question is; what percentage of their conscience is operating?

It's already mentioned that ***“speaking lies sears the conscience.”*** Repetitive sin, be that uttering sinful words, results in the law of sin becoming part of one's nature and personality as opposed to the law of God.<sup>26</sup>

***But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.***

***Romans 7:6***

In addition Romans 7:23 declares; ***“But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.”***

---

<sup>26</sup> Malan Dr Tessie (2013) Seminar: The Dark Side of Leadership. Rādāh Academy: Pretoria.

The “Lying spirit” or “strongman” (to be discussed later on in Chapter one) sears the conscience and renders it unable to effectively resist demonic affliction. The aim of this demonic spirit is to lead the believer astray to err, opening the door for more demonic affliction.

### 3 GOD’S WILL FOR MAN PERTAINING TO THE SPOKEN WORD AND THE MOUTH PIECE IN RELATION TO ENLARGING ONES TERRITORY

Aristotle<sup>27</sup> and Plato, both Greek philosophers, taught and were in agreement that man should *live a virtuous life*; Aristotle then defined “*virtue*” as; **“the disposition (character) of the soul that promotes human flourishing”**.

He went on proclaiming that the *character of the soul* could be cultivated through training, and that through *virtue*, a person can find the meaning of life and develop character, and upon being asked; what kind of person ought one to be, responded; **“to enjoy the things we ought and to hate the things we ought has the greatest bearing on excellence of character”**.

This study is not concerned with the *meaning of life* or with the *cultivation of the soul*; rather, with the *purpose of life* in relation to the cultivation of the *heart*, the *mouth* and *Character* in order for man to grow in God’s will **to “Enlarge the place of your tent, and let them stretch out the curtains of your dwellings; do not spare; lengthen your cords, and strengthen your stakes”** (Isaiah 54:2).

God’s will for man is to have dominion and to have it in abundance, to rule, and to govern it.

It is however impossible to understand *God’s will* in this context without first addressing *God’s purpose* for man.

---

<sup>27</sup> Aristotle. (<http://gardenofpraise.com/ibdarist.htm>).

Scripture relating to God's purpose for man;

- **Genesis 1:26-28:** *"Let us make man in our image and after our likeness and let them have dominion."*
- **Matthew 5:58:** *"Be ye therefore perfect, even as your father in heaven is perfect."*
- **II Corinthians 13:9:** *"This also we wish, even your perfection."*
- **Galatians 4:9:** *"I travail in birth until Christ be formed in you."*
- **Ephesians 4:13:** *"Until we all come...unto a perfect man."*
- **II Timothy 3:17:** *"That the man of God be perfect."*
- **II Peter 1:3:** *"Hath called us unto glory and virtue."*

God's desire for man is to conform to Christ, to be perfect, and to live virtuous lives. In order to accomplish God's purpose, not only does the *heart* of man need refinement, it must be established in God's ways, for **"out of the heart flows the springs of life"** (Proverb 4:23). The mouth expresses that what originates in the heart, hence, both the heart and the mouth need to be carefully cultivated in order for a person's character to display God's reign by word of mouth and deed. Cultivation however starts with obedience by submitting and embracing God's plan and will for your life.

God's will pertaining to His children revolves around "enlargement". This will require having a heart saturated with humbleness for **"the humble will inherit the earth"** (Matthew 5:5). For God to give more, means God will have to entrust more. This explains God's interest in making vessels of honour out of leaders especially by moulding their hearts and "purging their lips from iniquity and sin" (Isaiah 6:7) to become more like Christ so that these are able to one day, stand shoulder to shoulder with Christ in order for them to serve Him in fullness, in spirit and in truth.

God's promise to Israel was that he will give the "promised land" into their hands, and that He will make servants of their enemies as set aside in Genesis 9:27; **"God shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall dwell in the tents of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant"**.

The account of Isaiah 54:2 and Genesis 9:27 describe God's desire for leaders to be enlarged which, metaphorically, means that God wants to develop and cultivate His leadership to enlarge their capacity to receive more of Him.

II Samuel 22:37 states; ***"Thou hast enlarged my steps under me; so that my feet did not slip"***. God can enlarge the steps (i.e., the walk) of His leaders; in like manner can God enlarge a person's heart and understanding (Isaiah 60:5, Psalm 119:3). God desire for leaders is to be more functional, effective and empowered to serve in the House of the Lord, ministries, the work place and on the street.

### 3.1 The Area God wants to Enlarge in the Life of the Leader

It should be emphasized that the emphasis of this chapter pertains to the area of the mouth piece; one however deemed it necessary to list all the areas God wants to enlarge which includes;

- The area of habitation (Isaiah 54:2)
- The area of vision (I Chronicles 4:10; Proverbs 29:18)
- The area of one's steps - walk (I Samuel 22:37)
- The area of the heart (Isaiah 60:5)
- The area on ones borders (Exodus 34:24)
- The area of one's confession (I Samuel 2:1)
- The area of one's chambers (Ezekiel 41:7; Proverbs 24:3,4)
- The area of ministries (II Corinthians 6:11,13 and 10:15,16)

Pertaining to this chapter, the question is asked; does God want to enlarge the area of the mouth, is there any supporting Scripture, what is the significance in doing so, and how if in fact it does, does it relate to the Dark Side of Sexuality?

## 3.2 The Area of the Mouth Piece

The importance to scrutinize the spoken word that flows from the mouth is demonstrated in the life of Hannah as recorded in 1 Samuel 2:1);

***And Hannah prayed, and said, My heart rejoiceth in the Lord, mine horn is exalted in the Lord: my mouth is enlarged over mine enemies; because I rejoice in thy salvation.***

***1 Samuel 2:1***

Not only are God's children obligated to examine their thoughts, their motives, their hearts and their character, but their mouths as-well.

### 3.2.1 The Confession of the Faith

To give a personal testimony of what God has done for one, is one of the most effective ways to reach the unsaved.

Romans 10:17 testifies to this for ***“faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God”***.

Evident in this is the role of the mouthpiece to preach the Gospel of Christ, only then can the Living Word enter the ears of those that listen.

The Great commission as recorded in Mark 16:15 necessitates that some must go and proclaim the “Good News” to all; hence, the importance of the “mouth” as a vital instrument for God to speak through, is a proven fact.

### 3.3 The Significance of the Mouth Pertaining to Sowing Seed of Life or Seed of Death

Of utter importance is this; the “seed” that proceeds from the mouth in the form of “spoken words”, are “spiritual seeds” as Jesus Himself testified to when he said; ***“the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life”*** (John 6:63).

To encapsulate the significance of the “mouth piece”, in a nut shell, is to fully comprehend the meaning and the culminating effect of Proverbs 18:21 which read;

***Death and life are in the power of the tongue, and those who love it will eat its fruit.***

***(Proverbs 18:21)***

Considering the fact that words are spirit, by implication, means that they don’t “die off” seeing that anything that is spiritual of nature can’t die as physical bodies of humans do.

Proverbs 20:27 states; ***“the spirit of man is the ‘candle’ of the LORD...”***. Considering that Jesus is ***“the Light of the world”*** (John 18:12) and that man’s spirit is ***“the candle of the Lord”***, by implication, that what is spiritual then, never dies, for it is a candle which burns for the Lord to be examined.

### 3.4 The Significance and Power of Spoken Words

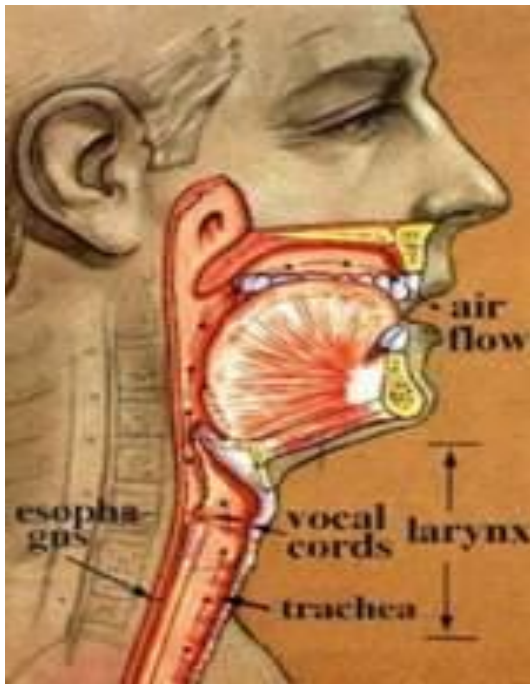
God warns His children that a lack of knowledge is perilous (Hosea 4:6). This thesis deems to proof that words have power, that it is spirit and that it is life.

Words are not mere sounds passing through the *“larynx”*<sup>28</sup> also commonly referred to as the *“voice box”* as seen on the next page.

---

<sup>28</sup> Larynx: See Terms and Definitions.





**Figure 7: The Larynx**<sup>29</sup>

This thesis thus deems that words have real power. The account of Genesis 1:1-12 attests to the power of the spoken word for God *spoke* the world into existence by the power of His words.

Hebrews 11:3 reiterates this truth;

***Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear.***

***Hebrews 11:3***

Genesis 1:26 reads; ***“And God said, Let us make man in our image”***; John 1:3 adds by saying; ***“All things were made by him; and without him was not anything made that was made”***. Everything created formed as a result of God’s command (i.e Let there be light). That what the eye see in creation is the result of the fruit of God’s mouth, as well as those spiritual, unseen creation and angelic beings.

---

<sup>29</sup> Larynx. (<http://www.picsearch.com/Larynx-pictures.html>).

Words do more than convey information. The power of our words can actually destroy one's spirit; even stir up hatred and violence. It not only incite wounds but inflict if directly. Of all the creatures on this planet, only man has the ability to communicate through the spoken word. The power to use words is a very unique and powerful gift from God.

Though it is a gift, our words have the power to destroy and the power to build up (Proverbs 12:6). The author writer of Proverb tells us: "The tongue has the power of life and death, and those who love it will eat its fruit" (Proverbs 18:21).

The question arises whether we are using words to build up people or destroy them? Are they filled with hate or love, bitterness or blessing, complaining or compliments, lust or love, victory or defeat? Like tools it can be used to help us reach our goals or to send us spiralling into a deep depression.

Furthermore, our words not only have the power to bring us death or life in this world, but in the next as well. Jesus said: ***"But I tell you that men will have to give account on the day of judgment for every careless word they have spoken. For by your words you will be acquitted, and by your words you will be condemned"*** (Matthew 12:36-37). Words are so important, that we are going to give an account of what we say when we stand before the Lord Jesus Christ, on judgement day.

The apostle Paul wrote: ***"Do not let any unwholesome talk come out of your mouths, but only what is helpful for building others up according to their needs, that it may benefit those who listen"*** (Ephesians 4:29).

In this passage, Paul is emphasizing the positive over against the negative. The Greek word translated "unwholesome" means "rotten" or "foul." It originally referred to rotten fruit and vegetables. Being like Christ means we don't use foul, dirty language. For some reason, many people today think it is macho or liberating to use vulgar humour, dirty jokes, and foul language, but this kind of talk has no place in the life of a Christian.

Paul continues: “ . . . **but only what is helpful for building others up according to their needs, that it may benefit those who listen.**” This is reminiscent of his words to the Colossians: “**Let your conversation be always full of grace, seasoned with salt, so that you may know how to answer everyone**” (Colossians 4:6; see also Colossians 3:16).

There is a remarkable parallel between Ephesians 4:25, lying; Ephesians 4:28, stealing; and Ephesians 4:29, unwholesome talk. In each case Paul is urging us to be a blessing for those with whom we have daily contact. Paul is emphasizing that merely refraining from telling lies, stealing, or unwholesome speech is not enough. The truth is that Christianity is not a mere “**don’t**” religion. As followers of Christ we should emulate the example of Jesus whose words were so filled with grace that the multitudes were amazed (Luke 4:22).

Jesus reminds us that the words we speak are actually the overflow of our hearts (Matthew 12:34-35). When one becomes a Christian there is an expectancy that a change of speech follows because living for Christ makes a difference in one’s choice of words.

The sinner’s mouth is “**full of cursing and bitterness**” (Romans 3:14); but when we turn our lives over to Christ, we gladly confess that “Jesus is Lord” (Romans 10:9-10). As condemned sinners, our mouths are silenced before the throne of God (Romans 3:19), but as believers, our mouths are opened to praise and glorify God.<sup>30</sup>

Christians are those whose hearts have been changed by the power of God, a change which is reflected in our words. Remember, before we were saved, we lived in spiritual death (Ephesians 2:1-3).

---

<sup>30</sup> See Romans 15:6.

Paul describes those who are dead in sin: ***“Their throats are open graves”*** (Romans 3:13). Our words are full of blessing when the heart is full of blessing. So if we fill our hearts with the love of Christ, only truth and purity can come out of our mouths.

Peter tells us: ***“In your hearts set apart Christ as Lord. Always be prepared to give an answer to everyone who asks you to give the reason for the hope that you have. But do this with gentleness and respect”*** (1 Peter 3:15). Let the power of our words be used of God to manifest the power of our faith. Be prepared to give the reason for why we love the Lord—at any time, to anyone.

Our words should demonstrate the power of God’s grace and the indwelling of the Holy Spirit in our lives. May God enable us to use our words as an instrument of His love and saving grace.

## 4 THE STRONG MAN AND RELATED SPIRITS PERTAINING TO SPEAKING LIES AND DECEIT

This section will deal with the “Strong man” or lying “Spirit” all the related spirits.

### 4.1 Lying, a Complex Phenomenon

According to the field of Psychology self-esteem is one of the main culprits for lying; people also lie for the purpose of maintaining social contacts to avoid insult and discord while lies most commonly used has to do with avoiding conflict as a top motivator for deception.<sup>31</sup>

From the above we see that there is a direct connotation between *lying* and *deceiving*. From a Biblical perspective, lying is not so much a complex phenomenon as what psychology makes it out to be, rather, it is a sin (Leviticus 6:1-4) whether big or small and a direct violation of the ninth commandment (Exodus 20:2-17).

---

<sup>31</sup> Why people lie and the Psychology of Lying. (<http://www.blifaloo.com/info/lying-why/php>).

The most common lie is “**I am fine**”; if that is indeed the case, then this one is surely in heaven for how could one be “fine” living on earth with Satan and his hierarchy still on the loose? **Lying is a strategy of manipulation from the Devil.**

According to Michel de Certeau’s<sup>32</sup> discussion of “strategies and tactics” he refers to “strategy” as; **“the calculation (or manipulation) of power relationships that becomes possible as soon as a subject with ‘will’ and ‘power’ can be isolated.”**

In general “isolation” has a negative connotation to it considering Adam and Eve that hid themselves from God and the prophet who fled for his life only to end up alone under a bush in the wilderness out of fear for Queen Jezebel (I Kings 19).

Given that Certeau’s discussion of “strategy” was directed towards a business, or an army or a scientific institution; a person however do have a “**will**” which enables him, to freely choose to utter a lie or to speak the truth and we know that **“death and life are in the ‘power’ of the tongue”** (Proverbs 18:21). In this we see that man has the ability to freely express his own *will* with the aid of the *power* of the tongue.

Satan uses the same principle in that he seek to manipulate the power of the tongue, and what better way of doing so when he can isolate a “subject” in this case a “human being” who has a ‘will’ and the ‘power’ of death residing in his mouth.

Myles Munroe<sup>33</sup> once said; **“many are the plans in a man’s heart, but the Lord’s purpose prevails.”**

What can we learn from this? It is not God’s purpose for us to lie for every evil stems from the heart of man (Matthew 15:19). God’s purpose and ours are grounded on the fact that **the truth shall prevail** for it is the knowledge of the truth that will set you free (John 8:32) from being *isolated and cut off* from the Lord, a *subject of deception* in the hands of Satan who wants to *manipulate your will and the power of your tongue to proclaim death and destruction*.

---

<sup>32</sup> At Hand: The Tactics of Feminist Media Practice. (<http://www.strikingdistance.com/sd9701/c3ijan97/willis/willis1.html>).

<sup>33</sup> Munroe Myles (1992) In Pursuit of Purpose. Usa: Destiny Image, p. 50.

## 4.2 The Lying Spirit

First and foremost; God never changes. He is the same as He has always been. ***“Jesus Christ, the same yesterday, and today, and for ever”*** (Hebrews 13:8).

The balance of evidence in the Bible indicates conclusively that God always speaks the truth. God never spoke a lie and never will. Satan is the master of lies and in fact is in the inventor of it.

Jesus attests to Satan being the source of all lies when he informed the Pharisees, ***“Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.”*** (John 8:44).

It must be emphasized that not all who lies is possessed by a lying spirit.<sup>34</sup> However, each lie can pave the road to such a condition.

Areas in which a lying spirit is definitely involved are: old wives tales, superstitions, gossip or backbiting, false prophets and teachers, strong delusions and, false witnessing – lies.

Undoubtedly the most pervasive evil spirit operating in the world today is the lying spirit. Matthew 12:29 reads; ***“Or else how can one enter into a strong man's house, and spoil his goods, except he first bind the strong man? and then he will spoil his house.”*** The strong man belongs to a family of spirits known as *deceiving* spirits.

---

<sup>34</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man's His Name ... What's His Game. USA: Shiloh Publishing, p. 46.

By implication their main function in the Dark Kingdom is to deceive men and women of all cultures, societies and religions, even believers. This spirit works in close relationship with religious spirits because *religion* is a key area of Satan's deception in the last days. Satan knows that God created man with an innate need for fellowship with God which was lost through Adam's sin, that need still exists in every human being.

The enemy knows that if he doesn't fill this innate missing piece of relationship birthed in man with something false something he can use to send people to hell, then that person is more apt to discover the truth that God has provided a way for man to be redeemed and restored to the Family of God through His Son Jesus Christ. The Bible testifies of the rise and fall of nations during the end times. The question is now; how does this relate to a person and evil spirits? A nation is like a person; the more they open themselves to the devil the more he comes in and occupies, possessing ground that does not belong to him. Sin is the key that opens the door for evil spirits to come in and occupy.

Two of the greatest spirits in operation today on the earth are ***"religious spirits"*** and ***"deceiving spirits"*** which are spirits confined to specific geological areas or grids on the earth.<sup>35</sup> Both these groups of spirits as well as the lying spirit are found throughout the world in each "grid" or geographical area. One common expression; "birds of a feather flock together" is applicable to these spirits because they are a family of spirits.

The lying spirit has dominated the world, governments, nations, society and many Churches.

According to Apostle J.P. Timmons;<sup>36</sup> "few seem to care that we get nothing but lies from some of our Presidents, and various other public officials. He asks the question; where is the outrage, where is the accountability? It seems to have become the accepted norm that some politicians do lie."

---

<sup>35</sup> The Lying Spirit ([http://ccipublishing.net/yahoo\\_site\\_admin/assets/docs/THE\\_LYING\\_SPIRIT2-5-2012.84135922.pdf](http://ccipublishing.net/yahoo_site_admin/assets/docs/THE_LYING_SPIRIT2-5-2012.84135922.pdf))

<sup>36</sup> Ibid.

To a great extent many of today's large corporations have followed in the footsteps of their governments in being influenced by lying spirits. They are not the bastions of integrity and honesty that they once were mainly due to a spirit of greed. Yet there is little deterrent to this madness for the risks are outweighed by the rewards or so some think.

Timmons goes on stating that;

**“The lying spirit remains in the heart of a person and that one can see it in the eyes, for our eyes are the doorway into our souls and spirits.”<sup>37</sup>**

Matthew 6:22-23 portrays as follows;

***The light of the body is the eye: if therefore thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light. But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If therefore the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!***

***Matthew 6:22-23***

The question abounds; how do you keep the lying spirit from entering? Ephesians 4:27 reads; **“Give no place to the devil.”** For this reason put sin out of your life because sin is an open door through which evil spirits can enter. Lying is a sin and pave the way to the lake of fire.

***But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.***

***Revelation 21:8***

---

<sup>37</sup> The Lying Spirit ([http://ccipublishing.net/yahoo\\_site\\_admin/assets/docs/THE\\_LYING\\_SPIRIT2-5-2012.84135922.pdf](http://ccipublishing.net/yahoo_site_admin/assets/docs/THE_LYING_SPIRIT2-5-2012.84135922.pdf)), p. 4.



Deception lies in “**unconditional security**” that once one accept Christ as Saviour then nothing one can do will cause one to fall from grace but the Bible teach otherwise and “**Jesus said if you’re a liar then your Father is not the same as His Father:**” (John 8:54).

Even if one lie in order to protect someone, this can be used against you as an open-door for demonic affliction.

#### 4.2.1 Superstition

Superstition thrives in a spiritually starved and morally bankrupt society. One who does not know God, tend to turn to superstition for release of tensions and to seek after forbidden knowledge.

The Bible gives conclusive evidence that there is no such thing as “luck,” either good or bad, Man receive what he needs because God provides it, “**...according to his riches in glory by Christ Jesus**” (Philippians 4:19).

David writes that, “**The steps of a good man are ordered by the Lord: and he delighteth in his way**” (Psalm 37:23).

A believer must not fear so called “bad luck” when disaster strikes “**For the Lord shall be thy confidence, and shall keep thy foot from being taken**” (Proverbs 3:25, 26). The Question is asked; where does superstition come from?

According to one source; “Superstition was born because mankind in his deepest being aches for the supernatural;” he explains; “the devoid of truth and life in Christ, foolish and stupid ideas are formed and taught as superstition.”<sup>38</sup>

---

<sup>38</sup> Sumrall Dr Lester (2001) Demonology and Deliverance. India: Sumrall Publishing, p. 132.

Man's soul rejects the wholly materialistic way of life which led to the immortal soul starving after spiritual food when fed philosophy, scientific facts, and religious ritualism.<sup>39</sup> Sumrall holds that the soul; "instinctively seeks release in the unknown."<sup>40</sup>

Biblical faith is not founded on the stars to find God's will for life. A believer knows the will of God by Christ Jesus, the living Word (John 1:1). The apostle Paul wrote in I Timothy 4:7; ***"For God hath not called us unto uncleanness, but unto holiness."***

Superstition is from the pit of hell and based on a "lie" for as Christians we know ***"that all things work together for good to them that love God"*** (Romans 8:28).

Our security is in the shed blood of Christ, through which Christians have divine power over superstition. John 16:13 reads; ***"Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, He will guide you into all truth."***

It must be stressed that the truth destroys error. Sumrall ends by saying; ***"I feels that witchcraft and superstitions are damning powers for a nation or a person."***<sup>41</sup>

In essence superstition is a false belief based on a lie.

#### 4.2.2 Gossiping

Paul refers to it as "backbiting" and it is one of the most fiendish forms of lying (Romans 1:30). It is a weapon to hurt, ruin and destroy innocent victims who usually aren't present to defend themselves.

To gossip is to engage in character assassination with lethal barrages. In many instances believers are members of the only army worldwide that kills its own wounded.

---

<sup>39</sup> Sumrall Dr Lester (2001) Demonology and Deliverance. India: Sumrall Publishing, p. 132.

<sup>40</sup> Ibid, p. 132.

<sup>41</sup> Ibid, p. 133.

Gossiping off someone behind his back is a sin for Jesus said, ***“...every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment”*** (Matthew 12:36).

A person who gossips, degrades another and is nothing else than ***“a loud speaker for the devil’s lies.”*** Spreading lies destroys reputations, ministries, marriages and relationships.

Robeson refers to ***“gossiping as a form of spiritual cannibalism.”***<sup>42</sup>

In essence; gossip isn’t just a character flaw in that it can possess an individual to the point that even though this one hates himself for doing it, one can’t refrain from doing it. A gossip is in the grips of the strongman, the lying spirit.

The “mouth,” should be a loud speaker to speak only those things which are honest, just, pure, of a good report (Philippians 4:8).

### 4.2.3 False Teachers

The motive behind this heresy is money. Satan uses this spirit of greed to operate through those who love money and are in leader positions to sow his seeds of deception.

The apostle Peter testifies to false prophets and teachers who invent erroneous doctrines to cause people to support them in the manner to which they have become accustomed a life of wealth. Their teachings are nothing more than deceitful lies of Satan.

II Peter 2:1-2 reads; ***“But were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. And many shall follow their pernicious ways;”***

---

<sup>42</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man’s His Name ... What’s His Game. USA: Shiloh Publishing, p. 48.

The Word of God is the final authority and if believers are to recognize these frauds, they cannot allow themselves the luxury of being swayed by these imposter's personalities and to an extent even their miracles.

The warning is in this; it will be one of the great attractions of the antichrist and the false prophet in the last days.

### 4.3 Dumb and Deaf Spirit

The account from which one get the name of this strongman is recorded in Mark 9:17-18,25;

***And one of the multitude answered and said, Master, I have brought unto thee my son, which hath a dumb spirit; And wheresoever he taketh him, he teareth him: and he foameth, and gnasheth with his teeth, and pineth away: and I spake to thy disciples that they should cast him out; and they could not.... When Jesus saw that the people came running together, he rebuked the foul spirit, saying unto him, Thou dumb and deaf spirit, I charge thee, come out of him, and enter no more into him.***

***Mark 9:17-18,25***

From the above we recognize that this is a clear-cut case of demon possession because the boy was forced by this evil spirit to act contrary to normal human behavior.

Our Liberty is in Jesus Christ for He came ***"...that He might destroy the works of the devil"*** (1 John 3:8).

- **Spiritual Covering of Parents**

From the above verse we see that children can be bothered and even be possessed by evil spirits in extreme cases, usually because the parents or grandparents even have been involved in the occult or when at least one of the family members was involved in demonic activities.

When Jesus told the father that he must cooperate in the matter, he cried out in tears, ***“Lord I believe; help thou mine unbelief”*** (v. 24).

John Charles Ryle<sup>43</sup> with regards to “The Heavy Burdens of Pride and ‘Unbelief’” was once quoted in saying;

**“But above all we must take heed that we lay aside the sin which does most easily beset us, the sin which from our age – or habit – or taste – or disposition – or feelings, possesses the greatest power over us. I know of two which are always at our elbows, two sins which try the most advanced Christians even to the end, and these are pride and unbelief”.**

As believers and parents we provide a spiritual covering over our children that will protect them from evil. Anything that is in contradiction to God’s Word should be dealt with on a spiritual level while they are still babies.

Their survival in this ungodly world may depend upon parents taking dominion over the dark forces that would like to grab our children away from under us. Pray and command the forces of darkness to leave our loved ones alone, on a daily basis!

In addition Christians must apply discipline on a physical level as needed for the Bible instructs; ***“Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it”*** (Proverbs 22:6).

Symptoms of the Dumb and Deaf spirit includes: Epilepsy; foaming, gnashing, pining away, falling on the ground violently. Robeson states that not one case of epilepsy that has not been healed if the person remained to ***“hear the Word”*** over a period of time.<sup>44</sup> The Bible affirms that the Word brings healing.

---

<sup>43</sup> The Heavy Burdens of Pride and Unbelief.. (<http://jcrylequotes.wordpress.com/2010/01/07/the-heavy-burdens-of-pride-and-unbelief/>)

<sup>44</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man’s His Name ... What’s His Game. USA: Shiloh-Publishing, p. 97.

Proverbs 4:20-22 states; ***“My son, attend to my words; incline thine ear unto my sayings. Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep them in the midst of thine heart. For they are life unto those that find them, and health to all their flesh.”***

#### 4.4 The Perverse Spirit

Perversion by definition refers to that which is **“fraudulent, crooked, or distorted from the original design and purpose.”**<sup>45</sup> This strongman is noted in Isaiah 19:14; “The LORD hath mingled a perverse spirit in the midst thereof: and they have caused Egypt to err in every work thereof, as a drunken man staggered in his vomit.

The table below refers to a list of manifestations of the perverse spirit:

<b>Wounded Spirit:</b> Cause a breach in one's spirit – Prov 15:4	<b>Snare:</b> Causes one to fall into mischief – Prov 17:20,23
<b>Error:</b> cause one to err – (Isa 19:14)	<b>Hate:</b> Causes one to hate God – Prof 14:2
<b>Fool:</b> one who speaks perverse words – Prov 19:1	<b>Despised:</b> causes one to be despised by others – Prov 12:8
<b>Lust:</b> causes one to look unto the opposite sex, and think perverse things – Prov 23:33	<b>Fret:</b> causes on to fet against the Lord – Prov 19:3
<b>Pervert the Gospel:</b> to twist the Word to Satan's advantage; misinterpret – 2 pet 3:16,17	<b>Child of the Devil:</b> one who perverts the right ways of the Lord – Acts 13:10
<b>Rebellion:</b> all rebellion – witchcraft is against God, and the way He created things – I Sam 15:23	<b>Sexual perversion:</b> homosexuality, prostitution, all sexual deviation – Lev 20:13
<b>Self-lovers:</b> in the last days men will be lovers of themselves – 2 Tim 3:2	<b>False-teacher:</b> 2 Peter – entire second chapter

**Table 1:** Manifestations of the perverse spirit<sup>46</sup>

---

<sup>45</sup> Price Dr Paula (2006) The Prophet's Dictionary, The Ultimate Guide to Supernatural Wisdom. USA: Whitaker House, p. 380.

<sup>46</sup> Garrison Mary (1976) How to Try a Spirit – By their fruits you will know the. USA: Unknown, p 37.

#### 4.4.1 Persisting with the Unnatural

Exchanging the natural for the unnatural can lead to God withdrawing from a person or a nation altogether. Romans 1:28 reads; ***“And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient;”***

When a person or a believer insist on doing the unnatural, God withdraw His presence and a **“reprobate mind”** moves in. The result: he becomes so twisted in his thinking process he thinks his lifestyle is actually normal.

Homosexuality is such an example as they seek respectability for their perverted practices.

Times, customs and philosophies may have altered but God's infallible Word has not. Those who obey the Word, receive God's blessings and those who don't, not only feel the displeasure of God, but experience the results of their perverse thoughts, words spoken and physical deeds.

People who embrace the New Morality the world has to offer and its related branches may scoff at God's Word, but the truth is that those persist on breaking God's laws receive, ***“...in themselves that recompense of their error...”*** (Romans 1:27).

One such recompense is aids which renders thousands sweating in terror. An estimated 100 million worldwide could die from this disease by the end of this century.<sup>47</sup>

Leviticus Chapter 20 speaks off the gravity of sexual perversion; homosexuality, incest, adultery and bestiality are all punishable by death (Leviticus 20:10-17).

---

<sup>47</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man's His Name ... What's His Game. USA: Shiloh-Publishing, p. 54.

A twisted mind of a perverse man or woman is a stronghold of Satan. The perverse strongman aims to see how far he can detour mankind from God's blueprint for human conduct. The perverse spirit seeks to lead humanity in the exact opposite direction as what the Word instructs them to follow.

#### 4.4.2 The Battle in Overcoming a Perverse Spirit

Instead of bewailing the fact that the world is drastically rotting away, believers must apply some of the preservative salt that Jesus says we are to be in this world (Matthew 5:13). In every opportunity take dominion over the perverse spirits in the name of Jesus Christ. Whenever one come across pornography, abortion, homosexuals, lesbians, child abusers, sex clubs, filthy communication, false cults and perverse speech, sexual of nature one can be assured a perverse strongman is in operation.<sup>48</sup>

From the above, **“perversion not only relates to the physical but to thoughts and perverse speech as well.”**

J.G. Ballard<sup>49</sup> with regards to perversion was once quoted in saying; **“it’s probably only in terms of the perversion that we can make contact with each other at all;”** and yet another; **“Certainly nothing is unnatural that is not physically impossible.”** Lying is one thing, but using a lie to justify one's belief is foolhardy.

The person with a perverse spirit, **“form the heart perverse thoughts are projected through his mouth piece”** sowing seeds of perversion **“for the tongue is a fire, a world of iniquity”** (James 3:6a). In addition the Bible teach that the tongue is **“set among our members, spotting all the body and inflaming the course of nature, and being inflamed by hell”** (James 3:6b).

---

<sup>48</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man's His Name ... What's His Game. USA: Shiloh-Publishing, p. 57.

<sup>49</sup> Quotes About Perversion. (<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/perversion>).



The tongue is a little member but be assured, its power and influence for good or bad as in this case, are out of proportion to its size. As believers we stumble in many things, yet ***“if one does not stumble in that what ONE SPEAK, such is a perfect man”*** (James 3:2).

The question is asked; can we as Christians dare underestimate the power of the tongue? Considering that ***“every temptation Jesus had to endure came in the form of verbal utterance through the mouth piece”*** of a fallen angel, one which himself is the epitome of perversion. No fallen angel is worthy to be worship nor anything created, there is none like the Lord Jesus Christ before which even ***“the mountains melt like wax”*** (Psalm 97:5).

Throughout all of history the tongue has caused more destruction, more discord and more deaths than any disease known to man. In this is ***“Satan’s interest in the mouth as a weapon of destruction,”*** a member of the body untameable, and of unruly evil, a member full of deadly poison (James 3:7-8).

#### 4.5 The Spirit of Heaviness

Destructive words along with words that wounds can open the Christian to the spirit of Heaviness Isaiah 61:3 portrays as follows: ***“To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness;”***

From this text the following symptoms are evident: excessive mourning, sorrow and grief, depression, despair, dejection, hopelessness, self-pity, loneliness, disappointment, insomnia, inner hurts and bruises.<sup>50</sup>

The aim of this spirit is to take our joy of living by loading us down with heaviness. He sneaks in when a person is mourning and keeps him in an abnormal state of perpetual grief.

---

<sup>50</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man’s His Name ... What’s His Game. USA: Shiloh-Publishing, p. 65.

The question asked; how does one combat this spirit? A Biblical example of one who had the revelation of God in his heart is the prophet Isaiah. Evident from the Book of Isaiah is the use of **“the mouth piece to proclaim the Gospel of Christ.”**

The joy of the Lord, as the power and might of the Spirit of God, is a strong supportive foundation that overflows into those in Christ with joy, grace favor, and courage to strengthen the believer.<sup>51</sup>

The joy of the Lord not only encourages but fills one with **“boldness to speak.”** Isaiah proclaimed that the Lord has sent him to preach the “Good News,” to bind up the broken hearted, to declare liberty for the captives, to declare release from darkness for the prisoners and to proclaim the year of the Lord’s favour.

The prophet declared that God promised **“oil of joy”** for the mourning and **“the garment of praise”** for the spirit of heaviness. Driven by a relationship with God, celebration stems not from self-centeredness, but out of the “Gospel of Christ.”

Satan rules with fear and it is through fear that he assaults the heart of the Christian in the area of “Good News”.<sup>52</sup> The believer must not allow fear or unbelief into his heart and mind, for he is born to fight.

As a warrior one must constantly *declare* **“the Joy of the LORD is my strength”** (Nehemiah 8:10). Celebrating God, strengthens the spirit and the believer will be filled with joy.

The question abounds; where does a slumbering spirit fit in? The father is primarily responsible to awaken the spirit of “his” child and to educate them. Little, or no, tender loving care result in the child’s spirit being asleep. One can be born again yet **“a sleeping / slumbering spirit renders one incapable of hearing the voice of God”** (Isaiah 52:1-2). If you can’t hear the voice of the Lord how do you proclaim the Good News?

---

<sup>51</sup> Brand Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) Lecture: Satan’s Assault. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng

<sup>52</sup> Ibid

Communication is a dialogue not a monologue!

One who has a slumbering spirit looses the garment of Jesus Christ and walks about in the shame of his flesh. Revelation 16:15 depicts;

***Behold, I come like a thief! Blessed is he who stays awake and keeps his clothes with him, so that he may not go naked and be shamefully exposed.***

***Revelation 16:15***

#### **4.5.1 This Commandment – Not Hidden – Not Far Off – Not In Heaven**

Without joy, without love, without the garment of praise, a Christian is naked and vulnerable.

***For this commandment which I command thee this day, it is not hidden from thee, neither is it far off. It is not in heaven, that thou shouldest say, Who shall go up for us to heaven, and bring it unto us, that we may hear it, and do it? Neither is it beyond the sea, that thou shouldest say, Who shall go over the sea for us, and bring it unto us, that we may hear it, and do it? But the word is very nigh unto thee, in thy mouth, and in thy heart, that thou mayest do it.***

***Deuteronomy 30:11-14***

The joy of the Lord stems from the heart; is in your mouth and on your lips. This forms the foundation for eating, preaching and living the Word.

#### **4.5.2 Turning Your Heart from Ashes Into Beauty**

Believers do not concentrate their attention on death, but on Christ, who is Life. ***“...but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before, I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus”*** (Philippians 3:13,14)

The prophet assures believers that God wants to turn our “ashes” or death experiences into something of beauty. How is this possible? By putting on the garment of praise and applying the oil of joy to ones aching heart.

One put on the garment of praise by thanking God for the time He gave us with the loved one here on earth and reflect on the positive areas of their life and keep them in our memory, but one absolutely do not allow self-pity to take control of one’s life.

When the spirit of heaviness comes knocking remind him of this; I trust God to give and to take for how wonderful it is that we are called children of God.

I John 3:1 reads; ***“Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.”***

When facing depression we should learn from the account of David and King Saul in I Samuel 16:23. David in playing anointed psalms of praise to God resulted in the attacks of the spirit of heaviness being dispelled. The garment of praise is the most effective deterrent against this spirit.

**The role of mouth piece in combating this spirit is founded on the fact that God does in habit the praises of his people** (Psalm 22:3).

#### **4.5.3 A Prayer for Overcoming the Spirit of Heaviness**

Pray; “Satan, in the Name of Jesus Christ I bind your spirit of heaviness according to Matthew 18:18 that promises, ‘...***whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven:***’ I recognize now that you have taken advantage of me. I choose now to resist you in the Name of Jesus.

#### 4.5.4 A Prayer of Conformation

Pray; “Thank you, Father, for delivering me from the trap of the enemy. According to Matthew 18:18 that says, ‘...**whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall loosed in heaven,**’ I lose the Comforter, which is the Holy Spirit, the Garment of Praise and the Oil of Joy. I praise Your Holy Name. Thank you Jesus for Your Goodness and Mercy to me. Thank you for hearing and answering my prayer. Amen.”<sup>53</sup>

To stay free of oppression, the believer has to forgive all who spoke evil against him and has to release all areas of disappointment and of discouragement. The way to victory is renounce living with condemnation and fear, and put on the garment of praise.

#### 4.6 The Spirit of Divination and the Familiar Spirit

By Definition: “Divination is an institution of retrieving and exchanging spiritual information that reports on people’s futures – fortunes & tragedies from different objects.”<sup>54</sup>

##### 4.6.1 One of the Tricks of this Spirit is to Usurp the Reputation of God’s Leaders

A Biblical example is found in Acts 16:16-18; “**And it came to pass, as we went to prayer, a certaintamsel possessed with a SPIRIT OF DIVINATION met us, which brought her masters much gain by soothsaying: The same followed Paul and us, and cried, saying, These men are the servants of the most high God, which shew unto us the way of salvation.**” “**And this did she many days. But Paul, being grieved, turned and said to the spirit, I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her. And he came out the same hour.**”

---

<sup>53</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man’s His Name ... What’s His Game. USA: Shiloh-Publishing, p. 71.

<sup>54</sup> Price Dr Paula (2006) The Prophet’s Dictionary, The Ultimate Guide to Supernatural Wisdom. USA: Whitaker House, p. 166.

Paul realized that although she was stating the truth, the purpose of Satan was to make people think she was in league with the Apostles, and that they also were working miracles by the same evil spirits. Notice, she followed them as if she were connected with their purpose, being part of them.

This is a trick still used by Satan. In explanation; a well-known man of God will hold a meeting in a town. Then a person with a spirit of divination follows this man. This one will speak very well of the minister, and insinuate the he is working closely with the particular, under his approval.

The purpose is to use the reputation of the preceding minister which gives him an opening to minister by a lying spirit, in order to deceive the people and to discredit the true message of God.

According to Elizabeth Best,<sup>55</sup> the Spirit of Divination is one who attempts to mock and emulate the workings of the Holy Spirit.

The question is now; what are Christians to do? The answer is found in I John 4:1 which reads; ***“Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world.”***

The idea behind divination is that fates and futures could be learned from evil spirits occupying or circulating the vicinity of their so called expected occurrence or that of the querant.<sup>56 57</sup>

***And I have seen folly in the prophets of Samaria; they prophesied in Baal, and caused my people Israel to err.***

***Jeremiah 23:13***

---

<sup>55</sup> Prophecy vs Divination. (<http://freewebs.com/churchandgenocide/pvd.pdf>).

<sup>56</sup> Price Dr Paula A (2006) The Prophet's Dictionary, The Ultimate Guide to Supernatural Wisdom. USA: Whitaker House, p. 167

<sup>57</sup> Querant: An individual who goes to psychic readers – involve tarot card reading. (<http://www.seadict.com/en/en/querant>).

#### 4.6.2 Baal a Spirit of Divination

Jonas Clark<sup>58</sup> explain that ***“Baal is a spirit of divination”*** (false prophesy) which bring about error and lead people astray. In Jeremiah 14:14 God makes mention of this; ***“The prophets prophesy lies in my name: I sent them not, neither have I commanded them, neither spake unto them: they prophesy unto you a false vision and divination, and a thing of nought, and the deceit of their heart.”*** Clark<sup>59</sup> adds that it is a ***“form of prophetic witchcraft which do not lead people into liberty and freedom from sin, but straight into sin’s bondage.”***

#### 4.6.3 The Spirit of Divination and the Familiar Spirit - Family

To identify the strongman we will turn to I Samuel 28:7,8 reads; ***Then said Saul unto his servants, Seek me a women that hath a FAMILIAR SPIRIT, that I may go to her, and enquire of her. And his servants said to him, Behold, there is a woman that hath a FAMILIAR SPIRIT at Endor. And Saul disguised himself, and put on other raiment, and he went, and two men with him, and they came to the woman by night: and he said, I pray thee, divine unto me by the FAMILIAR SPIRIT, and bring me him up, whom I shall name unto thee”***

The Familiar Spirit is a “divining demon working through a sorcerer or conjurer; a witch’s or occultist’s guide. The term was derived from the generation spirit that supplied a family with its paranormal knowledge and spiritual insight. This spirit is thought to belong to the family line; therefore it was worshipped and sought for ancient and spiritual divine light and information. Spiritism, necromancy, and psychic revelation were believed to come to certain ‘gifted’ members of the family through this medium where **“this spirit also used the mouths of people to speak through as a mediator”**. Biblical examples are found in Leviticus 20:27; I Samuel 28:8; I Chronicles 10:13; II Chronicles 33:6; Isaiah 29:24).<sup>60</sup>

---

<sup>58</sup> Exposing Prophetic Witchcraft. (<http://www.jonasclark.com/prophetic-ministry/exposing-prophetic-ministry-witchcraft.html>)

<sup>59</sup> Ibid.

<sup>60</sup> Price Dr Paula (2006) The Prophet’s Dictionary, The Ultimate Guide to Supernatural Wisdom. USA: Whitaker House, p. 212.

#### 4.6.4 Some Manifestations of the Spirit of Divination and the Familiar Spirit

The table below refers to some of the manifestations:

<b>Enchanter:</b> magician	<b>Hypnotist:</b> a charmer
<b>Soothsayer:</b> observer of times, Almanac, horoscopes, etc.	<b>Necromancer:</b> one who consults the dead
<b>Medium:</b> .consulter with FAMILILIAR SPIRITS	<b>Clairvoyant:</b> witch or wizard
<b>Witch or Wizard:</b> one who practices witchcraft and sorcery	<b>Diviner:</b> witch or wizard
<b>Conjurer:</b> one who commands or summons a demon to appear; Deuteronomy 18:9-12 reads; <i>“...Thou shalt not learn to do after abominations of those nations. There shall not be found amongyou anyone ... that useth divination, or an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch, or a chamer, or consulter with FAMILIAR SPIRITS, or a wizard, or a necromancer. For all that do these things are an abomination unto the Lord!...”</i>	
<b>Star Gazer:</b> one who studies the stars and worships them – Isa 47:13	<b>Astrologers:</b> those used in an effort to foretell the future, and advise the King
<b>Belomancy:</b> divination by arrows – Ezek. 21:21	<b>Water witching:</b> divination by rod – Hos. 4:12
<b>Splanchnomancy:</b> – divination by inspection of entrails – Ezek. 21:21	<b>Teraphim:</b> – images consulted for advice – Jud. 17:5
<b>Mutterer:</b> one who communicates with the FAMILILIAR SPIRIT as if talking to himself – Isa. 8:19	<b>Ventriloquist:</b> a person who throws his voice – Isa 29:4;8:19; those speaking from the earth, from the bell; ghosts that cheep, gibber, whisper, chatter, and coo, in low murmurs; making a noise by barely opening the mouth.
<b>Peeping Tom:</b> – a person who gets pleasure, especially sexual pleasure, from watching others from a place of concealment – Web. New World Dict.	Mimicry and Pantomiming can also be a manifestation of the FAMILIAR SPIRIT.

**Table 2:** Some of the Manifestations of the Spirit of Divination and the Familiar Spirit



In essence, divination is the art of attaining undisclosed knowledge, especially of the future; a pagan equivalent of prophecy. Scripture do reveal that inspirational divination is by demonic power; whereas, genuine prophecy is by the Spirit of God. The Biblical attitude toward divination is one of abomination towards God (Deuteronomy 18:10,12).

These two demonic spirits are related in their manifestations; whereas the spirit of divination seems to be aided and energized by the familiar spirit.<sup>61</sup>

A familiar spirit is also referred to as a “**personal spirit guide**,” and is a servant to be summoned at will and is generally passed on in a family, down through generations. Objects are also used in fortunetelling. The table below refers to such objects which include:

Crystal ball	Tea leaves
Ouija board	Dreams
Cards	Horoscope
Signs	Pendulum
Mind reading	Palm reading

**Table 3:** Objects that are used in fortunetelling.<sup>62</sup>

In essence anything that can be used to procure an answer will be used. Something worn to prevent an ill, such as good luck charms, a rabbit’s foot, an idol, a cross, etc.

Other methods used in sorcery include; reciting a magic verse, to cast a spell, to put one in a trance and soul travel. Anyone who practices witchcraft, and worships Satan, is in a confederacy with Satan, the adversary of God and mankind.

---

<sup>61</sup> Garrison Mary (1976) How to Try a Spirit – By their fruits you will know the. USA: Unknown, p. 42.

<sup>62</sup> Ibid, p. 43.

In Summary: Both, the Familiar Spirit and Spirit of Divination work in close relationship. Divination is tapping into Satan's knowledge in order to for tell the future. These spirits cannot be relied upon for guidance for their brand of guidance leads Christians downward slowly being sucked into a whirlpool of evil.<sup>63</sup>

#### 4.7 Spirit of Haughtiness – Pride

The bible teach that ***"Pride goeth before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall"*** (Proverb 16:18) as is evident when Lucifer filled with pride, boasted, ***"I will be like the most High"*** (Isaiah 14:14). Pride paves the way to Hell. The modern expression ***"I did it my way,"*** speaks of the attitude of prideful, haughty man.

It is elevating the opinion of self-combined with the believe in self which see the crumbling of any Christian ministry. Confessing I, me, and myself opens the door for this spirit to enter a person. The deception in a case like this is that such a believer appears to be successful, but upon digging down the outward glitter there is usually an alcohol, drug or health problem, a string of broken marriages and an extremely unhappy, lonely man. The question is why? Because there is not true success apart from doing the Will of God for one's life.

Proverbs 22:24 reads; ***"By humility and the fear of the Lord are riches, and honor, and life."***

In addition Jesus said, ***"For whosoever exalteth himself shall be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted"*** (Luke 4:11).

The lesson to be learned are summed up in the words Jesus spoke; ***"I can of mine own self do nothing...because I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father which hath sent me"*** (John 5:30).

---

<sup>63</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man's His Name ...What's His Game. USA: Shiloh Publishing, p. 16.

Proverbs 16:19 reads; ***“Better it is to be of an humble spirit with the lowly, than to divide the spoil with the proud”.***

True humility is recognizing that one’s ***“righteousnesses are as filthy rags;”*** and that one can do nothing without the help and direction of God in one’s life (Isaiah 64:6).

Any deviancy from this divine principle will bring the haughty strongman’s influence into one’s life to the degree that one think one is capable of running one’s life apart from God.

The teaching of I Peter 5:6-7 reiterates this principle;

***Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time: Casting all your care upon him; for he careth for you.***

***I Peter 5:6-7***

#### **4.7.1 The Robbery**

This spirit attempts to rob one of God’s best for one’s life. The following symptoms are evident in a person with haughty spirit: pride, arrogance, contentiousness, scornful anger, obstinacy, stubbornness, rebellion and boastfulness.

Scriptures related to the above are:

- **Proverbs 13:10:** *“Only by pride cometh contention: but with the well advised is wisdom”*
- **Isaiah 2:11:** *“The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day”*

- **Proverbs 21:24:** *“Proud and haughty sconer is his name, who dealeth in proud wrath”*
- **I Samuel 15:23:** *“For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry”*
- **Proverbs 6:16,17:** *“These six things doth the Lord hate: yea, seven are an abomination unto him: A proud look...”*
- **Ezekiel 16:49,50:** *“Behold, this was the iniquity of thy sister Sodom, pride, fullness of bread, and abundance of idleness was in her an in her daughters, neither did she strengthen the hand of the poor and needy. And they were haughty, and committed abomination before me: therefore I took them away as I saw good.”*

The aim of this spirit is to obstruct spiritual progress.<sup>64</sup> The question is asked, what are believers to do? Believers are the catalyst in the process of ***“Humbling themselves in the sight of the Lord that He shall lift you up”*** (James 4:10). This process starts with forgiveness!

The following prayer can be prayed: “Father, your son/daughter come to You in the Name of Your Son Jesus Christ. I recognize that I have not allowed You to reign supreme in my life; forgive me for this terrible sin. I humble myself bow before You with a contrite spirit and a broken heart and ask that You make something beautiful out of my life.”

#### **4.7.2 To Bind The Enemy Pray Proclaim as Follows:**

I bind you spirit of haughtiness according to Matthew 18:18 which declares, ***“Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven:”***

---

<sup>64</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man’s His Name ... What’s His Game. USA: Shiloh-Publishing, p. 62.

I recognize you Satan for what you are, a thief and a robber. From this day I refuse to allow you to lead me away from God's Will for my life.

#### 4.7.3 In Addition Pray to Loose the Spirit of God in Your Life:

Thank you Father, for Your forgiveness of my selfish and prideful sin. According to Matthew 18:18 that promises, ***"...whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."*** I loose a Humble Spirit, a Spirit of Holiness in my life to lead me in the path which You have destined for me. I recognize Your Word as, ***"a lamp unto my feet, and light unto my path"*** (Psalms 119:105). Thank you, Lord for hearing and answering this prayer. Amen.

### 5. WORDS – YOUR DESTINY AND YOUR SPIRIT

In the account of Numbers 14 one can see that men as do nations can shape their destinies with the use of the tongue through that which is proclaimed, whether positive or negative.<sup>65</sup> The question is what caused such negative behavior when Israel refused to go and take the Promised Land? Was it because of fear, wrong belief or negative talks? Why did they show such a disorderly character?

One source writes as follows; ***"A frequent cause of disordered behavior is a person's failure to examine his/her beliefs (attitudes, ideas, thoughts) and "SELF-TALK" and the concomitant tendency not to question them, though they be painful, cruel, and untrue."***<sup>66</sup>

This thesis belief that their disorderly and negative character was directly related to their misbelief and the fruit of their ***"self-talk."***

---

<sup>65</sup> Prince Derek (1986) Does Your Tongue Need Healing. USA: Whitaker House, p. 35.

<sup>66</sup> Backus William and Chapian Marie (2000) Telling Yourself the Truth. USA: Bethany House Publishers, p. 180.

The question arises; what is misbelief? Authors William Backus and Marie Chapian<sup>67</sup> explain that **“misbelief starts in self-talk,”** and that self-talk includes “your lies” and “half-truths” you repeat to your-self. The question abounds; what made Caleb different, why did he go on to possess the Promised Land?

Caleb settled his destiny for the positive.<sup>68</sup> He who speaks positively received life, for in him he **“had different spirit,”** one which did not provoke God to anger (v. 24a). In addition **“caleb’s words sealed his inheritance”** for his seed did possess the Promised Land (v. 24b). Quite the opposite happened with the “evil congregation” referring to Israel who provoked God due to their murmuring which ultimately sealed their fate in death for they did not enter the Promised Land (v. 27-29).

**“Self-talk in this context, is lying to yourself in your mind.”** It is questioning one’s ability to do something. The nation, instead of focusing on God who already gave them the Promised Land, shrunk in disbelief of their own ability. **“Their murmuring was the resultant fruit of their disbelief expressing itself verbally in their minds which in turn overflow from their lips.”**

Instead of trusting in God, they choose to belief a lie due to their own disbelief in reasoning, we can’t take this land.

Words muttered in disbelief resulted in their physical death for **“your carcasses shall fall in this wilderness...from twenty years up ward, which have murmered against Me”** (Numbers 14:19).

In summary: believing a lie and their babbling about it led to rejecting the truth in that God already gave them the land; they brought a curse upon themselves through their words of disbelief which caused their physical death.

---

<sup>67</sup> Backus William and Chapian Marie (2000) Telling Yourself the Truth. USA: Bethany House Publishers, p. 28.

<sup>68</sup> P rince Derek (1986) Does Your Tongue Need Healing. USA: Whitaker House, p. 38.

***But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.***

***Revelation 21:8***

As a warning, from the above verse is evident that “liars” is singled out as one group which will not inter the gates of Heaven.

***Lying lips are abomination to the LORD: but they that deal truly are his delight.***

***Proverbs 12:22***

## **5.1 I’ll Advised Words and the Provoked Spirit**

The question arises; what if anything can provoke a person’s spirit? Psalm 106:33 reflects a situation where anger provoked Moses spirit in that it ***“went ill with him”*** so that ***“he spoke unadvisedly with his lips.”***

When angered a person is usually quick to speak words of judgment, for as such ***“hasty speech is more harmful than foolishness”*** (Proverbs 29:20).

Proverbs 15:1 testifies to a soft word turning away wrath where a harsh words turns anger.

Ecclesiastes 7:9 reads; ***“Be not hasty in thy spirit to be angry: for anger resteth in the bosom of fools.”***

Matthew Henry<sup>69</sup> in his commentary writes as follows; ***“It is folly to cry out (to proclaim by word of mouth) upon the badness of our times, when one have more reason to cry out for the wickedness of one’s own heart’; and even in these times, one enjoy many mercies.”***

---

<sup>69</sup> Matthew Henry’s concise commentary on Ecclesiastes 7:7-10. (<http://biblehub.com/exlesiastes/7-9.htm>).

In conclusion some wise words; in due time when correction comes upon you, do not hasten in your soul to be hot to proclaim words of rebellion against heaven; such is good advice.<sup>70</sup>

In times of hardship such as Moses faced, choose to ***“draw near to God with a true heart in full assurance of faith”*** (Hebrews 10:22a) as Caleb demonstrated, ***“having our hearts and our members (the mouth piece) washed with pure water”*** (Hebrews 10:22b). For the ***“life-giving fountain belongs to the Lord”*** (Psalm 36:9).

Hold fast to ***“the profession of your faith with your lips”*** (Hebrews 10:23) and ***“provoke your brother unto love and good works”*** (Hebrews 10:24).

## 5.2 Words and the Wounded Spirit

Proverbs 18:4 makes a statement, yet asks a vital question: ***“The spirit of a man will sustain his infirmity”*** (physical or mental weaknesses), ***“but a wounded spirit who can bear.”***

Physical affliction is one thing but wounding the spirit knocks one back and some are unable to rise above their wounded spirit. The question is why?

One answer is because of a result of negative, harmful words<sup>71</sup>; crushes an area of a person's life which is a devastating blow.<sup>72</sup> Destructive words penetrate deep into the spirit having the effect of one being in deep waters.

Proverbs 18:4 reads; ***“The words of a man's mouth are as deep waters, and the wellspring of wisdom as a flowing brook.”***

---

<sup>70</sup> Gills Exposition of the Bible: Ecclesiastes 7:9-10 (<http://biblehub.com/exlesiastes/7-9.htm>).

<sup>71</sup> Cronje Frans (2011) Sermon on Rejection. PTA. Râdâh Academy.

<sup>72</sup> A wounded spirit. (<http://www.gospel.org.nz/index.php/articles/articles-by-rodney/168-a-wounded-spirit>).



### 5.3 Words of Rejection

Rejection is the door which grants Satan access to oppression and alienation in a person's life.<sup>73</sup> These words of lust have a deeply embedded nature and it has a crippling effect on the spirit. The reactions caused by words of rejection can result in rebellion, passivity or carrying unforgiveness and bitterness towards a person.

According to Lauri Ann Lumby<sup>74</sup> identifying spiritual wounds are not that easy and through her experience she lists seven spiritual wounds: For this purpose, these will be used in context of words spoken includes:

- **A lack of anything:** Words such as "you will never own a house or be able to support a wife."
- **A shame:** Words such as "you are a cry baby; only babies wet their pants."
- **Resentment:** Words such as; "you don't deserve him;" words of bitterness, bring unfairly judged.
- **Rejection:** Words such as "you will never be good enough; if you don't behave I will leave you there; your father don't have time for you in his busy schedule.
- **Silenced:** Words such as "be quiet, this conversation is only for adults, children must be seen, not heard.
- **Unknowing:** Words which includes any knowledge pertaining to the matter in hand.
- **Abandonment:** Words such as "they will never come for us; "there is nothing any one can do."

In essence, words that wounds the spirit, steals the joy of the Lord. As seen in the verse on the next page Satan wants to rob you of your joy in the Lord;

---

<sup>73</sup> Cronje Frans (2011) Sermon on Rejection. PTA. Râdâh Academy.

<sup>74</sup> Healing our Spiritual Wounds. (<http://yourspiritualtruth.com/2012/07/12/healing-our-spiritual-wounds/>).

***Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:***

***1 Peter 5:8***

Satan's business is to "perverse" everything including the words people speak. Someone might feel rejected by something someone else said; however, the person did not mean it in that way. The "perverse" side of words of rejection is how the person "perceives" what has been said of him, in this Satan twist the true message which could wound the spirit.

## **5.4 Words of Rejection and Mind Binding Spirits**

According to Brand,<sup>75</sup> a Christian counselor herself, with more than 25 years of experience; word of rejection can open the door to mind-binding spirits. These spirits are:

- **Spirit of Retaliation:** Person demonstrates hatred, destruction, sadism, spitefulness, wounding, and cruelty. These victims of rejection would perform deviant sexual acts of rape, torture and murder.
- **Spirit of Withdrawal:** Person sulks, day dreams, fantasies; pretends all the times and lives in unreality. The reality of the sex addict is seriously corrupted. The lies he believes change his belief system and thus his mind. He does not demonstrate a sound mind anymore, but insanity.
- **Spirit of Escapism:** runaway spirit with the names of 'Kisieme' and 'Hermes.' These people show serious symptoms of carelessness, passivity, alcohol and drug abuse, watching TV. Sleepiness, escape into sexual fantasies as well as the practice of sexual activities. Addiction of any kind is fundamentally escapism. The deep wound of rejection causes the person to practice escapism through various ways of which sexual activities are one.

---

<sup>75</sup> Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (1998) Rejection: Healing of Bruises and Wounds. PTA: Râdâh Academy, Self-published, p. 5.

- **Spirit of Control:** the spirit of 'Lilith' and 'Leviathan' operate here. Person manipulates, dominates, is very possessive and exercises witchcraft. In marriage, the sex addict will control his spouse to the verge of going sexual activities as he likes. Although the spouse is controlled to perform sex as often as possible, she is not his primary love; his addiction is. It's all about himself and his needs.
- **Spirit of Fear:** II Timothy 1:7 says that: ***“God did not give us the spirit of fear, but of love, power and a sound mind.”*** Fear will always accompany rejection and addiction, since the sex addict lives in fear to face his wounds; fear of further rejection; fear of the truth; etc.

The lesson for all to be taken to heart is found in Proverbs 15:4 which reads; ***“A wholesome tongue is a tree of life: but perverseness therein is a breach in the spirit.”***

For dealing with mind-binding spirits, see chapter four.

## 6. RUMOUR'S, LIES AND PROPAGANDA

By definition, Propaganda is; “A form of communication, usually in verbal format, aimed towards influencing the attitude of society toward some cause or position by presenting only one side of an argument. Such statement to a great extent may be partly false and partly true. Propaganda is usually communicated and dispersed over a wide variety of media to produce the wanton result in audience attitudes.”<sup>76</sup> Rumour's, lies and propaganda aren't the usual kind of bad news. In explanation: A flood means one no harm; people understand that fires do happen and that bosses, sometimes, do have the odd bad day.

However upon being confronted with rumour's, lies or propaganda, it is “Words of deceit aimed straight at a person's heart,” and it's not random at all; another person is aiming that arrow.

---

<sup>76</sup> Propaganda. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Propaganda>)

*Because with lies ye have made the heart of the righteous sad, whom I have not made sad; and strengthened the hands of the wicked, that he should not return from his wicked way, by promising him life: Therefore ye shall see no more vanity, nor divine divinations: for I will deliver my people out of your hand: and ye shall know that I am the LORD.*

**Ezekiel 13:22-23**

Propaganda is a one sided affair, using lies to encourage people to belief in a wrong. It is the art of convincing people to error.

## **6.1 How to Combat Rumors, Lies and Propaganda**

People and public figures especially are as effective as their reputations allow them to be.

These three elements founded on half-truths and words of deceit eat away at reputations and defending against these three cancers takes patience, skill and strategy. Somehow the brain does not remember every little detail, yet the good or bad will be remembered. **Propaganda is extremely hard to combat due to an organized campaign of falls-misinformation, half-truths and lies.**<sup>77</sup>

As opposed to impartially issuing information, propaganda, in its most basic sense, presents information primarily to influence society. Propaganda usually presents facts selectively, hence possibly lying by omission to encourage a specific synthesis, or uses loaded messages to create an emotional rather than rational response to the facts presented.

The wanton result is a change of the attitude toward the subject in the target society to further promote a political, religious or commercial agenda. Propaganda quite often is used as a form of ideological or commercial warfare.

---

<sup>77</sup> Propaganda. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Propaganda>)

The problem with rumor's as with verbal words, once they are in the wild, you can't un-ring that bell, especially in the age of e-mail chains, fax machines and text message. The second problems is since rumors are inherently tough to squash because they have built-in defenses for no one person knows what the day of tomorrow will bring.

## **6.2 Rumors and False Memories**

Lending your ear to a rumor can make one not only think it might be true, and believe it but hearing a rumor can actually implant false memories that it actually happened to you. Perception can therefor become a reality since there is real science behind it now.<sup>78</sup>

## **6.3 Combat the Rumor – Kill the Lie**

Due to built-in defenses rumors can and quite often do persist. The problem persists when people feed on unknown. People always find something to gossip about, for most it is inevitable. The question is, how do you kill a rumor?

To kill a rumor one has to cut its roots. This is possible by preventing the rumor from starting or killing off the lie. Lies differ from rumors; lie tries to subvert a known fact and aims at undermining the actual truth. An example of a lie: "The earth is flat." Considering mountains of evidence indicating that the earth is round, some persist in believing that the earth is actually flat, because they are set on believing it.

The question, is it possible to combat a lie? Upon being confronted with a lie, it's not enough to rebuke it only since most people are motivated to believe certain lies simply because they choose to believe the rumor.

---

<sup>78</sup> Defending Against Rumors, Lies and Propaganda. ([http://marketing.about.com/od/crisis\\_communication/a/public-relations-rumors-lies-propaganda.htm](http://marketing.about.com/od/crisis_communication/a/public-relations-rumors-lies-propaganda.htm)).

The third step in attacking the foundation of a lie isn't giving people the facts and the truth, it's chipping away at the motive behind the reason people choose to believe it. A lie should not be given any substance; as such the snowball effect is stopped.

To a certain degree rumors and lies are often organic; they are often created and leaked by the enemy or opposition but most often, they just happen. Propaganda however is entirely different. It's deemed an organized effort to manipulate society using mass media, censorship, misinformation, half-truths and lies. Propaganda makes use of images, caricatures and fear based words as a weapon.

Most importantly, the greatest strength of propaganda is also its greatest weakness; one doesn't have to fight on its terms. Regardless of how the lie penetrates the soul, no lie is can stand against the truth, for the truth shall prevail.

## **7 BIBLICAL CASE STUDYS PERTANING TO A LYING TONGUE**

To grasp the essence of the "lying tongue" and see its effect on a people and the family, this thesis offers three Biblical case studies which will be looked at from a Biblical perspective.

The lying spirit works to create lies and cunningly convince men that those lies are truth, thus causing souls to be deceived and lose out with God. No big lies are made up. This entity coast his lies with some truth, putting a little bit of truth around them, so people will thing they are all truth an attitude of seeing is believing leaves no room for faith to operated which makes deceiving people even easier especially when spiritually related

### **7.1 Case Study No 1: Ananias and Sapphira**

The story we are about to examine has to do with a church family headed by Ananias and his is wife Sapphira. It is the story of a church family manipulated by Satan so he can gain entrance into the life of the church at Jerusalem.

This story reveals the sins of hypocrisy, deception, lying, and scheming for a place of prominence among believers.

Acts 4:32-37 records the efforts by the early Christians to meet the social needs of its members and their actions indicate that the church had grown rapidly. The more wealthy members readily sold some of their properties to help meet the needs of their poorer brethren in the local Church.

It is in this bigger context of unity, love, and compassion that we meet the Christian household that was not quite Christian (Acts 5). However in this context, we are expected to take this family as true believers yet they did not act like Christians in the incident at hand. While their brethren were occupied with the real needs of others, Ananias and Sapphira were preoccupied with their own felt needs.

The immediate context of this account is the acclaim given to Barnabas. True to his lifestyle as the “Son of Encouragement,” (Acts 11:19; 11:26) Barnabas had sold a strip of land and “brought the money and gave it to the apostles” (Acts 4:36-37). Evidently the attention of his sacrificial act had brought to him disturbed Ananias and Sapphira.

- **All for Status**

The story should however be interpreted in light of the larger context. By modern expression; the “in thing” to do at that time was to sell one’s property and contribute it to the local church (Acts 1-2; 4:34-37) which most of the prosperous committed Christians were doing. Everyone was talking about Barnabas’ and Ananias and Sapphira wanted to be the centre of discussion as well. They too joined the movement by selling property and gave money to the church by way of the apostles’ feet” within their local church.

The problem is this; they agreed to sell the property but give part of the sale price to the church while “**deceiving everyone with the fruit of their lips**” that the part they gave was the total price (vv. 1-2).

In great respect there have always been Ananiases and Sapphiras in the churches wanting to belong to the “well-spoken of.” If at the time the emphasis is on conversation prayer, these are the greatest conversational prayers in the church; if the emphasis is on discipleship, these will come to church dressed in the armour of God ready to storm the world.

However they were not sincere nor genuine, because they are not willing to live totally under the lordship of God. The problem arises when Ananiases and Sapphiras are able to work their way into leadership in their churches, the churches are in trouble. To an extent the problem people in our churches are not so much the carnal Christians who know they are carnal, but the carnal believers who want to be seen as spiritual. Equal to them are the first-century Ananiases and Sapphiras.

- **The Gift of Discernment**

Ananias and Sapphira made the mistake of failing to discern that the church belongs to Christ who know the thoughts and intents of one’s heart. To protect the church from deceitful activity, God will give the gift of “distinguishing of spirits” to many in leadership (I Corinthians 12:10).

In this is the lesson of the need for the spirit of discernment by all Christians. The question arises; what happens when this gift is not recognized and in operation? Deceit causes havoc in the Church and in many cases relates to **“believers uttering deceitful lies.”**

Ananias made his public move to the satisfaction of the congregation bringing a sacrificial “love gift” as head of this family. Peter knew what had happened; exercising the gift of the distinguishing of spirits, Peter points out the dual source of head of the household sin (vv.3-4).

- **First:** It came from Satan, (the father of all lies John 8:44) the Adversary (v. 3.).
- **Second:** It came from within, from his heart (v. 4).

Peter later addresses the sin by dealing with the problem in the life of Ananias, and later in Sapphira (vv. 3-11).



Peter in dealing with this family places the blame primarily on Ananias (Acts 5:3-4). Verse 2 says, **“with his wife’s full knowledge;”** by implication Ananias originated the plan, shared it with Sapphira who went along with it. The head responsibility rested with Ananias as the head of the household and then upon Sapphira for not speaking out against him for his sin of hypocrisy which many of today’s if not all believers at some stage were guilty of. By sinning against the church one sins against God. The church is part of Christ’s body, sin against His body is sin against the Bride Groom, Jesus Christ.

Every believer faces deceit, daily. This spirit of deceit can destroy one if one fail to walk in obedience to the Lord Jesus (James 4:6-11; I Peter 5:8-11). Let the experience of Ananias be a warning to all. Dr Ed Murphy<sup>79</sup> states as follows; **“Without doubt many disobedient Christians have been delivered “to Satan for the destruction of his flesh, that his spirit might be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus.”**<sup>80</sup>

- **The Lying Tongue and the Results of Divine Judgment**

Pertaining to Ananias there is a six fold<sup>81</sup> result of God’s judgment due to his lies:

- **First:** The physical death of Ananias (v. 5); Sapphira died with him spiritually because she was part of the plot (v. 10). Lies cripples the spirit of man.

***For you did not receive the spirit of bondage again to fear, but you received the Spirit of adoption by whom we cry out, “Abba, Father.”***

***Romans 8:15***

Evident in this verse is that sin can cause a Christian to become a spiritual slave.

---

<sup>79</sup> Murphy Dr Ed (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare, Revised and Updated. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 312.

<sup>80</sup> See also: 1 Corinthians 5:5; 1 Timothy 1:18-20 with I Corinthians 11:23-32; James 5:19-20; I John 5:16-19.

<sup>81</sup> Murphy Dr Ed (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare, Revised and Updated. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 314.

- **Second:** Great fear comes upon the church and the general public (vv. 5, 11). This was a wholesome fear producing reverence towards God and stimulating Christians to holiness and away from a careless, hypocritical lifestyle.
- **Third:** Unusual manifestations of Gods' power through the apostles followed (vv. 12, 15-16) as a result of direct answer to their prayer in Acts 4:29-31.
- **Fourth:** A seemingly contradictory reaction on the part of the people occurred (vv. 13-14); those who had thought of becoming Christians, yet wanted nothing to do with full commitment drew away from the church in dread (v. 13a). Others with sincere hunger after God and spiritual reality rejoiced in what they witnessed and heard, and came into the church in increasing numbers (vv. 13b-14).
- **Five:** The response to the gospel spread to "the people from the cities in the vicinity of Jerusalem" (v. 16). The miracle in all of this is evident in Satan's efforts to stop church growth, backfired!
- **Six:** A movement of power evangelism led by the apostle Peter transpired. It was a time of mass healing and mass deliverance (vv. 15-16).

The question is asked, did Ananias lie due to satanic manipulation or could it be because of possible demonic possession?

- **Demonization or Satanic Manipulation?**

This account of the hypocrisy of this Christian family has become the point of considerable controversy in our day. Much of the problem centres around the question of the possible demonization of some Christians today.

In the context of this story different theological presuppositions are made:

- Some affirm that true believers cannot under any conditions of sin become demonized and declare that they were not true believers, or they affirm that if they were believers of past, at that point however they no longer are some holds: Some holds that they have “fallen from grace.”
- Some which don’t accept the possibility that true Christians can ever lose their salvation affirm they were never rally converted in the first place.
- Others who are not concerned with the question of the possible demonization of Christians, usually affirm they were true believers; in truth they did sin against God and there is nothing in the story to indicate they were not believers.

In summary; the author being Luke is giving one neither a case study of true Christians who become demonized nor one of false Christians who managed to gain some status in the church at Jerusalem.

Illustrated in this story is **“Satan’s cunningness to use the power of the tongue in the form of a lie in an attempt to destroy the Church.”** It also reveals, that Christ is head of His church who knows exactly what is occurring in His church (Revelation 2-3), whether good, and bad. God will, when He desires to do so, step in and directly judge wilfully sinning believers. This could result in death.

Dr Ed Murphy<sup>82</sup> writes; **“demons can often exercise almost as much partial control externally as they can internally.”**

This is a serious issue; it’s serious enough that **“this Christian family lost their lives because Ananias opened his mouth to speak the deceitful thoughts of his heart.”**

---

<sup>82</sup> Murphy Dr Ed (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare, Revised and Updated. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 313.

**“Satan can and will use your own words to destroy you.”** Not only does he use them against you, but can also impart evil thoughts in your heart! The apostle Peter asks him, **“Why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit?”** (v. 3). It is the matter of Satan’s filling of the heart of a believer that causes such problems.

***A faithful witness does not lie, But a false witness will utter lies.***

***Proverbs 14:5***

Christians do sin and sin terribly, just as did Ananias and Sapphira. So do these lie, deceive, steal, commit adultery, are filled with rage, shame, rejection, even bitterness and hatred. Believers are not supposed to act this way, but some do. As Murphy so just fully explains; **“It is a Biblical abnormality, but a vivid reality.”**<sup>83</sup>

From the above verse we see that one can be a “witness” of God, yet have a deceitful tongue which speaks lies.

A pastor once asked a congregation; How many of you have ever lied? Numerous honest believers raised their hands. In his own so ever characteristic style he said, “Man! What a troop of evil people I’m ministering to today.

William Barclay is once quoted in saying;

**“He that is without the sin of Ananias and Sapphira let him be the first to send Ananias and Sapphira to hell.”** Barclay went on saying; **“the Bible refuses to present an idealized picture of anything...There is a certain encouragement in this story, for it shows us that even in its greatest days the Church was a mixture of good and bad. We do well to remember that if the Church were a society of perfect people there would be no Church at all”**<sup>84</sup>

---

<sup>83</sup> Murphy Dr Ed (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare, Revised and Updated. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 313.

<sup>84</sup> Ibid, p. 313.

## 7.2 Case Study No 2: King Jehoshaphat

II Chronicels 18:1 read;

***Now Jehoshaphat had richeds and honor in abundance, and affinity with Ahab.***

***II Chronicels 18:1***

Due to a friendship which developed, Jehoshaphat and Ahab joined kinships which lead to a treaty. The mistake Jehoshaphat made was not enquiring from God' before making this treaty. Another great Biblical figure in King David made the same mistake when decided not go got to war without enquiring from the Lord first which lead to adultery, murder and serious other ramifications.

Later on and in returning, we find that Ahab asked Jehosaphat to join him in battle against Ramoth-golead from the Syrians. Jehoshaphat was soon to find out that joining kinship with Ahab wasn't the leadings of God. No doubt, he hadn't take time to seek God for direction, but had just decided on his own to make this affinity.

In relation with Christians today; many believers start out to serve God without distancing themselves from the wrong crowd. In time these fall back to their ungodly ways they had been delivered from.

***And Jehoshaphat said unto the king of Israel, Enquire, I pray Thee, at the word of the LORD to day.***

***II Chronicles 18:4***

Jehoshaphat weren't at peace with this idea and finally do decide to question whether or not God wants him to go out to war with Ahab.

The second lesson to be learned from the above verse is one of obedience. Christians ought to stop and enquire of the Lord before venturing into anything to assure one stay within God's will for one's life. If you don't take the time to pray about the decisions in your life following the instruction of the Lord, you might just spend a lifetime on your knees praying and begging God not to pour out His divine wrath upon you, your wife and your children.

*Therefore the king of Israel gathered together of prophets four hundred men, and said unto them, Shall we go to Ramoth-gilead to battle, or shall I forbear? And they said, Go up; for God will deliver it into the king's hand.*

*II Chronicles 18:5*

Four hundred prophets prophesied that it was good to go to battle. It certainly seemed that this was the thing to do; after all, four hundred were in agreement!

*And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah had made him horns of iron, and said, Thus saith the LORD, With these thou shalt put Syria until they be consumed. And all the prophets prophesied so, saying, Go up to Ramoth-gilead, and prosper: for the LORD shall deliver it into the hand of the king.*

*II Chronicles 18:10-11*

Everything seemed good to go on the surface as deceit filled Ahab's ears; the Assyrians would have to bend. In this is evident the work of a lying spirit, deceiving Ahab when **400 men breathed a lie** which sounded like music in his ears.

However the truth cuts to the bone, it is straight and does not deviate. Many just want to hear good news. Smooth things that will tickle their ears. They don't want to hear true and honest revelation that will ruffle them. **Sin, correction, conviction, these are words people don't want to hear**, yet the Bible teach that God corrects His children because He love them.

There are not as much interested in people correcting them in the name of love purely because these are lovers of themselves.

All people want to hear teaching in Grace and Love. Thy seem to forget that it's because of God's grace and love of mankind which saw Jesus offering Himself to be crucified with nails driven through His hands and feet.

Not even death could concur true Love for ***“the gates of hell shall not prevail”*** (Mat 16:18).

- **One True Prophet:**

Christians should learn that if one don't have inner peace prior to making a decision, pray until you hear from God. Deep inside God has already stirred once heart pertaining what to do; a prophet of God will only confirm what God already told you.

Jehoshaphat was not convinced, he had no inner peace. Truth be said, deep down he already heard God say No! Is there not here a prophet of the LORD besides that we might inquire of him?

***And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, There is yet one man, by whom we may inquire of the LORD: but I hate him; for he never prophesied good (music to my ears) unto me, but always evil (the truth does not aim to please); the same is Micaiah the son of Imla. And Jehoshaphat said, Let not the king say so.***

***II Chronicles 18:7 (emphasis added)***

In other words, Jehoshaphat had to hear from a “true prophet” of the Lord and suggested that Ahab go ahead and call for Micaiah even though Ahab had just said he hated Micaiah, for Micaiah never prophesied ***“soothing words”*** to his ears.

The true prophet will not experience love as the world knows it and wants to know it (love based on pleasing) yet the world will never be able to keep a true prophet down for truth will always surface and reveal itself.

Even Ahab confirmed Micaiah to be one that hears from the one true God ***“there is yet one ... of the LORD.”***

Can someone who is in love with self and that what the world offers expect God to pat him on the back with prophecy, telling him yes my son you have My blessing?

***Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness?***

***II Corinthians 6:14***

If you're living an evil life God will remove His presence from your life. He will deal with you according to your thoughts and your words. God won't override wickedness to bring words of blessing to your ear. God's message to the wicked is always "Repent!"

***And the messenger that went to call Micaiah spake to him, saying, Behold, the words of the prophets declare good to the king with one assent; let thy word therefore, I pray thee, be like on of theirs, and speak thou good. And Micaiah said, As the LORD liveth, even what my God saith, that will I speak.***

***II Chronicles 18:12-13***

The messenger pleaded with Micaiah to speak deceit regardless whether it would be a lie, as long as it pleases Ahab.

When the king asked Micaiah if they should go to Ramoth-gilead, he told the king to go ahead and prosper, simply quoting what the false prophets had said. The question is, why is this? Is it a question of God wanting all to prosper but in His way and not by going to war for one's own selfish agenda?

***And the messenger that went to call Micaiah spake to him, saying, Behold, the words of the prophets declare good to the king with one assent; let thy word therefore, I pray thee, be like one of theirs, and speak thou good. And Micaiah said, As the LORD liveth, even what my God saith, that will I speak.***

***II Chronicles 18:12-13***



***And the king said to him, How many times shall I adjure thee that thou say nothing but the truth to me in the name of the LORD?***

***II Chronicles 18:22***

Ahab knew the prophet of the Lord hadn't given him God's message. He knew God's message would be contrary to that which the false prophets had brought.

***Now therefore, behold, the LORD hath put A LYING SPIRIT IN THE MOUTH of these thy prophets, and the LORD hath spoken evil against thee.***

***II Chronicles 18:22***

Believers are warned about the consequences of joining affinity with the wrong people.

When you make friends with the ungodly, one can expect that trouble is going to come one's way. In essence you are following along with those who are judgment prone, those whose lives are sure to bring down God's judgment on them.

The question still remains; how could a lying spirit be sent from the Lord? We can't fully understand this, but we must accept that our ways is not God's way and that His thoughts are not our thoughts (Isaiah 55:8).

God is not wicked nor does He promote wickedness.

Robeson<sup>85</sup> in his explanation writes; "One reason for this apparent contradiction is that God has only progressively revealed Himself to man through the ages. Due to a lack of a more complete knowledge of God, there were many incidents in the Old Testament when actions attributed to God were in reality the actions of Satan. It is now apparent because of the further revelation of the New Testament.

---

<sup>85</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man's His Name ... What's His Game. USA: Shiloh-Publishing, pp. 43-44.

Ignorance on the side of the religious leaders of Israel was apparent even in Jesus' day when they criticized the way He cast out devils. The Pharisees said, ***"This fellow doth not cast out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of the devils"*** (Matthew 12:24).

Jesus replied, ***"And if Satan cast out Satan he is divided against himself; ...But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you"*** (Matthew 12:26,28). Jesus warned them that attributing a work of the Holy Spirit to the devil is the unpardonable sin (Matthew 12:31,32).

It is there for mandatory to clearly understand what God's area of operation is in the spirit world as well as that of Satan."<sup>86</sup>

To reiterate; would the Almighty God, who is Truth, put a lying spirit in a person's mouth? No, if this was the case He would cease to be Truth!

In essence; what happened was that the false prophets of King Ahab told their king what they knew he wanted them to say instead of what God wanted them to prophesy, so God voluntarily stepped back and simply allowed them to continue in what is natural to them, lying.

***Then Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah came near, and smote Micaiah upon the cheek, and said, Which way went the Spirit of the LORD from me to speak unto thee? And Micaiah said, Behold, thou shalt see on that day when thou shalt go into an inner chamber to hide thyself. Then the king of Israel said. Take ye Micaiah, and carry him back to Amon the governor of the city, and to Joash the king's son; and say, Thus saith the king, Put this fellow in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I return in peace.***

***II Chronicles 18:23-26***

---

<sup>86</sup> Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man's His Name ... What's His Game. USA: Shiloh-Publishing, p. 45.

- The Danger of Going with the Crowd

*So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramoth-gilead. And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, I will disguise myself, and will go to the battle; but put thou on thy robes. So the king of Israel disguised himself; and they went to the battle. Now the king of Syria had commanded the captains of the chariots that were with him, saying, Fight ye not with small or great, save only with the king of Israel. And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, that they said, it is the king of Israel. Therefor they compassed about him to fight: but Jehoshaphat cried out, and the LORD helped him; and God moved them to depart from him.*

*II Chronicles 18:28-31*

Evident in this on see the mercies of the Lord upon a man of God. The Bible teach that God will not leave your nor forsake you (Deuteronomy 31:6).

God hadn't forsake Jehoshaphat, God was teaching him a lesson, to let him know he had done wrong. Even though Jehoshaphat had made the mistake of joining affinity with Ahab, it didn't mean that God would not just leave him altogether.

The lesson to be learned from this and the one of King David is this: regardless if one was disobedient to God, God will reach out to you if you turn back to Him **making petition, God I need you!**

Even though he listened to a lying spirit and gone to battle, God still protect him.

This illustrates man's weakness yet it shows God's grace to those who call on Him.

The Word of God teaches us to separate from the unrighteous, not choosing our fellowship with such. Believers are called to be a light and a witness unto a dark, sinful world...but not to join affinity with the wicked.

**Even a godly man can be persuade by a deceitful and flattering tongue to follow along with the counsel of the ungodly.** Pertaining to the false prophet in this we see the deceitful thoughts of his heart prophesied through the mouth piece in order to steal, kill and destroy.

***Thy tongue deviseth mischiefs; like a sharp razor, working deceitfully.***

***Psalm 52:2***

Lesson be learned: Don't follow the crowd. Even if four hundred say it is ok.

***Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.***

***John 16:13***

The work of these false prophets is to lead people away from Jesus through a laying spirit.

***And Jesus answered and said unto them, Take heed that no man deceive you. For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many.***

***Matthew 24:4-5***

Jesus warn us be aware of those who prophesy smooth words, those who avoid telling us the whole counsel of God.

***And a certain man drew a bow at a venture, and smote the king of Israel between the joints of the harness: ...howbeit the king of Israel stayed himself up in his chariot against the Syrians until the even: and about the time of the sun going down he died.***

***II Chronicles 18:33-34***

Here with climax. There is one great truth in this; only one prophet said it would happen this way; the other four hundred said Ahab would prosper.

Discerning that it wasn't what the crowd said that was right; it was what the man of God proclaimed, the one who had never prophesied good unto the king because God didn't have any good messages for Ahab.

Consider this truth: believers are not to give into a lying spirit and be swayed to believe a lie.

Numerous Christians go along with the crowd in their judgments. The deceived cried out, "Crucify Him! Crucify Him!" Weren't Israel wrong in their judgment?

Believers must not be led astray by a crowd. Come to the place of recognizing the voice of truth, paying heed to what the Word of God expresses as the true path for you to follow for the Holy Spirit will lead you into all truth.

It's the Satan's business to believers away from waling on the straight and narrow way.

### 7.3 Case Study No 3: Gehazi

Scripture not only gives us portraits of God's grace, as with the healing of Naaman, but it also testifies to a man's sinfulness and perversion. Hardly a pretty picture, but a necessary one if believers are to see their sickness and helplessness and turn in repentance to God. These depictions in the Bible serve as instructions and warnings to turn Christians whole heartedly to God and a life of godliness and away from a life of ungodliness (cf. Rom. 15:4; 1 Cor. 10:6, 11, 12).

In illustrating the seriousness of "lying," hence proclaiming destruction and death by use of the mouth piece, the account of Gahzi, will be considered as depicted in II Kings 5:20-27.

***Gehazi, the servant of Elisha the man of God, said..., "My master was too easy on Naaman, by not accepting from him what he brought..., I will run after him and get something from him."***

*“...when Naaman saw him running toward him, he got down ....to meet him. “Is everything all right?” he asked.*

*“...Gehazi answered. “My master sent me to say, ‘Two young men from the company of the prophets have just come.... Please give them a talent[a] of silver and two sets of clothing.’”*

*“...take two talents,” said Naaman. He urged Gehazi to accept them, and ...He gave them to two of his servants, and they carried them ahead of Gehazi.*

*Gehazi... took the things from the servants and...sent the men away...*

*He went and stood before his master, Elisha asked him, “Where have you been, Gehazi?” “Your servant didn’t go anywhere,” Gehazi answered.*

*Elisha said, “Was not my spirit with you when the man got down from his chariot to meet you? Is this the time to take money or to accept clothes...?”*

*Naaman’s leprosy will cling to you and to your descendants forever.” Then Gehazi went from Elisha’s presence and his skin was leprous...*

*II Kings 5:20-27 (NIV<sup>87</sup>)*

Upon the Syrian general departing from the house of Elisha, the “covetous spirit” of Gehazi, which had been stirred by the sight of the costly presents the prophet declined was no longer able to restrain itself. Running after the Syrian, Gehazi gave **“false testimony”** begging in the prophet's name a talent of silver and some clothing. Naaman, gladly showed his gratitude to Elisha and urged Gehazi to take two talents and the clothing., Later Elisha asked; **“Where have you been, Gehazi?”** (v 25). On receiving the **“false testimony”** that he had not been anywhere, Elisha, sternly rebuk him for lying and stealing and a curse came upon him and his generations to come, **“And he went out from his presence a leper as white as snow” (v. 27).**

Gehazi stands confessed a liar and a thief; his sin branched out in different directions.

---

<sup>87</sup> NIV: See Abbreviations.

- By his false testimony he deceived Naaman and misrepresented Elisha; he told a lie, but also told a lie about another man.
- He brought the prophets religion into disrepute.

In essence Gehazi's sin had various ramifications, the root however was the spirit of covetousness, ("the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil" 1Ti 6:10) in close relationship with the strong man, the lying spirit.

In this we notice "the wages of sin is death" (Romans 6:23), and a clear example of how the **"evil thoughts of the heart manifested in sin by not only speaking Loshan Hora but by physically sinning."**

To covet and to lie speaks a lot of a person's character. The question is; are we as believers growing toward godly character or ungodly character? Are we growing in love or selfishness; in harshness or patience; in greed or generosity; in honesty or dishonesty; in purity or impurity?

One source reveals; **"Every day we train ourselves in one direction or another by the thoughts we think, the words we say, the actions we take, the deeds we do."**<sup>88</sup>

A believer do not fall in a moment; the predisposition to yield to sin has been forming, building, germinating, however but not necessarily consciously so. Sin in this case revering to speaking a lie, has both a cumulative and a domino effect. The enemy plants subtle stimuli, often subliminal ones; he influences an attitude; he wins a "minor" victory – always in preparation for the fall of a believer. The account of James illustrates such a view: "Every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed. Then when lust has conceived, it bringeth forth sin..." (James 1:14,15).

---

<sup>88</sup> Bridges Jerry (1983) The Practice of Godliness. Colorado: NavPress, p. 83.

It is the time between “conceiving” and “bringing forth,” that shadowy interim between stimulus and response that may be largely subliminal.<sup>89</sup>

In essence; this is the age-old relationship of cause of effect, root and fruit, a belief that behaves and an attitude which acts.<sup>90</sup>

## CONCLUSION

The infallible Word of God acts as the basis for the thesis. The Bible affirms that words are spirit and that they are life. The mouth as a member of the whole body is an instrument for God to use to speak to the nations, Christians, Prophets and the Church as such. As Christians our holy and acceptable service includes speaking words of blessing, praises and that which giveth life.

Satan upon gaining control of a person’s mouth through lying, manipulating and seducing spirits can and do use the mouth of the one in question as a weapon to sow seeds of destruction and death. In reality a person’s thoughts and words spoken, shapes his character which explains why Satan wants to corrupt and defile a person’s mouth for the tongue is a fire, a world of iniquity. This unruly part of the body, if not controlled, acts as a loud speaker, expressing the evil thoughts of the heart being produced upon as missiles of destruction which negatively impacts the spirit to the point where it causes spiritual and physical death.

The unregenerate heart of man necessitates God shining His light in it to disperse any and all darkness if man is to grow to perfection in Christ Jesus.

Holiness starts in the heart of humankind; then flows into the mind and soul and the body. Originating in the deepest recesses of the spiritual temple of man, inspired by the Holy Spirit of truth; ***“founding utterance through the spoken word.”***

---

<sup>89</sup> Radmacher Earl (1977) You and Your Thoughts: The Power of Right Thinking. Wheaton, Tyndale House, p. 28.

<sup>90</sup> Ibid, p 25-26.



The holiness of the chosen day is not something at which to stare and from which man must humbly stay away. It is holy not away from man. It is holy unto man. “Ye shall keep the Sabbath therefore, for it is holy unto you” (Exodus 31:14). “The Sabbath adds holiness to Israel.”

What the Sabbath imparts to believers is something real, almost open to perception, a light, as it were, that shines from within, that glows out of his face. “God blessed the seventh day” (Genesis 2:3): “He blessed it with the light of a man’s face: The light of man’s face during the week is not the same as it is on the Sabbath.”

Something happens to us on the Sabbath day. On the eve of the Sabbath the Lord gives man “*neshamah yeterah*,” meaning additional spirit or “additional soul” and at the conclusion of the Sabbath He takes it away from him.

To man is given on this day an additional, a supernal soul, a soul which is all perfection, according to the pattern of the world to come. It is the “Holy Spirit” that rest upon us and adorns us with a crown like the crown of angels,” and is given to every individual according to his attainments.

-----oOo-----





## *The Witness of Christ Called to Personal Work Pertaining to the Role of the Mouth in Reaching the World, the Lost, the Backslidden and one's Children*

---

***Then said the LORD, Thou hast had pity on the gourd, for the which thou hast not laboured, neither madest it grow; which came up in a night, and perished in a night: And should not I spare Nineveh, that great city, wherein are more than sixscore thousand persons that cannot discern between their right hand and their left hand; and also much cattle?***

***Jona 4:10-11***

### **1 INTRODUCTION**

If one is a re-born spirit filled believer, the Bible challenges thee to be a witness for Jesus Christ. Most are frightened by the thought of witnessing to strangers. They feel that such vital work requires great ability, when as a matter of fact, consecration of merely what the believer are and what he has, be it little or much, will be used by the Holy Spirit to bring surprising results.

Most surprisingly, the lack of natural skill and training could extend prove to be an asset, if causes the would-be witness to rely entirely upon the guidance of the Holy Spirit to do that which only the Holy Spirit can. Only in this way can Christians be “fishers of men” (Matthew 4:19).

This thesis deems to investigate and prove the need to know the Word; the importance of the **mouth** as an instrument for “witnessing” as well as the need for Godward orientation in being an effective witness for Christ. Simplicity is a strong characteristic should be conveyed to others in the same way. True, the Bible is the profound Word of God, full of power and action. Its scope is limitless in affairs with relation to human and divine nature; but God takes care of that. The marvel is that God can and does use the meek, for the meek will inherit the earth (Matthew 5:5).

A child not necessarily understands the intricate construction of a television set, but he can switch it on and release pictures from across the world. This is but a faint illustration of what a spirit filled believer of God can do with the Gospel. The believer who really desires to be a witness can by the simplest of “words” and the simplest of “actions” brings the very power of God into a devastated life and leads the un-saved to accept Jesus Christ as Saviour.

Another important message is that of being convicted of sin in order for the un-saved to comprehend the need of a Saviour. Only the Holy Spirit can bring that conviction by shining God’s light in the hearts of men. He alone can regenerate the human heart. However, the Holy Spirit uses the simple effort of opening the **mouth** of the witnessing Christian to that definite end.

Some of the words Jesus spoke will be looked at pertaining to being an effective witness and to see the significance of applying the spoken word through confession.

## 2 EFFECTIVE WITNESSING MEANS TO BE IMMersed IN CHRIST

The question arises; what does immersed in Him refer to within the broad spectrum of witnessing?

In short; it refers to the journey by which a believer becomes one with Christ in wholeness of heart, fullness of joy experiencing unmerited love, freely given. Effective witnessing is a journey which necessitates principals of change, becoming one with Christ. Being one with Christ expresses the purpose and power of Christianity. To be an effective witness will require transformation where the Word of God which is near you, in your heart and on your lips, burring all forms of tradition and religion.

## 2.1 Witnessing in the Spirit

The corruption of the human mind is the primary focus of Satan. Illusions are convincing to those whose minds are desensitized to the worlds' ideas and images of love and reality.

The mind of "fallen" Adam is rarely at rest in all of humanity being nurtured and stimulated by "fear," which is the catalyst in thoughts nourishing sin, illness and death. For the corrupt mind believing a symptom, requires our imaginations, ignorance and pride. One's imagination accesses the picture from one's mind and through ignorance, pride manifest the symptoms. The question is asked; ignorance of what?

The majority of man would rather be self-fulfilling prophets at their own detriment by taking to heart a bad report thinking this is the end. A bad report in this context is nothing more than propaganda since it is a complete contradiction to God's will for one's life. Sometimes ***"people add insults to injury by predicting illness and professing it with their mouths;"*** "I told you so;" "my mother also had the same illness." The question is; Why is this, why does one allow his **mouth** to sabotage God's will for one's life?

***The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.***

***John 10:10***

A positive report - witnessing requires being one with Christ in thought, word and deed. Jesus received the Holy Spirit after being baptized by the beloved disciple, but He came out of the wilderness in the Spirit. The epitome of a corrupt and defiled **mouth** tried to camouflage a lie in an attempt to present it as the truth when tempting Christ. In our ignorance we forget that Jesus came so we might have life; why then accept a bad report; didn't the cross mean anything?

Jesus being the living breathing Word, quoted from the Word an affirmation that ***"man will live by every word that comes from the mouth of God"*** (Matthew 4:4). The written Word is the authority by which we are to witness. Witnessing is not a religion it's a way of life expressing Christ in thought, in every word spoken and in deed. It is being the light of Christ to the world preaching the "Good News" to all.

A **"mouth"** consecrated and set aside for God to use is a fountain by which the Life giving Word is proclaimed dispersing the depths of darkness as truth exposes the lie.

The question is asked; what transformation are we talking about? According to Emerson: It is the "necessity of those born into Christ to be baptized into the Godhead to complete the transition designed and modelled by Christ Himself."<sup>1</sup>

## 2.2 Witnessing and Wrong Thinking

This thesis believe that a paradigm shift is required in relation to the mind, the thought centre. God's Word is given to teach and train believers how to live and to rule and reign over all of lives' circumstances. Emerson acclaims: Experiencing difficulty pertaining to witnessing could be due to wrong thinking.<sup>2</sup> That which the heart is full of, the ***"mouth"*** speaketh.

Here with lies the problem of wrong speaking rooted in the ungenerated heart where the mind feeds of evil thoughts contained in the heart expressed by ***"mouth."***

---

<sup>1</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid, p. 8.

Man can't change his heart, only God can do that. However, man has the power and ability to bring every evil thought in submission to the Word of God (II Corinthians 10:5).

To an extent, religion is to blame for wrong thinking as well, which further reiterate the need to change our thinking which start off with repentance. Buried in religion is our purpose and power to witness effectively. Ferrell is quoted in saying; **“No one, and I mean no one can enter the kingdom of God without the mind's radical restructure.”**<sup>3</sup>

Renewal of the mind, speaks of receiving new manna every day. The **“manna fresh from heaven is what we should preach”** without compromise. Colossians 3:2 portrays as follows; **“Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.”**

All the knowledge contained in all the encyclopaedias combined all over the world is no match for Divine Revelation from God.

***For if our heart condemn us, God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things.***

***I John 3:20***

One word from the **“mouth of God,”** spoken at the right time, melts the heart of the sinner as the message of truth sears the heart.

***For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.***

***Hebrews: 4:2***

---

<sup>3</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 8.

The question is asked; does the Bible teaches the principle of transformation and how does it apply to witnessing?

Romans 12:2 reads; ***“And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.”***

The account of Genesis 1 unequivocally attest to **“Creation being the heavenly model for all transformations.”**<sup>4</sup> Expressed within creation is God’s infinite creative ability to transform something from nothing. Metaphorically speaking; when God “spoke creation in to existence,” atomic vibrations went forth from His **mouth** over the Spirit in to the “water” form which galaxies, planets, stars and earth formed.

Jesus offers the substance for transformation in the life of a believer being the “Living Water” as seen in John 4:13-14; ***“Jesus answered and said unto her, Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again: But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.”***

Contained within the Bible is the manifold wisdom of God hidden in Christ, the fountain of Life revealed to those who confesses their corrupt thinking having abandoned the truth. As a result, the unnatural replaced the natural; religion replaced the truth whereby corrupt thinking expressed through **“verbal diaree”** steered people away from the truth.

### **2.3 Understanding Revelation Through the Language of the Holy Spirit**

The Living water and the Spirit residing in Christ is the spiritual forces over sin, sickness and death. In saying this; the words Jesus spoke are the principles we should live and use to understand Scripture.

---

<sup>4</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 12.



The Bible primarily describes Christ from two perspectives with the first being the physical model of the Son of Man and the latter, the spiritual authority over all things above or below earth. Brand states that: the Bible speak by words, but words are not concrete reality.<sup>5</sup>

The Book of Genesis describes three heavenly elements that were used to create the visible world and are still connected with the invisible realm.<sup>6</sup> These three elements were designed to support both physical and spiritual life and include light, water and blood.

***For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one.***

***I John 5:7-8***

Through order God establishes principles, which produce divine results. The apostle John understood Jesus better than any of the apostles. His record of the heavenly dimension could not be described with human language, as you may understand after reading Revelation. Regardless, John managed to connect heaven and earth together very well, evident from the verses below. The elements referred to is a picture of Christ both physical and spiritual.

I John 5:6 reads;

***This is he that came by water and blood, even Jesus Christ; not by water only, but by water and blood.***

***I John 5:6a***

Ferrell explains that; "Jesus was the Son of man because of water but He was the Son of God because of His blood. Jesus contains the living water and God's blood."<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup> Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ, Personal conversation, Pretoria 2013.

<sup>6</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp. 14, 15.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid, p. 15.

The Bible testifies this is true for;

***“...the Spirit is the witness, because the Spirit is true.”***

***I John 5:7b (BBE<sup>8</sup>)***

From the above we note that the elements of creation are keys to the mind of God which the Holy Spirit will illuminate to all who are willing to submit to His ways. Believers can only witness through the Holy Spirit; only in Him is truth.

Genesis 1:1-3 portrays as follows;

***Then God said, let there be light; and there was light.***

***Genesis 1:1-3***

God through His imagination, out of darkness created all. The question is; why did God create heaven, earth and man? Some holds to God longing for relation; other recon because of love. In summary; contained within Jesus are the elements of the living water and the blood and together with the Spirit which is the light of the spiritual life in revealing all, these three elements support both physical and spiritual life. However the world's concept of love is nothing but a stumbling block.

God almighty is Love and the Father of Truth. Truth and love can be seen as the substances, which form the creative mind of God; hence the Devil is unable to create.

Divine love is the greatest authority and power in the universe, demonstrated on the cross. Man were created to emulate the Father and surrender to Him because of His great love. The Bible is the epitomé of Love, the inbreathed thoughts of God pinned down in writing.

---

<sup>8</sup> BEE: See Abbreviations

The first and second commandments reads;

***And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength:... And the second is like, namely this, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. There is none other commandment greater than these.***

***Mark 12:30-31***

Religion expects its followers to do works and to submit to regulations in order to be accepted by "God." The Lord reduced all of man's religious obligations into one, love.

***If ye love me, keep my commandments.***

***John 14:15***

Man's rebellious nature refuses to love anyone but himself and it is this nature which prevent many from becoming witnesses for Christ. Another stumbling block is a "spirit of fear."<sup>9</sup> Due to fear of man, many witnesses are rendered mute.

Satan is the enemy of love and he rules by fear. The Spirit of Love destroys fear because it is wrapped in faith and unleashed by the confession of our faith for ***"God has not given us a spirit of fear, but of a sound mind"*** (II Timothy 1:7).

***There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment.***

***I John 4:18a***

Another source reveals that; ***"Love is the frequency of consciousness that unites, heals and brings wholeness. Compared to hate, the frequency of consciousness that separates, hurts and brings disintegration."***<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>9</sup> Spirit of Fear: See Chapter Three

<sup>10</sup> Secrets of mind and reality. (<http://www.mindreality.com/truty-about-relationship-between-god-and-satan>).

The question is asked where is the one place where there is no living water nor light nor the blood of Christ? **Hades – Hell.**

The essence of this thesis could be summarized as follows; ***“Liars are amongst those who won’t inherit the Kingdom of God”*** (Revelation 21:8).

A taste of what is awaiting those who lie is found in Luke 16:24; ***“And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame.”***

Believers were called to be witnesses; hence,

***I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live:***

***Deuteronomy 30:19***

## **2.4 The Frequency of Love Pertaining to Witnessing**

Love can be explained as the frequency of God’s Glory sustaining all life and disperses darkness. Some refer to love as the nature and vibration that holds all of creation together.<sup>11</sup>

Likewise the frequency of the **mouth** piece should emanate God’s love for His Son. By the hearing of the Word comes faith as a voice that sustains all living shining into the hearts of men. Love is the substance of God’s consciousness and His thoughts towards man.

The flesh on the other hand strives against God, it cannot pertain unconditional love, it cannot be tamed, reformed, or improved and will eventually die.

---

<sup>11</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 17.

The flesh wars against man.<sup>12</sup>

***For I am conscious of my thoughts about you, says the Lord, thoughts of peace and not of evil, to give you hope at the end.***

***Jeremiah 29:11 (BBE<sup>13</sup>)***

There is no word, no phrase or affirmation which encompasses the depth of the Fathers love towards us. The epitome of love is found in John 3:16;

***For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.***

***John 3:16***

The Love of God is not an emotion nor a onetime experience or a feeling but the Spirit of all life. We are created to love. Life is the result of God's Love. Likewise should our "**mouths**" proclaim the life of Christ within us for;

***Life is spiritual.. The words that I have spoken to you are spiritual (and) they are life***

***John 6:63***

Bubeck<sup>14</sup> argues that it is the reason why God hates adultery (Matthew 15:19, Mark 7:21) because it expresses rebellion of the flesh against God's law of purity and strike at the sacredness of marriage (Hebrews 13:4)

***For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:***

***Romans 8:14-16***

---

<sup>12</sup> Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2012) Article for Conference.

<sup>13</sup> BBE: See Abbreviations

<sup>14</sup> Bubeck Mark J (1975) The Adversary. Chicago: Moody Press, p. 29.

The person who have learned the language of love, that is the Language of the Holy Spirit, must be skilled in waiting on His presence without preconceived ideas, words or desires.

Ferrell is quoted in saying; **“Love is the energy that sustains life, likewise love is the frequency that proceeds from our mouths in the form of spoken words.”**<sup>15</sup>

## 2.5 The DNA<sup>16</sup> of Christ In Our Mouths

The question is; why the emphasis on being judged according to “every idle word” as recorded in Matthew 12:26? Romans 14:10 provides some facts; ***“For it is written, As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God.”***

What then is the opposite of this statement? Every tongue confess after another god: which is Idolatry.

Romans 16:8-10 reads;

***But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach; That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.***

***Romans 16:8-10***

In this verse is revealed ***“the most important role of the mouth, for without speaking, how is confession made unto salvation?”***

---

<sup>15</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 19.

<sup>16</sup> DNA: See Terms and Definitions

Upon believing what God has said pertaining to “man living from every word that proceeds from Gods **mouth**; His Word in your **mouth** is powerful and life giving. All of this however necessitates **“opening your mouth”** and calling unto God!

The confession of our faith puts God's Word and His Spirit in action in our lives, bringing transformation in the process as the image of Christ is formed in us. **“The Spirit of Christ is in the words of our confession to FULFILL HIS WORD IN OUR MOUTHS.”**

The witness is called to speak God's Word, to speak it in faith, to speaking it boldly, to confess it, to proclaim it, that it might give **“seed to the sower and bread to the eater”** (Isaiah 55:106). The seed herewith referred to is the DNA of God in your **“mouth.”**

***So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.***

***Isaiah 55:11***

God's DNA is an all-consuming fire of love. To believe that God's **“DNA IS IN YOUR MOUTH, IS TO BELIEVE THAT YOU LOVE BECAUSE GOD LOVED YOU FIRST”** (I John 4:19).

As witness for Christ; the culminating effect of the role of a righteous **mouth** can be summarized as follows; **“I am love because You are Love, Father God, and by faith I release (speak/proclaim/confess) the ‘Good News’; the one true Love to the world, to the lost, the back slidden and to one's children.”**

## **2.6 Immersed in Christ**

To be immersed in Christ refer to scripture becoming the living word, revealing all of the mysteries God has in store for us. It is at time where the light and life of Christ penetrates your soul. It is when Jesus become the lover of your soul.

To better understand the spiritual realm in what God wants to reveal to us, is to make an effort to change to be rewarded in this life and life everlasting. Deuteronomy 29:29 speaks of this; ***“The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children forever, that we may do all the words of this law.”***

To understand what immersed in Christ means, attention to the phrase “in Me” must be examined in the following verses:

***But if I am doing them, then have belief in the works even if you have no belief in me; so that you may see clearly and be certain that the Father is in me and I am in the Father.***

***John 10:38 (BBE<sup>17</sup>)***

***I am the vine, you are the branches: he who is in me at all times as I am in him, gives much fruit, because without me you are able to do nothing. If a man does not keep himself in me, he becomes dead and is cut off like a dry branch; such branches are taken up and put in the fire and burned. If you are in me at all times, and my words are in you, then anything for which you make a request will be done for you.***

***John 15:5-7 (BBE)***

***May they all be one! Even as you, Father, are in me and I am in you, so let them be in us, so that all men may come to have faith that you sent me.... I in them, and you in Me, so that they may be made completely one, and so that it may become clear to all men that you have sent me and that they are loved by you as I am loved by you.***

***John 17:21, 23 (BBE)***

The question is asked; what does the phrase “so that they may become completely one” refer to?

---

<sup>17</sup> BBE: See Abbreviations



From the above we note that the power to transform one's thoughts is achieved through entering Christ being one with Him in fullness; that is to receive everything Christ has to offer!

Johan 14:12 affirms this principle of receiving from Christ;

***I can guarantee this truth: Those who believe in me will do the things that I am doing. They will do even greater things because I am going to the Father.***

***John 14:12 (GW<sup>18</sup>)***

Pertaining to the witness; the model of transformation and genuine authority to alter circumstances lies in this verse. What Jesus is saying is this; if you want to do the same and greater than I, you would need to believe ***“in Me.”*** The relationship He has with His Father is the model we must follow; the believer reside ***“in Jesus”*** the same way ***“Jesus is in the Father.”***

For this reason each time one read scripture that refers to ***“believe in Me”*** one should interpret it to mean, ***“BELIEVE FORM WITHIN ME”*** for I am in you and you in Me.

The proof of real transition is found in John 14:2; ***“On that day you will know that I am in My Father and you are in Me and that I am in you.”***

That day is when those who profess to be born again perform miracles equal to or greater than the Lord.

Dr Liza Rankow<sup>19</sup> states that ***“our essential nature and identity is not physical but spiritual and eternal.”*** In Jesus is the “spiritual transition into the power of the Father.”<sup>20</sup>

---

<sup>18</sup> GW: See Abbreviations

<sup>19</sup> Toward the Prophetic: A New Direction in the Practice of New Thought. (<http://www.religion-online.org/showarticle.asp?title=3574>).

Humankind become only an enemy of Satan due to the fact that after 'immersion' into Christ man reflects the real Authority, Power and Light of the Lord and thus needs to be eliminated completely if possible.<sup>21</sup> (See Conclusion)

## 2.7 Transformation Through Baptism

The experience of being **"born again"** followed with **"baptism"** is from with substance and produces spiritual authority in Christ Jesus.<sup>22</sup>

The consciousness of Christ was formed in the early Church largely due to baptism. Ever since the Church has lost its voice in the earth because of following the traditions enforced by men instead of following the principles of heaven. Baptism by the sprinkling of water is unbiblical; a man-made principle. Instigated by Satan to rob believers of being fully immersed in the Godhead. The question is, what would Satan gain from this?

Of great importance is this; baptism altered the consciousness of the disciple to witness the spiritual realm known as the Kingdom of Heaven as another level of faith flooded their souls.

Satan knew the strategy to destroy the spread of Christianity was to twist the spiritual principles of God into formulas and rituals. One source reveals that **"Love is the frequency of consciousness that unites, heals and bring wholeness compared to hate, the frequency of consciousness that separates, hurts and brings disintegration."**<sup>23</sup> All the evil that Satan does against mankind is done in a cold, calculated and systematic way in that everything he does is intentional and purposeful.<sup>24</sup>

---

<sup>20</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 93.

<sup>21</sup> Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ . (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence \pertaining to the Structures and Startegies to destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Volume 1: PTA: Self-published, pp. 1-101.

<sup>22</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 113.

<sup>23</sup> Secrets of mind and reality. (<http://www.mindreality.com/truth-about-relationship-between-god-and-satan>) p. 1.

<sup>24</sup> Ibid, p. 2.

As a result, we have religion or form without substance. In Exodus 33:13 Moses reveals a longing to “know” God in the way a husband and wife unite as one flesh for he knew intimacy would please God and establish order.

***Now therefore, I pray thee, if I have found grace in thy sight, shew me now thy way, that I may know thee, that I may find grace in thy sight: and consider that this nation is thy people.***

***Exodus 33:13***

To know God more fully is to understand baptism through intimate knowledge with Him. The knowledge of God is revealed to those who follow His precepts out of love, and not as a religious man made invention.

Baptism is God's demand for a higher level of consecration as illustrated in the book of Numbers.

***Take the Levites from among the children of Israel, and cleanse them. And thus shalt thou do unto them, to cleanse them: Sprinkle water of purifying upon them, and let them shave all their flesh, and let them wash their clothes, and so make themselves clean.***

***Numbers 8:6-7***

Baptism as a form of sanctification is applicable to the whole of a person's body which includes the “**mouth**” as a member of the body. Isaiah 6:7 illustrates the same principle of consecration; “***And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.***”

The question is asked why is this? “***Then the LORD put forth his hand, and touched my mouth. And the LORD said unto me, Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth***” (Jeremiah 1:9).

A wine maker will not use an old wineskin to put new fresh wine in God will not put His words in a corrupt and defiled **mouth**. In this we see the ultimate plan of Satan to defile the **mouth** of a person. (See Chapter Three on Sexual Perversion)

John the Baptist was binding the old (circumcision) and new covenants (baptized) with the waters of Christ. He was proclaiming the message of the kingdom with a greater revelation of power and universal authority in Christ Jesus.

In the words of Ferrell<sup>25</sup>; **“The heavenly blueprint to reproduce God Sons I the earth was established and sealed with the baptism of Jesus. The living water is the spiritual womb into the kingdom of God. God’s word is His incorruptible seed and the Holy Spirit is the person who impregnates our spirits. Baptism is designed to release heaven into our spirit, soul and body the same way it did Jesus.”**

It must be stressed that all believers must be baptized in the full Godhead. Saint Basil the Great (330-379) explains: **“This great sign of baptism is fulfilled in ‘three immersions,’ with ‘three invocations,’ so that the image of death might be completely formed, and the newly-baptized might have their souls enlightened with divine knowledge.”**<sup>26</sup>

Dr Marcellino D’ Ambrosio adds by saying; “The circumcision one have undergone is not an operation performed by mear human hands, but the complete stripping away of one’s unregenerate nature. This is the circumcision that Christ Jesus gave mankind, and it is accomplished by our burial with Him in baptism.”<sup>27</sup>

- **Being Baptized in the Spirit**

Being baptized in the Spirit is an invisible submersion with visible results beyond “speaking in tongues.”<sup>28</sup> The seal of this baptism resides in the spiritual dimensions whereby, those truly baptized with the Holy Spirit are not satisfied with their present, limited knowledge of Christ.

---

<sup>25</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 124.

<sup>26</sup> Catholic Faith and Reason. (<http://www.catholicfaithandreason.org/st-basil-the-great-330-379-ad.html>).

<sup>27</sup> Dying with Christ Through Baptism. ([http://www.crossroadsinitiative.com/library\\_article/915/Buried\\_With\\_Christ\\_in\\_Baptism\\_St\\_Basil.html](http://www.crossroadsinitiative.com/library_article/915/Buried_With_Christ_in_Baptism_St_Basil.html)).

<sup>28</sup> Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 135.

These are the true witnesses reaching beyond the present age, interceding for the generations to come.

Hebrews 5:9 reads; ***“And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;”***

In essence; ***“The sinless Jesus was immersed in the perfect Christ uniting His spirit with His soul and body. He was perfected and became the author of eternal salvation.”***<sup>29</sup>

After being baptized in the river and upon coming out of the wilderness in the Spirit, the Son of man was “made perfect” as the author of eternal salvation.

Christians should strive to attain this state of perfection ***“being perfect in every thought, every word spoken and every deed,”*** putting sin away, an instrument consecrated for God to speak through. To be baptized in the Godhead is to have an intimate relationship with the Father, The Son and the Spirit founded on Christ who is within the believer for in and through Christ all things are possible.

### **3 THE ROLE OF THE MOUTH OF THE CHRISTIAN IN RELATION TO BEING A “WITNESS” TO THE UNSAVED, THE SAVED, THE CHURCH AND THE WORLD**

Two thirds of “God” from left to right signifies “Go” and two thirds from right to left signifies “Do”; hence, God’s instruction to man as portrayed in Matthew 28:19.

***Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:***

***Matthew 28:19***

---

<sup>29</sup> Ibid, p. 136.

God demands obedience. In addition to "The Great Commission" above. Christians is obligated to preach the message of repentance. Jonah of the Bible was such a man called to this. However; this order was unbearable to him and he ended up in the belly of a Whale. In complete darkness he cycled out to God and repented upon which the message of being a witness was birthed in his heart as he ended with the eerily prophetic statement;

***Salvation comes from the Lord***

***Jonah 2:9***

Whether people realize it or not there is a call of separation of God. There is no middle ground, contrary to popular belief for Christian purposes the **spoken** word will either take the speaker to the Heavenly Kingdom of God or the worldly kingdom of Satan. Every man, woman and child (past and present) is separated into one or the other of the above mentioned.

***Therefore "Come out from among them and be separate, says the Lord. Do no touch what is unclean, and I will receive you." "I will be a Father to you, and you shall be My sons and daughters, says the LORD Almighty."***

***II Corinthians 6:17-18***

### **3.1 The Essence of Being a Witness**

The author of the book of Ecclesiastes writes as follows;

***It is better to go to the house of mourning, than to go to the house of feasting: for that is the end of all men; and the living will lay it to his heart.***

***Ecclesiastes 7:2***

This message sets as the core reason why the Church of Christ should be a witness to the world. The principle of being a witness is found in Mark 5:19 on the next page, which states;

***Howbeit Jesus suffered him not, but saith unto him, Go home to thy friends, and tell them how great things the Lord hath done for thee, and hath had compassion on thee.***

***Mark 5:19***

This verse illustrates the significance of the “**mouth**” as an instrument to witness in which one should go and “tell” – proclaim to the world the “Gospel of Christ Jesus”. Paul in Romans 10:60 adds; “**...and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.**”

A Christian should not try and explain the Gospel of Christ; rather, his life should be one of expressing Christ in word and in deed. Stanley Jones<sup>30</sup> was once quoted in saying:

**“Many teachers of the world have tried to explain everything—they have changed little or nothing. Jesus explained little and changed everything.”**

The call to be a witness is compulsory for each and every Christian; Jesus Himself said in Acts 1:8; “**But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me... and unto the uttermost part of the earth.**”

A true believers gratitude demand it (Mark 5:19) for the world needs the “Good News”, the “Gospel of Christ”;

***For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life as ransom for many.***

***Mark 10:45***

The question arises; does the Church need it? Deuteronomy 19:18-20 affirms that there are false witnesses and that no one should falsely accuse his brother.

---

<sup>30</sup> Water Mark (2005) AMG's Encyclopedia of Jesus' Life and Time. Tennessee, AMG Publishers, p. 423.

In this, believers are called to ***“put away all evil”*** (v. 20) from among themselves. God hates a false witness which breathes lies and a tongue which sows discord is an abomination to the Lord (Proverbs 6:16-10).

The attitude of a witness is therefore questioned? However, Paul writes as follows; ***“As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all men, especially unto them who are of the household of faith”*** (Galatians 6:10).

Moses in Deuteronomy 19 emphasizes the importance not to speak **“Loshon Hora”** (Evil speak), rather that what is **“good onto all men”**. Evident in this is the role of the **mouth** as an instrument of speaking “good” or “evil”.

### **3.2 The Relation between being a witness for God Versus Being a Witness in the Commercial Sector**

The question asked; what does it take to be a perfect man in Christ? The Christian “grows” by being a witness coming in unity in faith concerning the knowledge of Christ into a perfect man and the measure of the stature of the fullness in the Lord (Ephesians 4:13). Paul goes on explaining that the fruit of one’s lips should portray the “Truth in Love” in order to “grow up into Him” (Jesus Christ) in whom are all things as Head of the Church. Being a witness for God necessitates knowing the word and confessing it.

Being a witness in the commercial sector is more a question of “experience abundantly warrants it.” In general and to a large extent almost all commercial business is accomplished by personal solicitation. Modern technology has tremendously increased production in the industrial sector, so that a machine now does the work of a hundred men. However, the demand for individual salesmanship is greater than ever before in the world’s history. Advertising cannot take the place of a face-to-face interview. Goods may be produced by machines, but it takes knowledge of the product and personal work to sell goods and to make contracts.



In like manner; personal work includes witnessing as a means which God uses to extend and expand His Kingdom on earth to reach the lost.

### 3.3 Christians Called to be Witnesses

The immediate question which spring to mind is; why a witness? The need for people to hear the "Message of the Gospel" is a matter of life and death. The problem is; **man's self-will pertaining to the unsaved and to an extent the saved as well, is characterized by an attitude of active rebellion or passive indifference.** Because of his fallen state (Genesis 3), man is by nature degenerate and corrupt deprived of God's love, and destined to die.

God however does not want anyone to perish, but wants everyone to come to repentance. **"The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance."** (II Peter 3:9). Jesus clearly understood His mission and purpose during His ministering on earth; **"to do the fathers will"** (Luke 22:42).

In like manner should believers do as Jesus instructed; **"Go and make disciples of all nations"** (Matthew 28:19) and **"Go into all the world and preach the good news to all creation"** (Mark 16:15).

Jesus is the key; **"Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me"** (John 14:6). Gods' Word also reminds us; **"Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved"** (Acts 4:12).

One, if not the greatest misconception held by believers today is that men and women do not want to know God. Is the words of Jesus in John 4:35 then a lie? **"Say not ye, There are yet four months, and then cometh harvest? behold, I say unto you, Lift up your eyes, and look on the fields; for they are white already to harvest."**

The enthusiasm to save the lost should 100 fold outweigh the enthusiasm for “pay day”. What is the problem; why does the attitude of so many Christians lack excitement when it comes to opening their **mouths** to save the lost? Jesus said, “**He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me:...**” (John 14:21). Christ measures the believers love for Him by the extent and genuineness of his obedience to His calling: “**Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:”** (Matthew 28:19).

Dr A.W. Tozer<sup>31</sup> once wrote; “**People want the benefit of the Cross but they do not want the control of the Cross. They want all that the Cross can offer but they do not want to be under the Lordship of Jesus.**”

When it comes to witnessing the Church have a direct commandment from Jesus Christ to go into all the world and to open their **mouths**, to preach the message of salvation.

The Church are called to the ministry of reconciliation. Paul speaks of this when he said;

***And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation; that is, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation. Now then we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech you by us: we pray you in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled to God.***

***II Corinthians 5:18-20***

Paul was an ambassador par excellence; his ministry of witnessing was one of being committed unto death for his eyes was set on finishing the race.

---

<sup>31</sup> Tozer Dr A.W. (2007) Tozer: Mystery of the Holy Spirit. Florida, Bridge-Logos, p.154.

Paul in Acts 10:24-26 writes as follows;

*But none of these things move me, neither count I my life dear unto myself, so that I might finish my course with joy, and the ministry, which I have received of the Lord Jesus, to testify the gospel of the grace of God. And now, behold, I know that ye all, among whom I have gone preaching the kingdom of God, shall see my face no more. Wherefore I take you to record this day, that I am pure from the blood of all men.*

**Acts 10:24-26**

If Christians fail to be witnesses for God, the blood of others could be on their hands. That what is received from Christ, the truth, is not to be kept hidden, but for the **mouth to proclaim**, to be a witness committed unto death to reach the lost.

The question is asked; what qualifications is required to be a “witness” for God?

## **4 QUALIFICATIONS FOR EFFECTIVE WITNESSING**

Some critical qualifications include:

- Come to faith in Christ Jesus.
- Commit your entire person, your intellect, your emotions, and your will to Christ.
- Be sure there is no unconfessed sin in your life; sin hinders one's fellowship with God: Un-fruitful witness.
- Be filled with the Holy Spirit: Invite the Holy Spirit to control and empower you – to enable you to live a holy, godly life founded on faith in God's Word.
- Communicate your faith in Christ: Establish Christ on the throne as the Lord of your heart, your mind, and your lips.

As seen on the next page, chapter eight of Acts list the qualifications for witnessing in the life of Philip's ministry in Samaria and includes:

Knowledge of the Word of God	
• Enthusiasm	• Humility
• Boldness	• Obedience
• Compassion	• Tact Fullness
Receptivity, sensitivity to guidance	

Table 4: Qualifications for Witnessing

The question abounds; what if anything could hinder a believer from being an effective witness?

## 5 KEY ASPECTS THAT HINDERS A WITNESS FROM BEING EFFECTIVE

Any and everything which is not of God, can be deemed a possible hindrance.

- Disobedience: Ignoring the prompting of the Holy Spirit – one's calling.
- Spiritual Passivity: Luke warm Christian – no real commitment.
- Being controlled by a spirit of fear: Fear of man and or failure blocks the work of the Holy Spirit.
- Not knowing the Word: Ignorance concerning the written knowledge of the Word limits one from being an effective witness.
- Speaking lies: ***“He that lies is of his father, the Devil,”*** (John 8:44).

As important as the above might seem; of greater importance is the purpose of God's Word.

## 6 THE PURPOSE OF GOD'S WORD PERTAINING TO BEING A WITNESS

On the next page the prophet Isaiah wrote;

***So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.***

***Isaiah 55:11***

God's Word is a direct reflection of His will. If God will's it, so be it. God's will for man is to prosper in that what God called him for to be a witness and to speak the truth in order to accomplish what is expected of a witness. Given the above; what is the role of the Holy Spirit in relation to the witness?

## **7 WITNESSING IN THE POWER OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

Dr AW Tozer once wrote; **“People want the benefit of the Cross but they do not want the control of the Cross. They want all that the Cross can offer but they do not want to be under the Lordship of Jesus.”**<sup>32</sup>

Jesus as recorded in John 17:20 prayed the following; ***“My prayer is not for them alone. I pray also for those who will believe in Me through their message.”*** As Christ prayed that the Holy Spirit would work in the lives of His disciples, so should Christians pray that the Holy Spirit will convict non-believers by shining God's light in their hearts. It is prayer that sets things in motion.

In the words of Benny Hinn<sup>33</sup>; “the power and authority the apostles received began to touch lives at every turn. Their ministry was followed by ***“many signs and wonders...among the people”*** (Acts 5:12). And what was the result? ***“Believers were increasingly added to the Lord, multitudes of both men and women”*** (v. 14) *The signs that followed the coming of the Holy Spirit led people directly to Christ.* That's an important fact to remember.”

---

<sup>32</sup> Tozer Dr A.W. (2007) Tozer: Mystery of the Holy Spirit. Florida, Bridge-Logos, p. 154.

<sup>33</sup> Benny Hinn (1997) Good Morning Holy Spirit. USA: Thomas Nelson, pp. 113, 114.

God's will is for every person to be saved and promises to answer any prayer offered in accordance with His will; ***"And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us: And if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him."*** (1 John 5:14-15).

God will answer prayers offered for the salvation of souls; ***"For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure."*** (Philippians 2:13).

Prayer is really the place where people are won to Christ; sharing the Good News is shining the light of Christ in man's heart.

John Wesley<sup>34</sup> is quoted in saying; ***"God does nothing except in response to believing prayer."***

The Holy Spirit brings one face to face with the facts regarding one's condition and one's needs through convicting, reproofing, exposing and bringing to light the truth of the Gospel of Christ. If believers were to witness on their own, they would accomplish nothing. But when the Holy Spirit uses a Christian's testimony, He brings the lost face to face with important Biblical truths, presenting them so tactfully that these truths must be considered.

## 8 THE INITIAL EFFECT OF GOD'S WORD

Hebrews 4:12 depicts as follows; ***"the Word of God is living and powerful"***. From the Greek<sup>35</sup> word translated *"powerful"* derives the English word *"energetic"*. In addition Jesus affirms that the words He uttered ***"are spirit, and they are life"*** (John 6:63). Cassandra Clare<sup>36</sup> is quoted in saying; ***"we live and breathe words"***.

---

<sup>34</sup> Wesley John. (<http://voices.yahoo.com/20-famous-quotes-prayer-7275146.htm>).

<sup>35</sup> Prince Derek (2007) Foundations for Righteous Living, India, Derek Prince Ministries, p. 51.

<sup>36</sup> Cassandra Clare: We live and breathe words. (<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/words>).

The apostle Paul concerning the spoken "Word", states as follows;

***For this reason we also thank God without ceasing, because when you received the word of God which you heard from us, you welcomed it not as the word of men but as it is in truth, the word of God, which also effectively works in you who believe.***

***1 Thessalonians 2:13***

Considering the above; the "Word" cannot be reduced merely to sounds in the air or letters on sheets of paper. No; God's Word is all of the above which works effectively in and through those who believe it. From the above; the picture conveyed is therefore one of living, breathing, intense, vibrant energy and activity.

The problem is that if the Word of God is not spoken, no one hears it; how then can the Word impact a person's life since response determines effect?

In relation to both the saved and the un-saved the manner and the degree in which the spoken Word works in any given instance is decided by the response of the one who hears it. James 1:21 reads;

***Therefore lay aside all filthiness and overflow of wickedness, and receive with meekness the implanted word, which is able to save your souls.***

***James 1:21***

The word "receive" in this context refers to hearing the implanted spoken word. The word "overflow" refers to "whatever is in the heart overflows in speech" (Luke 6:45). Filthiness and wickedness denotes a perverse delight in speaking evil and uttering impure words. These factors hinders the saving influence of God's Word both for the lost and Christians who are caught up in repetitive sin; whereby sin, the medium of destruction, closes the heart and mind of the beneficial effects of God's Word, both for the un-saved and the saved.

The opposite of filthiness is referred to by James as meekness and carries with it the concept of humility quietness, gentleness and obedience, which is directly linked to “the fear of the Lord”; which is the beginning of wisdom (Proverbs 9:10) and an attitude of reverence and respect toward God the Father. The book of in Psalms, in addition talks about the benefit and blessing from the instruction of God through His Word;

***Good an upright is the Lord; Therefore He teaches sinners in the way. The humble He guides in justice, And the humble He teaches His way... Who is the man that fears the Lord? Him shall He teach in the way He chooses... The secret of the Lord is with those who fear Him, And He will show them His covenant.***

***Psalm 25:8-9, 12,14***

Meekness and the fear of the Lord works in union for those who desire to receive instruction and blessing from God through His Word communicated.

The spoken Word produces different effects in different people whereby these effects are decided by the reactions of those who hear it. As such Hebrews 4:12 not merely reads God's Word breathed as being “**alive**” and “**active**,” but also that it “**is a discernment of the thoughts and intents of the heart**” of man. The role of the Holy Spirit is evident in that He as our *paraclete*<sup>37</sup>, will enable us to discern our thoughts and intensifies our hearts.<sup>38</sup>

The question is asked; what effect is produced in those who take God's Word to heart?

## **9 THE SPOKEN WORD AND THE ELLEMENT OF FAITH**

The apostle Paul concerning the effect of hearing the Word communicated, and taking it to heart, as seen on the next page;

---

<sup>37</sup> Paraclete: Revers to someone to who is called in alongside to help.

<sup>38</sup> Prince Derek (1999) Life Changing Spiritual Power. India: Derek Prince Ministries, p. 95



***...faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.***

***Romans 10:17***

Faith therefore constitutes hearing the Word of God. Hearing can be referred to as “an attitude of aroused interest” and “attention,” a sincere desire to receive and to understand the spoken Word presented.

Faith comes only from hearing God's Word and is therefore directly related to God's Word. Scripture refers to faith as; ***“Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen”*** (Hebrews 11:1). Prince<sup>39</sup> holds to scriptural faith as; ***“believing that God means what He has said in His Word and that God will do what He has promised.”***

David demonstrated the principle of scriptural faith founded on the spoken Word;

***And now, O Lord, the word which You have spoken concerning Your servant and concerning his house, let it be established forever, and do as You have said.***

***1 Chronicles 17:23***

Scriptural faith is summed up in the phrase; ***“do as You have said”*** with your **mouth**. Mary also expressed this kind of scriptural faith upon receiving a message of promise from God and she replied;

***Let it be to me according to your word.***

***Luke 1:38***

Scriptural faith is founded on hearing the Word and believing it will be done. This kind of faith is produced within the soul of man by hearing the spoken Word and is expressed by the active response of claiming the fulfilment of that which God's Word portray.

---

<sup>39</sup> Prince Derek (2007) Foundations for Righteous Living, India, Derek Prince Ministries, p. 55.

Faith and believe pleases God for without;

***...faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to God must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who diligently seek Him.***

***Hebrews 11:6***

The question is asked; does the spoken Word act as spiritual nourishment?

## **10 THE SPOKEN WORD IN RELATION TO SPIRITUAL NOURISHMENT**

“Man can make union, but only the Holy Spirit can effect true unity.”<sup>40</sup> It is in this unity with the Holy Spirit that man receives spiritual nourishment. New life calls for nourishment; in this case spiritual food in order to sustain the believer mentally, physically and spiritually. Spiritual food is not obtainable in a bottle, nor can it be bought. This kind of nourishment flows from the lips. The spirit of a newly re-born Christian requires spiritual nourishment, both to maintain the spirit and to promote spiritual growth. Spiritual nourishment is found in God's Word.

This spiritual growth is described by Peter in the first epistle where he speaks about being born again of the incorruptible seed of God's Word; he goes on to saying;

***Therefore, laying aside all malice, all guile, hypocrisy, envy, and all evil speaking, as new-born babes, desire the pure milk of the word, that you may grow thereby.***

***I Peter 2:1-2***

Given that the emphasis of this thesis concerns the **mouth** piece; re-born Christians are warned to lay aside all kind of evil speaking. The **mouth** should be a well of life, not destruction. These sinful elements if not purged from the heart, the **mouth** will overflow with and hinder the beneficial effects of God's Word and spiritual growth in the lives of Christians.

---

<sup>40</sup> Prince Derek (2007) You Shall Receive Power. USA: Derek Prince Ministries, p. 67.

Beyond milk, solid food belongs to believers who are mature, that is, who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.

***For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.***

***Hebrews 5:12-14***

The way to maturity is to have the senses exercised through applying God's Word. In this we also realise the importance of the indwelling of the Holy Spirit to do the outgoing works of God.<sup>41</sup> It is the indwelling of the Holy Spirit and the spiritual exercise of the senses that strengthens the inner man to discern between good and evil.<sup>42</sup>

Constant, systematic study of the whole of God's Word will develop and mature the believer's spiritual faculties.

## **11 THE CHRISTIANS MIRROR OF SPIRITUAL REVELATION**

The Bible is a "*mirror of spiritual revelation*" as described in James 1:23-25; ***"For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass: For he beholdeth himself, and goeth his way, and straightway forgetteth what manner of man he was. But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed."***

---

<sup>41</sup> Kuyper Abraham (2009) Concise Works of the Holy Spirit. USA: AMG Publishers, p. 12.

<sup>42</sup> Copeland Kenneth and Gloria (1998) Pursuit of His Presence. USA: Kenneth Copland Publishers.

James mentioned in order for God's Word to produce its proper effects in a believer there are two basic conditions;

- One must "receive it with meekness" (James 1:21) that is, with the proper attitude of heart and mind.
- Christians must be "doers of the word, and not hearers only" (James 1:22) which implies applying it in a practical way on a daily basis.

Failing in doing so will result in not experiencing any of the practical blessings and benefits of which the Bible speaks. Taking the eyes off the eternal things, a believers afflictions no longer produce the same beneficial effects within him. Within the mirror of God's Word one behold these eternal things. It is a mirror that all believers must continually and steadfastly look into.

Moses time in the wilderness sets as an example of endurance in the failing; Hebrews 11:27 depicts the following as seen in the verse on the next page;

***By faith he forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the king; for he endure as seeing Him who is invisible***

***Hebrews 11:27***

Note, the source of Moses' power to endure affliction; "***he endured as seeing Him who is invisible.***" It was Moses' vision of the eternal, invisible God and Saviour of his people that gave him faith and courage to endure and to triumph over all his afflictions.

## **12 THE ELEMENT OF THE NATURE OF FAITH**

Within the Bible there are two definite, distinguishing features of faith;

- Faith always originates from hearing God's Word (Romans 10:17).
- It is always directly related to God's Word.

Prince<sup>43</sup> refers to faith as “**the ground, or confidence, of things hoped for, a sure persuasion, or conviction, concerning things not seen.**”

The question arises; does the nature of faith constitutes having hope?

## 12.1 The Relationship Between Faith, Hope and Love

The account of Hebrews 6:9-20 reveals a reciprocal relationship between faith, hope and love.

***Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. ...And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.***

***I Corinthians 13:7,13***

Hebrews 11:1 indicates a distinction between faith and hope. In general, there are two main ways in which faith differs from hope;

- Hope is directed toward the future, but faith is established in the present.
- Hope is an attitude of expectancy concerning things that are yet to be, but faith is a substance—a confidence, something real and definite within one—that one possess here and now.

In addition; hope is anchored in the realm of the soul (Hebrew 6:19); faith is anchored in the realm of the heart. Paul's description of scriptural armour refers to this;

***But let us who are of the day be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love, and as a helmet the hope of salvation***

***I Thessalonians 5:8***

---

<sup>43</sup> Prince Derek (2007) Foundations for Righteous Living, India, Derek Prince Ministries, p. 115.

The following is noted;

- Faith together with love is found in the region of the breast; that is, the region of the heart.
- Hope is pictured as a helmet, in the region of the head, or soul. One can therefor say that hope is a mental attitude of expectancy concerning the future; faith on the other hand, is a condition of the heart, producing within people here and now something so real that it can be described by the word "*substance*."

Paul in Romans 10:10 again directly associates the "heart" with the exercise of "faith", or "believing."

***With the heart one believes unto [literally, into] righteousness***

***Romans 10:10***

The problem is when people make a profession of faith in Christ and the Bible, but their faith is only in the realm of the mind hence, it is an intellectual acceptance of certain Biblical facts. Scriptural faith does not produce any vital change in the lives of people who profess it; however, heartfelt faith always produces a definite change in people who profess it. It is one thing to believe with the mind "unto righteousness," merely as an abstract theory or ideal. It is quite another thing to believe with the heart "into righteousness"; that is, to believe in a way that produces a transformation of habits, character and that which proceeds from the **mouth**.

In the words of Christ, the verb phrase "to believe" is regularly followed by the preposition "*into*", to express change or motion. For instance;

***Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me.***

***John 14:1***

The verb phrase “to believe” is associated with a process of change or motion. It is not enough to believe “in” Christ with mere mental acceptance of the facts of His life or the truths of His teaching. Christians must believe “into” Christ—to be moved by heartfelt faith into Christ, out of sin and into His righteousness, out of weakness and into His power, out of failure. Scriptural “faith of the heart” always produces change. It is always believing *into* Christ and *into* righteousness; and the result is always something definite, experienced in the present, not something merely hoped for in the future.

Christ in John 6:45 used the present and not the future tense. He says, “He who believes...has everlasting life”—not *shall have*, but already *has*, everlasting life. Scriptural faith into Christ produces everlasting life here and now within the believer. By saying I believe in the Word, one refers to something one already has, something that one already enjoy, a reality, a substance within one.

## 12.2 Faith for Salvation Verses Faith for Healing

Abraham Kuyper writes as follows; “Faith is not the working of a faculty inherent in the natural man; nor a new sense added to the five; nor a new soul-function; nor a ability first dormant now active, but a disposition, mode of action, implanted by the Holy Spirit in the consciousness and will of the regenerate person, whereby he is enabled to accept Christ.”<sup>44</sup>

One must recognize that mere mental acceptance of the Bible’s statements concerning healing and health lacks the power to make them manifest. “You change a person by using positive words that release positive mental pictures of what he can become in Christ.”<sup>45</sup>

---

<sup>44</sup> Kuyper Abraham (2009) Concise Works of the Holy Spirit. USA: AMG Publishers, p. 436.

<sup>45</sup> Schuller Robert H (1999) Believe in the God who Believes in You. USA: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 74.

---

The words of Paul in Ephesians 2:8 concerning faith for salvation apply equally to faith for healing; he writes as follows;

***For by grace you have been saved 'healed' through faith, and that [faith] not of yourselves; it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast.***

***Ephesians 2:8***

Faith of Salvation and that which brings healing is a gift of God's sovereign grace. Heartfelt faith cannot be produced by any kind of mental gymnastics or psychological techniques. This kind of faith can be apprehended only by the spiritual mind of a believer. To the carnal mind it appears foolish; it accepts the testimony of the senses in all circumstances and is thus ruled by the senses. A person's spiritual mind accepts the testimony of God's Word as invariably and unchangeably true and then accepts the testimony of the senses only insofar as it agrees with the testimony of God's Word. The attitude of the spiritual mind toward the testimony of God's Word is summed up by David as he writes;.

***I cling to Your testimonies; O Lord, do not put me to shame!***

***Psalms 119:31***

Psalms 119:152 adds;

***Concerning Your testimonies, I have known of old that You have founded them forever***

***Psalms 119:152***

Hope is born out of faith and manifests through our testimony of love. "Saving faith is not considered the ordinary breath of the soul, first disturbed, then restored. No; it is the specific remedy for one lost in sin."<sup>46</sup>

---

<sup>46</sup> Schuller Robert H (1999) Believe in the God who Believes in You. USA: Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 437.



### 12.3 Heart Felt Faith Demonstrated in the Life of Abraham

This kind of faith is evident in the life of Abraham. Paul testifies of Abraham's faith being directed towards God;

*...who gives life to the dead and calls those things which do not exist as though they did. Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be. And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sara's womb: Rom 4:20 He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.*

***Romans 4:17-21***

The question arises; what is meant by God calling "those things which do not exist as though they did"? It speaks of one having faith in that which God has declared to be true, even though no evidence of its truth may be manifested to the senses.

God called Abraham "***a father of many nations,***" and immediately Abraham reckoned himself as being just that. This is the epitome of heartfelt faith seeing that he had not even one son born to Sarah and himself at that stage. Abraham did not ask for a sign, he accept God's statement as true and authoritative.

In verse 18 Paul tells us that Abraham, "***contrary to hope, in hope believed.***" The later part of this phrase Abraham having both faith and hope—hope concerning the future and faith in the present—and that his hope concerning the future was the outcome of his faith in the present. In verse 19 Abraham demonstrates his faith in refusing to believe what his senses declared in him about being one hundred years old.

***Abraham did not consider his own body, already dead (since he was about a hundred years old), and the deadness of Sarah's womb***

***Romans 4:19***

His mind undoubtedly told him that it was no longer possible for him and Sarah to have children; he did not accept that testimony because it did not agree with the spoken word of God.

Abraham denied the flesh; he refused to consider it.

***He Abraham did not waver at the promise of God through unbelief...being fully convinced that what He God had promised He was also to perform***

***Romans 4:20:21***

Abraham's faith was founded on God's promise. In essence one can therefor say; faith is based on the promises and statements of God's Word and accepts the testimony of the senses only insofar as they agree with the statements of God's Word.

Romans 4:11 refers to Abraham as ***"the father of all those who believe"***, and in the next verse as one ***"who also walk in the steps of the faith"*** (v. 12).

In summary then;

- Abraham made God's promise his, the moment the spoken word came to him.
- Abraham denied the testimony of his senses as long as it was not in line with the spoken word of God.
- Due to Abraham holding fast to what God promised, his body, mind and the testimony of his senses were brought into line with the testimony of God's lips.

That which was hoped for was accepted in "naked faith," contrary to the testimony of his senses; it became a reality and confirmed by the testimony of his senses years later when Isaac was born.

By many, this attitude of accepting God's spoken Word as true in defiance of the testimony of our senses would be dismissed as mere foolishness of fanaticism.

René Descartes<sup>47</sup>, a philosopher in his work on “*View of Sense Perception*” argues as follows; **“Sense perception relies on the mind rather than on the body. Descartes asserts that we can know our mind more readily than we can know our body. In support of this idea he gives the example of a piece of wax which is observed in its solid form and its liquid form. After pointing out the difficulties of relying on the senses of the physical body to understand the nature of the wax he makes this claim: ‘[P]erception ... is neither a seeing, nor a touching, nor an imagining. ... [R]ather it is an inspection on the part of the mind alone’. Descartes shows that we can use our senses to help us understand the true nature of things, but the senses alone are inadequate to determine truth since they are often deceived”.**

The question therefore is; if then, the testimony of one's senses cannot be accepted by itself as true and reliable, where can one find the correct standard of truth and reality by which the testimony of the senses must be judged?

Prince<sup>48</sup> in response to this question states; **“neither philosophy nor psychology has ever been able to offer any satisfactory answer.”**

John 18:38 refers to Pilate contemplating on **“*What is truth?*”** Christ reveals the answer in addressing His Father as portrayed in John 17:17;

***Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth.***

***John 17:17***

Truth is found in God's Word; faith consists in hearing, believing and acting upon God's word whether written or communicated.

---

<sup>47</sup> Descartes' View of Sense Perception. (<http://jdcard.com/descar.htm>).

<sup>48</sup> Prince Derek (2007) Foundations for Righteous Living, India, Derek Prince Ministries, p. 122.

## 12.4 The Relationship Pertaining to Faith and the Physical Senses

In considering the relationship between faith and our physical senses, in addressing this issues, it is necessary to make a clear distinction between true, scriptural faith on the one hand and such teachings as “mind-over-matter” of “Christian Science” on the other hand.

The two main points of difference are as follows:

- Teachings such as mind-over-matter or Christian Science tend to magnify and exalt the purely human element—such things as man's mind, or reason, or willpower. Thus, these teachings are essentially man-centred. On the other hand, true, scriptural faith is essentially God-centred. It abases all that is human and magnifies only God and God's truth and power.
- Teachings such as mind-over-matter or Christian Science are not based directly, or even mainly, upon the Word of God. That which they assert and seek to make real by the exercise of the human will are not in accordance with the teaching of the Bible, since in certain respects they are contrary to God's Word. It must be stressed that scriptural faith, by definition, is confined within the limits of God's Word.

## 12.5 The Relationship Between Faith and Presumption

To distinguish between faith and presumption, the line that divides these two is very fine, but it highlights the boundary between success and disaster.

- Presumption is a combination of human arrogance and self-glorification. It is the assertion of man's will as Eve illustrated when she believed Satan's lie; “***ye shall be as gods***” (Genesis 3:5).

- Faith, is founded on God, and its outworking will always glorify God whereby it never takes the initiative away from God.

Paul wrote about this faith when he said; Such faith is “**not of yourselves; it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast**” (Ephesians 2:8-9). The right attitude towards faith is expressed by John the Baptist;

***A man can receive nothing unless it has been given to him from heaven.***

***John 3:27***

In this one comes to knowledge in what Jesus meant when He said; “**without Me, ye can do nothing**” (John 15:5).

### **13 SCRIPTURAL FAITH EXPRESSED BY THE CONFESSION OF THE LIPS**

Pertaining to being a “witness” the most important aspect of scriptural faith is confessing it with one’s **mouth**. Romans 10:10a reads;

***With the heart one believes to righteousness.***

***Romans 10:10a***

The later part of the verse reads;

***And with the mouth confession is made to salvation.***

***Romans 10:10b***

In this there is a direct “link” between faith in the heart and confession with the mouthpiece.

This “link” is one of the great basic principles of Scripture. Christ Himself declared;

***For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks.***

***Matthew 12:34***

In essence then; when a person's heart is full of faith in Christ, this faith will find its proper expression as one confess Christ openly with one's **mouth**. **Faith unconfessed and held back in silence, is an incomplete faith** which will not bring the results and the blessings that one desires.

Paul refers to this link between believing and speaking when he wrote;

***But since we have the same spirit of faith, according to what is written, “I believed and therefore I spoke,” we also believe and therefore speak.***

***II Corinthians 4:13***

Note the logical connection indicated by the word “*therefore* I also believed and therefore I speak”. Paul refers to the “spirit of faith.” Mental faith in the mind may perhaps keep silent; but faith that is spiritual faith that is in the spirit and the heart of man must speak. This kind of faith must be expressed through verbal declaration of the **mouth**.

The English word “*confession*” just like the Greek word “*homologia*” of which it is a translation, means literally “say the same as.” Thus, confession, for believers, means that one say the same thing with one's **mouth** as God Himself has already said in His Word; hence the words of one's **mouth** agree with the Word of God.

As such confession, in this context, is the natural expression of heartfelt faith. One believe in his heart what God has said in His Word - this is faith. Thereafter one naturally say the same with one's **mouth** as one believe in one's heart—this is confession. A believer's faith and confession must always be founded on the truth of God's Word.

### 13.1 The Relationship of the Mouthpiece and Christ the High-Priest

The Book of Hebrews further express the importance of confession in relation to the Christians faith. Hebrews 3:1 reads;

***Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus;***

***Hebrews 3:1***

From this verse it is evident that Christ is the “High-Priest” of the believer’s confession. Christ in heaven serves as the Christian’s Advocate and representative in respect of every truth of God’s Word to which believers on earth confess with their **mouths**.

When Christians fail to confess their faith on earth, they give Christ no opportunity to act on their behalf in heaven. Closing one’s lips on earth, closes the lips of one’s Advocate in heaven, the Lord Jesus Christ.

In essence; **the extent of Christ’s High-priestly ministry on the believer’s behalf in heaven is determined by the extent of believer’s confession on earth.**

## 14 THE WORDS OF JESUS A UNIQUELY PENETRATING ARRAY OF LIGHT

### 14.1 The Words of Jesus Spoken Into the Heart of Man

Hearing the voice of Jesus with the ear of the heart is the first step in building a relationship with Him. In the account of Revelation 3:20-21 Jesus said; “***Behold, I stand at the door and knock; if anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to him and eat with him, and he with Me.***” Intimacy with Christ necessitates a listening heart. To listen with the ear of the heart is to open oneself to another person; it is making oneself vulnerable to risk relationship. In the event that the heart stops listening, communication with this person begins to disintegrate.

The definition of communication according to Tedd Tripp<sup>49</sup>, author of “Shepherding a Child's Heart”; **“is the art of expressing in Godly ways what is in the heart and of hearing completely and understanding what another person thinks and or feels. This is true of friendship, of marriage and of all relationships”**.

For any Christian to have a meaningful relationship with Jesus necessitates hearing His voice. Henry Winkler<sup>50</sup> is quoted in saying; **“Assumptions are the termites of relationships”**.

## 14.2 The Voice of the Shepard

Jesus in John 10:16 made the following declaration; **“My sheep will hear My voice”** (John 10:16). For the sheep of His flock, the voice of Jesus has a uniquely penetrating quality, an unmistakable accent of tenderness, a note of divine authority that shines straight into the heart of man.

The believer's heart leaps with recognition at the sound of his Sheppard's voice. John 10:3 reads; **“The sheep hear His voice, and He calls His own sheep by name, and leads them out”** The question is asked; out of what is Jesus calling His sheep?

The lost are called out of the wilderness; Isaiah 53:6 states;

***All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.***

***Isaiah 53:6***

Christians can ill afford camping at the foot of Mount Sinai; God is calling them to come up the mountain and to partake of His cup in growing to a higher level of relationship.

---

<sup>49</sup> Tripp, Tedd (1995) *Shepherding A Child's Heart*. Wapwallopen, Shepherd Press, p. 1.

<sup>50</sup> Quotes about communication. (<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/communication>).



### 14.3 Your Word Alone is Enough O Lord

The spoken words of Jesus, undoubtedly, accomplishes what it expresses. Luke 7:6-7 acts as an example of Jesus' words accomplishing His will;

*Then Jesus went with them. And when he was now not far from the house, the centurion sent friends to him, saying unto him, Lord, trouble not thyself: for I am not worthy that thou shouldest enter under my roof: Wherefore neither thought I myself worthy to come unto thee: but say in a word, and my servant shall be healed.*

*Luke 7:6-7*

The heart of a believer who has backslidden may be as hard as a rock, it may be shrivelled up in the desert wastes of sin, yet the psalmist sings; **“He sends forth His word and it melts them; at the breath of His mouth the waters flow”** (Psalm 147:18).

### 14.4 The Words of Jesus in the Heart Forever

Luke 10:39-42 reads as follows;

*And she had a sister called Mary, which also sat at Jesus' feet, and heard his word. But Martha was cumbered about much serving, and came to him, and said, Lord, dost thou not care that my sister hath left me to serve alone? bid her therefore that she help me. And Jesus answered and said unto her, Martha, Martha, thou art careful and troubled about many things: But one thing is needful: and Mary hath chosen that good part, which shall not be taken away from her.*

*Luke 10: 39-42*

Mary seated herself at the Lord's feet and stayed there listening to His words (v. 39) as a lamb resting at her shepherd's feet. From this is clear that Mary has chosen the “good part”, the one thing which is needful, the spoken words of Christ.

The Words of Jesus is living seeds embedded in the heart of man, the more mankind harkens to the words of Christ calling and, knocking at the door, the brighter God's light shines in the heart.

The Song of Solomon refers to such an experience, "***With great delight I sat in His shadow, and His fruit was sweet to my taste***" (Song of Solomon 2:3); chapter 5:16 adds; "***His mouth is most sweet, He is altogether lovely***". This is the experience of all believers, down through the ages have stilled and quieted their hearts to listen to the voice of the Christ calling out. True relationship with Christ expresses itself in action and in words but it begins with listening. This listening in adoring silence is to enter the apostolate.

The office of the apostle; the ear of the heart of the believer learns to distinguish voice of the Christ among the tumult of a thousand other voices. There is something perceptive and tender all at once about the words of Jesus uttered;

It circumcises and it heals; it challenges and it comforts; it seeketh and it fills. If the believer resist the voice of Jesus, the sound of His voice become still but by listening to a single word one can be set free of anything that hinders one's relationship with Christ in order to be an effective witness. Hebrew 4:12 depicts as follows;

***For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.***

***Hebrews 4:12***

In the above verse, believers need not question the power and penetrating effect of God's Word. As witnesses for Christ, there will be mountains to climb, there will be times of persecution but in all of this rest on the assurance of the words of Jesus when He said; "***Peace I leave with you, My peace I give to you***" (John 14:27).

## 14.5 The Comfort in Jesus' Words of Assurance

From the words of John 19:25-27;

***Now there stood by the cross of Jesus his mother, and his mother's sister, Mary the wife of Cleophas, and Mary Magdalene. When Jesus therefore saw his mother, and the disciple standing by, whom he loved, he saith unto his mother, Woman, behold thy son! Then saith he to the disciple, Behold thy mother! And from that hour that disciple took her unto his own home.***

***John 19:25-27***

Like Mary of Bethany; Mary Magdalene (Jesus' mother) heard the voice of Jesus. The picture here is Jesus with His arms spread wide upon the Cross, and at His feet are the sheep of His flock. ***"By the Cross of Jesus were His mother, ...Mary of Magdala"*** (John 19:25) a lamb bounded and torn, listening and loving. The words of Jesus fall into His mother's heart, circumcising and healing all at once upon Him saying to her; ***"woman, behold your son"*** (v. 26). The words of Jesus comforted His mother in that another became her son at that moment; in like manner will Jesus never leave His flock, nor forsake them (Deuteronomy 3:16).

## 14.6 To Know the Voice of the Lamb

After the resurrection of Jesus; Mary upon seeing the empty tomb, was a disoriented lamb in search of her Son's body; ***"she turned round and saw Jesus standing, but she did not know that it was Jesus"*** (John 20:15). Jesus said; ***"Woman, why are you weeping? Whom do you seek? Supposing Him to be the gardener, she said to Him, 'Sir, if you have carried Him away, tell me where you have laid Him, and I will take Him away'"*** (John 20:14-15). Then, in His own inimitable way Jesus called to His mother, ***"Mary"*** (John 20:16). She knew Him then, at the sound of His voice, and said to Him ***"Rabbouni!"*** which means "Master" (John 20:17).

Mary recognized Jesus not at sight but at the sound of His voice. True intimacy leads to vision Jesus face-to-face, but begins by hearing the sound of His voice founded on faith for ***“Even though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I fear no evil; for thou art with me; thy rod and staff, they comfort me”*** (Psalm 23:4).

Pertaining to the present, believers walk in perils times with only the voice of Jesus to direct them as He speaks to them in Church, through Scripture, through the Holy Spirit, and those to whom He has confided His flock. In this the need for Christians to be silent enough and humble enough to listen as He calls each one by name; believers must know Him at the sound of His voice, revealing the Father's will for each and every believer.

The direction of a craft is not determined by the direction of the wind, but by the trim of the sail. In a sense, Jesus' words is like the set of the sail for all of mankind towards eternal life for Matthew 7:21 says: ***“Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.”***

Jesus in John 10:27-30 affirms His promise;

***My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me: And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand. My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand. I and my Father are one.***

***John 10:27-30***

Given that Christians are calling ***“son's of God”*** (1 John 3:1), surely fathers is called to witness to their sons and daughters as well. The question now is; how does a father as a witness of Christ, witness to his children?

## 15 HOW DO I WITNESS TO MY CHILDREN?

In the words of Myles Munroe<sup>51</sup>; “**all things begin and end with purpose**”

The question is asked; what exactly does being a witness entail in relation to shepherding a child's heart?

Being a witness to one's children is an integral part of a father. The very existence of father's is evidence that children needs something that their fathers can provide.

One's personal fulfilment in life is possible only in so far as one complete one's Godly ordained destiny. One principle a child must learn is strive to be who you are born to be; a child of God. In 1 John 3:1 one read; “***What manner of love the father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God.***” Someone once said; nothing is truly owned until one understands it, not even ones identity.

Parents are to hand down their faith to children when they are young. Now, you cannot force faith upon them. Parents cannot make children believe what they believe, but knowing the truth can lead to understanding.

Fathers should figure out how to hand down their faith to their children. In general there are six approaches a father can apply to hand down faith:

- **By principle:** Instruct them in the ways of God. The teachings of the Word should direct their thought patterns and govern their actions as well as every word that proceeds from their **mouths**. A father should weave the Word of God into his conversation with his children. Find out what they are interested in, and then talk about those things in light of God's truth and teach them how to apply it to real life situations.

---

<sup>51</sup> Munroe Myles (1992) In Pursuit of Purpose. USA: Destiny Image, p. 7.

From this statement is emphasized the importance of a father being a witness upon a child asking; why am I here, who am I really, what purpose is there for me in life?

- **By example:** Children learn more by watching what parents do than by listening to what is said. What example do fathers portray? No father is perfect; children will notice successes and failures. There is nothing like folk living out Biblical principles and applying them.

As a father's faith will be tested in good and bad times in like manner will children observe and learn from their father how to approach problems. By persistence by doing what needs to be done in live with the Word of God and according to Scriptural principles. If fathers daily exemplify principles in keeping with God's Word, they impress upon their children what they will carry into adulthood.

- **By participation:** Get actively involved in what concerns or interests your children. Establish a caring and loving relationship which makes communication and correction easier. Listen to viewpoints, even when one disagree. Establish a peace full atmosphere that is not threatening but is conducive to the sharing of ideas. A Father can only hand down his faith to those who are receptive and open to it.
- **By praise:** Inform children when they have done wrong, but praise them on what they have done right. If a child can improve in some areas, don't shame him into doing better. Seek together to the Word of God to see what God has to say about a given situation. The aim is for them to apply what is witnessed to them.
- **By prayer:** God answers the prayers of loving parents. Spend time praying for and with them. Teach them principle of what is bind on earth is bound in Heaven (Matthew 18:18).

- **By obedience:** A father's life should be one of serving God in loving obedience. Jesus taught that principle when He said; ***"If ye love Me, keep My commandments"*** (John 14:15)
- **By loyalty:** Loyalty go hand in hand with integrity and being trust worthy. First be loyal to God in all things and the fruit thereof will show in the lives of one's children.
- **By respect:** Respect God's will and be humble about it as Jesus demonstrated; ***"not My will, but Your will"*** (Luke 22:42).

Ultimately a father's life speaks of his legacy he leaves behind. Impress on a child's heart the one thing which stands out above all; love the Lord your God and serve Him in fullness, in spirit and in truth. In adding witness to them the love for one's wife in "word" and in "deed".

## 16 THE CALL OF JESUS TO OBEDIENCE

God does not come to His children, forcing them to knuckle under Him and obey. No! God comes with the ***"reproofs of instruction which are the way to life"*** (Proverbs 6:23).

### 16.1 Embracing Biblical Methods of Communication

Proverbs 23:13-19 depicts the following;

***My son, if your hear is wise, then my heart will be glad; my inmost being will rejoice when your lips speak what is right.***

***Proverbs 23:13-19***

Proverbs 23:26 adds;

***“My son, give me your heart and let your eyes keep to my ways...”***

***Proverbs 23:26***

Jesus summarizes by saying;

***If ye love me, keep my commandments.***

***John 14:15***

One thing stands out from the above; communication is dialogue, not monologue!

The question abound; what principle did Jesus apply pertaining to communication?

### **16.1.1 Jesus Applying the Principle of Communication**

In general one often think of communication as the ability to express oneself.

However, Jesus teachings illustrated two important aspects the first includes; not only the ability to talk, but also the ability to listen. Proverbs 18:2 testifies to this issue with penetrating insight; ***“A fool finds no pleasure in understanding but delights in airing his own opinions.”*** In adding; Proverbs 18:13 reminds one that ***“He who answers before listening—that is his folly and his shame.”***

The second includes; vertical as well as horizontal communication and listening. Jesus illustrates this principle as portrayed in John 5:30;

***I can of mine own self do nothing: as I hear, I judge: and my judgment is just; because I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father which hath sent me.***

***John 5:30***



Jesus in John 8:28 adds;

***Then said Jesus unto them, When ye have lifted up the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am he, and that I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things.***

***John 8:28***

Also;

***Then said Jesus unto them, When ye have lifted up the Son of man, then shall ye know that I am he, and that I do nothing of myself; but as my Father hath taught me, I speak these things.***

***John 12:49***

When it comes to communication, not only is it important to express one's thoughts; It is learning how to draw out the thoughts of others. Jesus applied this principle when He asked the disciple's "***who do people say is the Son of Man***" (Matthew 16:13) and in Matthew 15:15; "***But who do you say I Am***" Jesus upon the reply of Simon Peter said;

***And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.***

***Matthew 16:17***

From verse 17 is it clear that Simon Peter "heard" from God himself prior to replying; "***thou art the Christ, the Son of the Living God***" (v. 17). This affirms that God imparts words from above which Simon Peter heard and expressed horizontally with his **mouth**.

Prayer is another form of vertical communication in that prayer also, is dialogue, not monologue.

An example where Jesus received the word vertically and expressed it horizontally is found in the account where Lazarus was raised from the dead.

John 11:40-43 reads;

***Jesus saith unto her, Said I not unto thee, that, if thou wouldest believe, thou shouldest see the glory of God? Then they took away the stone from the place where the dead was laid. And Jesus lifted up his eyes, and said, Father, I thank thee that thou hast heard me. And I knew that thou hearest me always: but because of the people which stand by I said it, that they may believe that thou hast sent me. And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth.***

***John 11:40-43***

From the above one see that Jesus looked up towards the Father in heaven and in that moment enquired of Him in which Jesus heard the instruction from God when He said; ***“I Thank thee that Thou hast heard Me”*** (v. 41).

### **16.1.2 Receiving the Kingdom as a Little Child**

The objective in witnessing via communication is to understand one's child, not simply to have one's child understand his Father. Many folk never learn these skills. They never discover how to help their children articulate their thoughts and emotions.

When children are little, parents sometimes fail to engage them in significant meaningful grownup conversation. Jesus set the following example;

***And they brought young children to him, that he should touch them: and his disciples rebuked those that brought them. But when Jesus saw it, he was much displeased, and said un-to them, Suffer the little children to come unto me, and forbid them not: for of such is the kingdom of God. Verily I say unto you, Whosoever shall not receive the kingdom of God as a little child, he shall not enter therein.***

***Mark 10:13-15***

The innocence of a child lies in the fact that, not only did they believe the words of Jesus, they expected it to happen as well.

Jesus upon the man asking him what he must do to inherit eternal life, reported by saying; “***Thou knowest the commandments***” (v. 19). Jesus in telling this man what to do; *Why then does it seem foolish that this is exactly what Jesus communicated to the children.* Jesus in saying “***for as such belong the Kingdom***” implies two things. First; Jesus taught them the commandments in that love is the most important of all and second; that they believe every word for the faith of a child is headfast and unmoved.

For a Christian, correction is not declaring one's feelings, anger or hurt; rather, understanding the nature of the struggle within. What is critical is understanding the “why” of what has been “done” or “spoken” for it is out of the abundance of the heart that the **mouth** overflows.

The question is this; what is the specific content of the abundance of the heart in this circumstance? What was his temptation and how did he respond? What was the child trying to accomplish? If a father can perceive these things, he will be on his way to understand the “shy” of what has transpired. Work hard at peeling away the behaviour and discern the inner motivation of the child in this situation. No parent can ever comprehend the issues of a child's heart flawlessly.

For a father to be non-effective witness; the following should be noted:

1. The child behaviour is a reflection of the abundance of his heart.
2. Perilous times and difficult times and circumstances reveals the hope fears of the heart of a child.
3. The internal struggle of the heart of a child is of greater importance than the specifics of behaviour, since they drive behaviour.

## 17 THE CIRCUMCISION OF THE HEART TO RECEIVE THE FULLNESS OF TRUTH TO LOVE GOD (Deuteronomy 30)

The initial effect of God's Word circumcises the heart of those who choose to believe in Christ. Faith in God's Word, whether written or verbally communicated, serve as the catalyst for spiritual growth.

The believer's faith must be rooted on the **"Truth"** of God's Word. Chris Jami<sup>52</sup> is once quoted in saying: **"A man who teaches one truth and nothing else is more righteous than a man who teaches a million truths and one lie."**

Faith comes by hearing the Word, but the Word applied through confession, that is declaring the words of the Word with one's lips, is the source and power of God's light which shines in the hearts of men.

In summary;

- Scriptural or heartfelt faith is a condition of the person's heart (spirit man), not the mind.
- Scriptural faith is in the present, to be manifested in the future.
- Scriptural faith produces a positive change in a believer's behaviour and experience.
- Scriptural faith is founded on God's Word and accepts the testimony of the senses only when it agrees with the testimony of God's Word.
- Scriptural faith is expressed by confession with the mouthpiece.

## 18 CONCLUSION

Christian's have not, because they ask not; Faith alone in Jesus, our High-priest is not enough; for by our "words" we will receive, blessings or curses; sickness or health; joy or sadness; abundance or poverty.

---

<sup>52</sup> Good reads. (<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/preaching>).

As witnesses, let our faith manifest through our lips in sowing seeds of life, not of destruction.

The witness confession in every circumstance, in every trial or sickness should be; ***“Speak, LORD; for thy servant heareth”*** (1 Samuel 3:9).

Scripture reveal a reciprocal relationship between faith, hope as seen in Hebrews 6:9-20. Faith is looking back (past) at what Christ has done on the cross; hope looks forward and speaks of the return of Christ and love is the (present) for “if you love Me, keep My commandments” (John 14:15).

John Piper<sup>53</sup> was once quoted in saying; ***“Be earnest to maintain a strong faith, seek to realize the full assurance of hope. The strength to keep you going in obedience to do the will of God is faith, namely, the assurance of hope.”***

Prayer is not a dialogue with God to persuade Him to move things our way, but an exercise by which believers are enabled by His Spirit to move them including the lost His way. As witnesses to our children, apart from shepherding their hearts, the most important lesson a father can pass down to them in order for them to live victorious lives and become witnesses themselves is found in Revelation 12:11;

***And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death.***

***Revelation 12:11***

To be taken to heart and in the words of James Rooney; “The first century Jewish Christian would have understood Jesus’ words to have constituted ***‘a command rather than a suggestion;’*** we also are to bear witness to the truth of who Jesus is, what He has done, for He came in order for all to live and to have life in abundance.”<sup>54</sup>

---

<sup>53</sup> Faith, Hope, and Love Part II ([http://www.kenboa.org/text\\_resources/teaching\\_letters/lens/mens/fellowship/6968](http://www.kenboa.org/text_resources/teaching_letters/lens/mens/fellowship/6968)) p.2.

<sup>54</sup> The Essence of Christian Witness. ([http://www.st-benedict.org/Articles/Bearing\\_witness.htm](http://www.st-benedict.org/Articles/Bearing_witness.htm)).

Since we are sinners and we frequently fail in our faithfulness to Christ, our witness is often less than it should be. What is worse though, is that we call ourselves Christians, even to witness to that Christianity, and yet live in ways which are seldom different from the world. In so doing, believers bear false witness to Christ, in that we say by our inconsistency that He is not that important, that He can but not always, change lives, or that believing in Him really makes no relevant difference in anyone's life. Some may not believe that, but the way we think, speak and live may very well tell the world exactly that.

In order to change, we must be fully immersed in the Godhead, to discipline our tongues. We are not to engage in profanity, slander, gossip or argumentativeness or to lie, for liars are amongst these who won't inherit the Kingdom of God.

I John 1:6 states; ***"If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth:"***

A final word; your actions speaks words; being IMMERSED in Christ is putting on the mind of Christ, hence, think, speak and act accordingly so that the ***"sweet taste of evil in our mouths, hidden under our tongues"*** be exposed and rooted out (Job 20:12); for ***"your sin prompts your mouth; you adopt the tongue of the crafty"*** (Job 15:5) of which the ***"deceitful tongue crushes the spirit"*** (Proverbs 15:4).

James goes on to say, ***"With the tongue we praise our Lord and Father, and with it we curse men, who have been made in God's likeness? Out of the same mouth come praise and cursing. My brothers, this should not be"*** (James 3:9,10).

May our daily petition be as St. Ignatius of Antioch worded his desire best when he prayed; ***"that I may not only speak, but truly will; and that I may not merely be called a Christian, but really be found to be one."***<sup>55</sup>

---

<sup>55</sup> The Epistle of Ignatius to the Romans Shorter Version. (<http://www.earlychristianwritings.com/text/ignatius-romans-roberts.html>).

The Requirements for effective witnessing are:

- Receiving the Spirit as first of God's gifts – Man's spirit reborn.
- Baptism in the Godhead.
- Receiving the anointing of the Holy Spirit.
- Waling in the Spirit.
- A **mouth** consecrated and set apart for God to speak through.
- Being tapped into the Holy Spirit – "spiritual antenna."
- Obeying and taking immediate action as prompted by the Spirit.

Submitting your body as living, breathing, speaking sacrifice to God to proclaim the truth to all.

-----oOo-----







## *An Exegetical Overview of Sin, Bondage and Sexual Perversion in Relation to the Defilement and the Abuse of the Mouth, Being Used as a Sex Organ Rendering the Christen Ineffective to Preach the Word of God*

---

***...The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light. Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying. But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.***

***Romans 13:11-14***

### **1 INTRODUCTION**

Satan's end goal has ever been the same – to wipe out all “knowledge” and “**WORDS**” whether written or verbally communicated of Jesus Christ from the earth and thereby causing future generations to worship and pledge allegiance to Lucifer alone as God.

---

Satan controls man through fear. Some of the main areas for the enemy to gain access to oppression and alienation in a person live are rejection, unforgiveness, personal sin, and ancestral sin. The secret of sin explained; **“no one does anything in secret when he himself seeks to be known publically.”**<sup>1</sup>

Unforgiveness is referred to as “Hell’s best kept secret”<sup>2</sup> for if people don’t forgive those who sin against them, God will not forgive their sins. Satan gains control through lust, anger, hate, idolatry, and witchcraft.

The current world system is deemed the Resurrected Babylon a religious unification and a great world power, “humanistic pride, philosophies of man, worship of self, a one world monetary system and a time where sexual immorality is the order of the day.

The word Babylon means “confusion” concerning what is right or wrong. Sexual perverseness, homosexuality and bestiality are a by-product of confusion. Confusion in general has to do with mental illness and mind control.

Satan operates through many evil spirits to find an open door in the lives of Christians. One of them is Jezebel, a ruling spirit with roots stemming back to the ancient Babylonian system. This spirit specializes in bringing confusion in order to lead people astray in search of false doctrines.

***Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols.***

***Revelation 2:20***

---

<sup>1</sup> Brand Dr Connie (2007) Spiritual Warfare Two; The Kingdom Principles of the Bible as Root to Spiritual Warfare. Pretoria: Self-Published, p. 23.

<sup>2</sup> Liebenberg Prof Wimpie A (2005) Seminar - “God’s Plan for the Ages.” Pretoria.

The world of Entertainment; where Jezebel has a throne, pushes sexual sins, seduction, violence, occult practices and rebellion as well as promoting “Loshon Hora” (evil speak) and Satan music.

Covertly Satan uses the subversive Jezebel spirit to deceive the world by using control as a weapon seeing that she is a mastermind of sexual immorality and outright idolatry. The question arises; Is Jezebel bending you to its will? Satan’s hidden agenda is much deeper than bending the will of man; rather, he wants to ensnare believers in sin; hence, in bondage.

The problem is, as believers, who can accurately and honestly claim that they have not already being baited by this spirit of seduction? Satan wants to “**prostitute**” **all of mankind**, not only **by deed** but **by every word spoken**. This thesis will also proof that Satan targets the mouth piece – “**a well of poison**” (Ephesians 4:29) and the tongue – “**a world of iniquity**” (Proverbs 15:4) to accomplish his perverse agenda.

The Psalmist writes;

***Set a watch, O LORD, before my mouth; keep the door of my lips.***

***Psalm 141:3***

How can a Christian praise and worship God with his “mouth” when sexual perverseness drips from his lips? The Bible attest to what is impossible with man, is possible with God.

Every Christian caught up in a lifestyle of sexual immorality, all those who are sexually enslaved, know this; as seen on the next page, today God is saying;

***I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live:***

***Deuteronomy 30:19***

The Apostle Paul adds by saying;

***Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.***

***Philippians 2:12***

A Christian's true character is revealed when he is alone, when no one is close. The old man did not die off when the spirit was re-born for the "flesh lust against the spirit and the spirit against the flesh" (Galatians 5:17). The war between the Kingdom of Light and of Darkness is a reality (Genesis 3:15-18). The way to victory starts by declaring it and by speaking life and victory into any area of one's life where Satan has control.

Anything is possible with God; freedom from sexual captivity starts with making a choice and crying out to Christ. Realize this today; **your deliverance is in your mouth!** James 4:2 states;

***...you have not, because you ask not.***

***James 4:2***

This thesis deems to proof the following:

- Satan by means of evil spirits tempts and lures mankind into sinning sexually in order to defile the whole body and especially the mouth of a person.

- That by sexually defiling the mouth result in a curse coming upon the person prevents him from being able to witness for Christ.
- That Satan seeks control of a person's mouth to use it as a weapon for destruction and death.

## **2 AN OVERVIEW OF THE HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE: PERTAINING TO ENLIGHTENMENT AND REJECTION OF CHRISTIANITY**

Mankind are experiencing a worldwide plague of forbidden sexual practices, even within the Church. According to the Old Testament, homosexuality<sup>3</sup> and incest<sup>4</sup> has been around from the beginning. The New Testament confirms this. This problem will persist until the return of Christ.

According to Dr Ed Murphy<sup>5</sup> and from a human-historical perspective, this is the predictable results of the Enlightenment of the eighteenth century. Murphy Explains as follows: "The Enlightenment rejected God and all Biblically sound ethics based on divine revelation. Individualism, human progress based on reason and not revelation, and total commitment to naturalistic science undermined religious and, particularly, Christian faith. All objective foundation for morality was removed. Whatever mankind enjoyed and found meaningful to their life was seen as the acceptable norm if it did not directly hurt other people.

The Enlightenment, in turn, gave birth to the triplets of naturalism, humanism, and materialism. These world views reject the objective reality of the supernatural or at least any direct involvement of whatever supernaturalism may exist in human life. They affirm man's capacity for self-realization through reason (rationalism) and the empiricism of the scientific method (scientism).

---

<sup>3</sup> Homosexuality: See Terms and Definitions.

<sup>4</sup> Incest: See Terms and Definitions

<sup>5</sup> Murphy, Dr Ed (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare Revised and Updated. Tennessee, Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 128.

All that exists is the natural world (naturalism). Man is thus alone in his universe (atheism).

As a result of naturalism, humanism, and materialism, come nihilism; the view that all restrictive traditional values and beliefs are unfounded since there is no supposed objective ground for truth, especially moral truth. Nihilism leads inevitably to the conclusion, consciously or unconsciously, that human existence has no objective meaning. As the only reality, we can live for personal satisfaction. Nihilism's motto is, "If it feels good, do it."

Either blatantly, especially through many of today's educational institutions, or covertly, especially through the media, the resent adult generation and the emerging generation of young people are desensitized to believe the only restraints on sexuality are either consent of the people involved and precautions against disease and unwanted pregnancy."

Pertaining to the Church as a place of refuge leading the unsaved to God; the biggest problem the world faces today can be summarized as follows;

**"The sexual behaviour of Christians has reached the point of being indistinguishable from that of non-Christians... In our sexual behaviour we, as a Christian community, are both in the world, and of it."**<sup>6</sup>

Many including the late Dr A.W Tozer referred to this current period as one which may well go down in history as the Erotic Age; sexual love has been elevated into a cult and Eros (the god of love) has more worshipers today than any other god.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> Randy C. Alcorn (1985) Christians in the Wake of the Sexual Revolution. Portland, Ore: Multnomah, p23.

<sup>7</sup> Murphy, Dr Ed (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare Revised and Updated. Tennessee, Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 129.

The problem is that sexual sin negatively impacts the spirit, soul and body of a person. Given that this is indeed the case Tozer's words makes sense when he referred to the erotic has displace the spiritual. In this sense, Christian history is seen as one of **"the divorce of sexuality from spirituality."**<sup>8</sup> As a result, people and Christians alike are confused as to where the world ends and the Church begins.

The question is asked; what is the problem from the beginning? What is the single biggest cause of mankind plummeting into sexual perversion in the day and age.

### 3 THE SIN WAR

Ever since the "fall", mankind is involved in what Brand refer to as a SIN WAR<sup>9</sup>. The problem is that outside of Biblical restraints, sex becomes a sin with deadly consequences.<sup>10</sup> Dr Anke Brand<sup>11</sup> holds that sex became an idol, and object of worship which is bound to disappoint.

***Therefore to him that knoweth to do good and doeth it not, to him it is sin.***

***James 4:17***

Human history as recorded in the Bible along with man's conscience bear testimony to both, the reality of sin and sexual perversion. In strengthening the theme of this thesis, a more specific exposition of sin is needed with special emphasis on sexual perversion.

---

<sup>8</sup> Foster Richard (1985) Money, Sex and Power. USA: Harper and Row, p. 91.

<sup>9</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, Preface.

<sup>10</sup> Malan Dr Christina EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God's Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. SA: Self-published, p. 68.

<sup>11</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published, p. 109.

### 3.1 What is Sin?

The International Bible Society defines sins as **“perversion of God’s good creation, breaking God’s law. Sin causes a broken relationship with God. Sin is nor a part of our original human nature. God created the first people with the ability to choose whether or not to trust and obey God.”**<sup>12</sup>

Dr Connie M.J. Brand also defined sin as **“missing the mark, badness, rebellion, iniquity, going astray, wickedness, wandering, ungodliness, crime, lawlessness, transgression, ignorance and falling away.”**<sup>13</sup>

Dr Willem Harding<sup>14</sup> pertaining to the definition of sin states as follows;

**“Sin is the deliberate transgression of a known law”**

In the New Testament the Greek word “hamartia” is usually translated as sin. However, in Classical Greek, it means *“to miss the mark”* or *“to miss the target”*<sup>15</sup>.

Pertaining to the “mouth” sin also refer to what is spoken and not only to what is thought about, imagined or physically done.

***Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God.***

***Romans 6:13***

Paul here refers to our members which most assuredly includes the “mouth”.

---

<sup>12</sup> Bible Concordance / Dictionary.

<sup>13</sup> Brand Dr Connie MJ (2007) Spiritual Warfare Three: The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p 205.

<sup>14</sup> Definition defined by Dr Willem Harding, verbatim, University of Pretoria South Africa.

<sup>15</sup> Liddell and Scott: Greek-English Lexicon 9<sup>th</sup> ed. Oxford: Clarendon Press.



In order to attain a right view about Biblical holiness, one must begin by examining the vast and solemn subject of sin.

JC Ryle<sup>16</sup> comments as follows; “**Sin** speaking generally is, the fault and corruption of the nature of every man that is naturally engendered of the offspring of Adam; whereby man is very far gone (*quam logissime*<sup>17</sup>), from original righteousness and is of his own nature inclined to evil, so that the flesh lusteth always against the spirit; and therefore...in every person born into the world, it deserveth God’s wrath and damnation.”

William Gurnall adds; “spiritual darkness causes **sin**. The external cause of **sin** is Satan, who is it’s great promoter; the internal cause is the natural darkness of man’s soul as a result of of Adam’s fall. When the soul is illumined by the Holy Spirit, the deadly nature of **sin** is exposed and men flee to God. However, when the soul is kept in darkness or hides from the truth, **sin** goes in disguise and so is welcome.”<sup>18</sup>

This thesis is in agreement with this statement for scripture itself testifies to sin being identified with darkness.

On the other hand; Scripture reveals that God shines into the hearts of men by the work of the Holy Ghost, and then spiritual life begins.

***For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.***

***II Corinthians 4:6***

---

<sup>16</sup> Ryle J.C., forward by Lloyd-Jones, Martyn D (1952) Holiness, Its Nature, Hindrances, Difficulties, and Roots. Great Britain: Burleigh Press, pp. 1-2.

<sup>17</sup> Latin *quam longissime*. Lost.

<sup>18</sup> Gurnall, William (2002) The Christian in complete armour, Vol 1. Finland: The Banner of Truth Trust, p. 166.

Sin is not deemed sin until man discern it and are conscious of it; hence, the purpose of God's Law, is to reveal sin.

***Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God. Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.***

***Romans 3:19:20***

The New World Order and New Age Religions are incapable of discerning **sin**; sealed up in ignorance and blindness towards the Holy Spirit these claim to be 'ENLIGHTENED'<sup>19</sup>.

As Ryle<sup>20</sup> justly stated, "I would like to remind my readers that a man may commit **sin** and yet be ignorant of it, and fancy himself innocent when he is guilty."

The problem of sin cannot be understood as long as the carnal mind is enmity against God (Romans 8:7).

Ephesians 2:3 reads; ***"Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others."***

Mark 7:21 adds; ***"For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders,..."***

---

<sup>19</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. 37.

<sup>20</sup> Ryle JC, forward by Lloyd-Jones, Martyn D (1952) Holiness, Its Nature, Hindrances, Difficulties, and Roots. Great Britain: Burleigh Press, p. 2.

Sin, therefor in a nutshell, is the vast moral disease which affects the whole human race, of every rank, and class and name and nation and people and tongue; a disease from which there never was but one born of woman that was free; Jesus Christ (Psalm 92:15; II Corinthians 5:21).

The basic of all human need and suffering lies in one condition common to all members of the human race: sin. No satisfactory remedy for human needs can be offered until this condition has been diagnosed.<sup>21</sup>

### 3.1.1 Sin – The Medium of Destruction – At War With Righteousness

Christians in order to be free from sin has no choice but to declare a state of war against this medium of destruction.

Hebrews 12:4 implies;

***You have not yet resisted to the point of shedding blood in your striving against sin.***

***Hebrews 12:4***

Brand adds as follows; **“Sin – moral evil, in contrast to natural evil – is not a passive something that appears where righteousness is absent.”**<sup>22</sup>

Brand not only implies that **Sin** weighs us down, but that it entangles itself around us as well (Hebrews 12:1). To avoid entrapment by *sin*, one must learn to lay *sin* aside, to refuse to allow it to entangle us, in other words, to flatly rebuke sin. Christians have no choice but to learn to war against sin for it is sin that renders a person vulnerable to demonic activity.

---

<sup>21</sup> Prince Derek (1993) Foundations for Righteous Living. India: Derek Prince Ministries, p. 169.

<sup>22</sup> Brand Connie MJ (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. 56.

The message of Hebrews 12:4 is that of warfare – to resist, strive, shed your blood, rather than being defeated by sin. The question arises; how does a Christian war against sin?

By making a conscious decision to hate sin with a passion and by fixing your eyes on Jesus.

Emmer Towns<sup>23</sup> adds; “If we do allow God to work in our lives to combat sin, we can – by the Holy Spirit’s indwelling power – begin to combat its influence on us.”

***Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.***

***Hebrews 12:2***

Unfortunately there is more to this war, reason being; “it is a multidimensional sin war. Sin affects a person on three levels: the personal level, the social level and the supernatural level”<sup>24</sup>.

### **3.1.2 Sin a Multidimensional War**

Paul in his epistle to the Romans wrote;

***For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death.***

***Romans 7:5***

---

<sup>23</sup> Towns Elmer L (2006) Concise Bible Doctrines. USA: AMG publishers, p. 247.

<sup>24</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. 58.

### 3.1.2.1 Sin is Personal

The problem is the flesh in that it works in the members of the body.<sup>25</sup> In the words of Rick Godwin<sup>26</sup>; “All people gravitate toward three basic motives that foster fleshly rather than Spirit-led responses: The lust of the flesh craves pleasure. The lust of the eyes desires possession. The pride of life hungers for position.”

Continual subjection to sexually immoral thoughts will render the mind a poisoned oasis. According to Erwin Lutzer<sup>27</sup>; the mind set of men who engage into illicit sexual affairs is one of adultery; Lutzer writes; “***You’ll never know the exhilaration of being with someone whom you actually love and can’t be without.***”

It must be stressed that justification of this kind of love is founded on lust. True love is founded on adoration, intimacy and loyalty.

A Christian must always see sin as his enemy, never as his friend. When faced with a moral or spiritual choice, believers often think they can sin without serious consequences. A believer must remember that when he lust after the flesh, he tolerates sin; he then also tolerates evil. The question is asked; is seeking pleasure the problem?

Lutzer<sup>28</sup> response is the following; “Addicts are created because of the natural human desire to seek gratification and avoid pain; yet, they cannot escape the fact that all of mankind by nature seek pleasure, hoping to maximize happiness and minimize sadness.”

---

<sup>25</sup> Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Vol 1 PTA: Self-published, p 1 - 100.

<sup>26</sup> Flesh: - Godwin, Rick (1999) Flying Higher. USA: Creation House, pp. 46-47.

<sup>27</sup> Lutzer, Erwin W (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy. Cape Town S.A.: Christian Art, p 92.

<sup>28</sup> Lutzer, Erwin W (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy. Cape Town S.A.: Christian Art, p. 111.

Seeking pleasure is normal, the problem arises when it is sought after outside the boundaries of God's will in that it is sought after in the wrong way and at the wrong place. (See chapter one: The Biblical view of Moral sex)

In essence a sex addict<sup>29</sup> cannot be blamed for seeking to fill his emptiness, but his deception is that he seeks fulfillment in sex. The problem with adultery is that it gives the illusion of fulfillment, but in the end it brings bitterness, emptiness, and regret. God warns believers not to “**set up idols in their hearts**” (Ezekiel 14:3). Immoral sex and all sexually related sins revolve around the god of self; self-gratification through sex. Crowning the flesh, paves the way for becoming sexually enslaved and for all kinds of sexual perverseness. The way to freedom starts by denying the flesh. Jesus taught this principle when He said:

***Then said Jesus unto his disciples, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me.***

***Matthew 16:24***

Christian men also fall prey through “*the lust of the eyes*”;

***For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world.***

***1 John 2:16***

The apostle John described the world as “***the lust of the eyes***”; was he referring to sensual temptation or the sin of covetousness? The question is asked; when is enough, enough or rather; when is one wife enough? If there is a relation between humanity and consumerism it is this; the problem is not that they consume in order to live, but that too often they live in order to consume.

---

<sup>29</sup> Addict: See Terms and Definitions.

Lutzer<sup>30</sup> pertaining to 'Consumerism' refers to Rodney Clapp in saying; **“consumerism is an ethos, a character-cultivating way of life that seduces and insinuates and acclimates. This, too often, is consumption that militates against the Christian virtues of patience, contentedness, self-denial and generosity – almost always with a velvet glove rather than an iron fist. It speaks in sweet and sexy rather than dictatorial tones, and it conquers by promises rather than by threats.”**

A Christian should always question his motives. Godwin<sup>31</sup> explains; “because both fleshly and Spirit-led responses begin as motives, well-meaning Christians can easily confuse the flesh for the Spirit when applying the principle of inner conviction.”

### 3.1.2.2 Sin is Social: It Comes from Without

The classic description of the world as the enemy of God and believers alike is found on the next page in I John 2:15-17 which portrays as follows;

***Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him. all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.***

***I John 2:15-17***

When one reads the list of horrible sins recorded in Scripture such as Romans 1:21-32 and Mark 7:20-21 in the light of the news of today, there is abundant evidence of sin's expression in human experience.<sup>32</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup> Lutzer, Erwin W (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy. Cape Town S.A.: Christian Art, p 118.

<sup>31</sup> Goldwin Rick (1999) pp. 46-47.

<sup>32</sup> Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Vol 1 PTA: Self-published, p 1 - 100.

Immorality, crime, violence, perversion and all forms of lawlessness abound. The medium of destruction (sin) desires to express itself and the corruption of society in modern civilization is evidence of the fact of sin.

### 3.1.2.3 Sin is Supernatural, It Comes from Above

In the words of Brand; “This is the most difficult dimension of our multidimensional sin problem to understand and learn to deal with for it includes evil supernaturalism, Satan, his Kingdom of Demons, Principalities and Powers, Nephillim/Giants, Hybrids and the Alien Agenda.”<sup>33</sup>

On this level; **“the weapons of our warfare aren’t carnal but mighty in God”** (II Corinthians 10:4-5). This leads to the third and final description of the war; it is a spiritual warfare, sin war. Behind the wickedness of flesh and the corruption of the world is the one original source of all sin, Satan.

The apostle Paul testified of this;

***And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.***

***Ephesians 2:1-3***

To be Biblically understood, however, the sin war in which man are engaged must be viewed in its, multidimensional nature. The flesh and the world are the channels through which evil supernaturalism oppresses and seeks to destroy mankind.

---

<sup>33</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. 61.



Unbelief in Christ equals sin. Unbelief is of the essence of sin.<sup>34</sup> When Jesus return, He will judge the world of their sin and their unbelief. “... **of sin, because they believe not on Me**” (John 16:9). Unless people come to faith in Christ they will perish (John 3:16) and God will pour out His wrath on them (John 3:36).

## 3.2 The Doctrine of Sin

Any explanation of Christian doctrine would be incomplete if the Biblical statement concerning sin were omitted.<sup>35</sup>

The Doctrine of Sin is called Hamartiology, which derives from two Greek words, a[martia (Haramrtia) meaning sin and lo,goj (Logos) meaning word or discourse. Harmartiology is the Biblical statement concerning sin, its origin, definition, expression and final end. Sin is not a myth nor a figment of the mind; sin is a fact.

### 3.2.1 The Fact of Sin

If sin does not exist, and it does; Satan’s cleverest wile would be convincing the world that he does not exist.<sup>36</sup>

Lehman Straus<sup>37</sup> in his article on the “Doctrine of Sin” refers to Dr Charles Ryrie listing eight Hebrew and twelve Greek words in both the Old- and New Testament describing sin.

---

<sup>34</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. 93.

<sup>35</sup> The Doctrine of Sin. (<http://bible-org/article/doctrine-sin>).

<sup>36</sup> Philpott, Kent (1999) Amanual of Demonology and the Occult. USA: Zondervan Publishing House, p. 131.

<sup>37</sup> The Doctrine of Sin. (<http://bible-org/article/doctrine-sin>).

### 3.2.1.1 Sin in the Old Testament

In the Hebrew there are eight basic words describing sin:<sup>38</sup>

Ra → bad (Genesis 38:7)	Avon → iniquity (I Samuel 3:13)
Rasha → wickedness (Exodus 2:13)	Shagag → err (Isaiah 28:7)
Asham → guilt (Hosea 4:15)	Taah → wander away (Ezekiel 48:11)
Chata → sin (Exodus 20:20)	Paha → rebel (I Kings 8:50)

**Table 5:** Hebrew words describing sin

From “**sin**” in the Hebrew the following can be drawn:

Sin was conceived of as being fundamentally disobedience to Yahweh.

While disobedience involved both positive and negative indications, the emphasis was definitely on the positive commission of wrong (disobedience) and not the negative omission of good (obedience). In this context, sin was not simply missing the right mark, but hitting the wrong mark.

In essence; “**sin can and do take many forms.**”

### 3.2.1.2 Sin in the New Testament

In the Greek there are twelve basic words describing sin:<sup>39</sup>

---

<sup>38</sup> The Doctrine of Sin. (<http://bible-org/article/doctrine-sin>), p. 1.

<sup>39</sup> Ibid, p. 1.

Kakos → bad (Romans 13:3)	Anomos → lawlessness (I Timothy 1:9)
Poneros → evil (Matthew 5:45)	Parabates → transgression (Romans 5:14)
Asesbes → godless (Romans 1:18)	Agnoein → to be ignorant (Romans 1:13)
Enochos → guilt (Matthew 5:21)	Planan → to go astray (I Corinthians 6:9)
Hamartia → sin (I Corinthians 6:18)	Paraptomai → to fall away (Galatians 6:1)
Adikia → unrighteousness (I Cor 6:9)	Hupocrites → hypocrite (I Timothy 4:2)

**Table 6:** Greek words describing sin.

From “**sin**” in the Greek the following conclusions can be drawn. There is, at all times a motive and a clear standard against which sin is committed. In the end all sin is a positive rebellion against God and a transgression of God’s law. Evil can take on a variety of forms. Mankind’s responsibility is definite and clearly stipulated.

In essence to “**miss the mark**” (hamartia) is the most comprehensive term for explaining sin.

***For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;***

***Romans 3:23***

This statement of the Almighty is that all of humanity have fallen short of God’s required standard. History reveals; it is the popular and common practice of men to create their own standards.

The source of all chaos, dis harmony and strife in the history of mankind, can be traced back to the existence of sin.<sup>40</sup>

---

<sup>40</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. 192.

God through His Son ***“the living Word”*** (John 1:1) established His standard of perfection for entry into Heaven, ***“I am the way, the truth and the life”*** (John 14:6), and all men have “missed the mark” as an archer’s arrow would fall to the ground because it fell short of its target. Man does wrong simply because he is wrong.<sup>41</sup>

Most men measure themselves on the basis of knowledge and human intelligence, others by educational attainment, some by financial success, some by cultural environment, and others by religious performance. God however refuses to accept man on any of these grounds in that He established His perfect standard, and by that standard God measures every man. The Divine verdict in every instance in every work has been the same, “You have come short, you have missed the mark.”<sup>42</sup> Paul writes as follows; ***“We have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin”*** (Romans 3:9): The Bible testifies; both Jew and Gentile have missed the mark!

Despite of Satan’s attempt to deceive the world of his existence and his aim to “dam” each and every soul; this thesis deems that throughout history, there was always men who would serve God in righteousness. The account of Judges contains the record of 700 men in the Tribe of Benjamin, all left handed, and “each man could sling stones at an hair breadth, and not miss” (Judges 20:16). The word translated “miss” is *chata*, meaning “sin” in Exodus 20:20. This group of men were known as men of the sling, with a deadly accuracy which never missed the bull’s eye. The Bible contains no record of a man except Christ Himself who never missed the mark!

### 3.3 Scripture and the Universality of Sin

Undoubtedly, the highest court of appeal is the Word of God.

---

<sup>41</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) *Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War*. SA: Self-published, p. 193.

<sup>42</sup> The Doctrine of Sin. (<http://bible-org/article/doctrine-sin>).

The Bible attests to the universality of sin, that all men are sinners in God's sight and in need of salvation (Psalm 14:1-3; 53:1-3; Romans 5:12).

***All have sinned and come short of the glory of God***

***Romans 3:23***

The Bible testifies to two major mysteries at work in the universe and that all other mysteries referred to in the Word of God find their place under these two. The first of which is **The Mystery of Godliness** and the second **The Mystery of Iniquity** (I Timothy 3:16; II Thessalonians 2:7).

The forces of Good and evil, light and darkness, life and death, godliness and iniquity are at work in the universe; creation declares it along with human history, human logic, human conscience (Romans 2:14-15) and human experience (Mark 7:20-21). Considering the theme of this thesis and sexual perversion the question is asked; what part of sin is inherited?

### **3.4 Mankind's Inheritance of Sin**

Brand<sup>43</sup> by definition states;

**“Inherited sin is that sinful state into which all people are born.”**

Strictly speaking by nature we are children of wrath; hence, objects of wrath as described in the verse on the next page:

---

<sup>43</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. 234.

***“Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.”***

***Ephesians 2:3***

Man's **actions** as is man's "**words**" are also **objects of God's wrath**, but this verse refers to something inborn. Psalm 51:5 reads; "***Behold, I was shapen in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me.***" Which indicates that this is something we have from conception, not something acquired by actions during our lifetimes or shaping influences. In general every facet of mankind's being is affected by this sin nature:

- Man's intellect is blinded (II Corinthians 4:4)
- Man's mind is reprobate or disapproved (Romans 1:28)
- Man's understanding is darkened, separated from the title of God (Ephesians 4:18)
- Man's emotions are degraded and defiled (Romans 1:21, 24, 26; Titus 1:15)
- Man's will is enslaved to sin and therefore stands in position to God (Romans 6:20; 7:20).

Many theologians prefer the term "**original sin**" because Adam's original sin produced that moral corruption of nature that was transmitted by inheritance to each succeeding generation.

The concept of *original sin* was first introduced to in the 2nd century by Irenaeus; its scriptural foundation is based on the New Testament schooling of Paul the Apostle (Romans 5:12–21 and 1 Corinthians 15:22), and Psalm 51:5. Tertullian and others deliberated that humanity shares in Adam's sin, transmitted by human generation; Augustine's formulation of original *sin* was prevalent among Protestant reformers, such as Martin Luther and John Calvin, who associated *original sin* with concupiscence, affirming that it continued even after baptism.<sup>44</sup>

---

<sup>44</sup> Original sin. ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Original\\_sin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Original_sin)).

Adam and Eve both had part in mankind's fall. Satan worked through Eve, the mother of all living (Genesis 3:20) and used her **"mouth as an instrument to tempt"** Adam in partaking of the fruit.

This thesis is in agreement with Malan and Brand that; **the penalty that is particularly related to inherited sin is spiritual death.**

Death in all its forms whether spiritual or physical always indicates a separation of some kind. Pertaining to spiritual death, it literally means a separation from God in this current life (Ephesians 2:1-3).

### 3.5 The Origin of Sin

As previously mentioned, sin is the medium of destruction. The question is where did sin originate? Did God create sin or did man invent it?

Seeing that sin is directly related with temptation, the real question is who is the tempter? James 1:13 states;

***Let no man say when he is tempted, I am tempted of god, of God cannot be tempted with evil, neither tempted He any man.***

***James 1:13***

For God to tempt man or the angels to sin would violate His moral attributes contained in the Bible. God did not create or decree sin for all that God created was good. The purpose of God' Law is to reveal sin; how then can He approve it or incite his creatures to sin?

Scripture clearly show that the first moral beings created were the angelic hosts and that Lucifer were the first to sin the day he attempted to exalt himself above Creator (Isaiah 14:13-14). Satan then corrupted ⅓ of the angelic begins through his merchandise and deceit (Ezekiel 28:16).

As Brand<sup>45</sup> so rightly states; “sin therefore began in heaven among the angelic order. It then came to earth in the being of the tempter, Satan upon being cast out of heaven (Revelation 12:9).”

### 3.6 Sin and the Occult Word

As mentioned before, Satan operates through beguiling, seducing, controlling and manipulating spirits to lure mankind into sin.

Nathan Uzorma<sup>46</sup>, an ex-Occult Grandmaster now in Christ, describes the word manipulation as **“a process of using witchcrafts, occultic, physical, or esoteric power to influence, dominate, manage, or control the life of another person for a detriment purpose, whether directly or indirectly.”** He adds by saying; “direct and indirect manipulations of demonic powers produce the same result of bondage in the final analysis.

Brand<sup>47</sup> with regards to bondage holds that; “Everyone who lives in the practice of sin is in **bondage** – she or he is a slave of sin John 8:34.

***Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin.***

***John 8:34***

---

<sup>45</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. 243.

<sup>46</sup> Uzorma lyke Nathan (2005) Occult Grandmaster now in Christ. Volume One. Nigeria: Glorious People Nig. Ltd., p. 13.

<sup>47</sup> Brand Connie M.J. (2000) Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War. SA: Self-published, p. ?.



Consequently, direct manipulation is a “psychic attack” projected against an individual or individuals with a specific evil plan in mind, whilst indirect manipulation is like a deadly trap set against individuals with no particular one in mind.

In the words of Uzorma<sup>48</sup>; this operates through the occult law of “*metaphysical homogeneity*”, referring to a person **under the power of a sinful life** can fall into the trap and become a victim. Through manipulation of demons because of a sinful life, the victim enters into a state called “zero point” or illusion,” also called “maya” in Sanskrit.

Zero point is a state where a person has no resistance against sin. It is a state in which the life of the victim is subjected to the lowest degree of the spiritual scale of being. In this repugnant state a person can be controlled, managed, dominated, or manipulated by demons even beyond his conscious awareness. Bing spiritually blinded.<sup>49</sup>

This point of illusion is entered through any of the five perversions or propensities of the mind.<sup>50</sup> These propensities include:

- Attachment to mundane things – 10 %
- Vanity – 10 %
- Anger – 20 %
- Greed – 10 %
- Lust of the flesh/of the eyes – 50 %

Once in zero point the victim becomes a slave of the forces of evil. This includes all the thoughts, **words spoken** and deeds proclaimed to be sin, directly or indirectly stem from these five perversions of the mind.

---

<sup>48</sup> Uzorma lyke Nathan (2005) Occult Grandmaster now in Christ. Volume One. Nigeria: Glorious People Nig. Ltd., p. 110.

<sup>49</sup> II Corinthians 3:14a; 4:4.

<sup>50</sup> Malan Christina EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God’s Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. SA: Self-published, p. 72.

In essence; sin is the major stumbling block of the enemy in the life of man dating back to the fall and most defiantly includes Christians.

Sin is the highest power that subjects both, the saved and the unsaved under the authority of Satan who **“comes only to steal and kill and destroy”** (John 10:10).

Given that this is a spiritual sin war, only true believers that have the authority in Christ can overcome the forces of evil.

Romans 8:1-2 reads;

***There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.***

***Romans 8:1-2***

Uzorma,<sup>51</sup> in adding states that “there are four major mundane propensities used by the powers of darkness to daily manipulate the so-called development or advancement of mankind towards the animal system in every stage and degree of society. These are referred to as “animal propensities” which includes sex, sleep, fight and food.”

Sexual force is the highest secret power used in all ramifications of occult and psychic manipulations to dominate and control the thoughts, words and deeds of humanity. In progressive demonic operations, a sexual act is like fuel, while lust is likened to fire. Therefore, as constant supply of fuel can never extinguish fire, so no amount of sexual activity can extinguish lust which pave the way for the victim to become enslaved to all kinds of sexual perversions.

---

<sup>51</sup> Uzorma Iyke Nathan (2005) Occult Grandmaster now in Christ. Volume One. Nigeria: Glorious People Nig. Ltd., p. 23.

Counsellours such as Brand and Malan agree on this point; lust is insatiable and it is a downward spiral of more sex and more perverted sex. It is addictive. The end is often bestiality and then sex with demons if the person does not become aware of his problem in time and reach out for help.

The question is; what is the relation between sin, the heart of man and the Word of God?

### 3.7 The Word of God, Sin and the Heart of Man

In this section we will address the relationship between sin, the heart of man and the Word of God.

In the account of Judges 20:5 we read about the war between Israel and the Benjamites as men from the city of Gibeah rose and **“ravished”** the wife of the Levite from Israel.

From the Wycliffe Bible we read;

***“And lo! [the] men of that city compassed in the night the house, in which I dwelled (And lo! the men of that city surrounded the house where I stayed that night), and they would slay me, and they travailed my (secondary) wife with unbelievful madness of lechery; and at the last she was dead.”***

***Judges 20:5***

The King James version refer to the word **“forced”** (H6031) in place of **“Lechery”** above which according to Strong’s Hebrew Dictionary refers **“to deal hardly with”** to **“exercise force”, “to defile”**<sup>52</sup>

Lechery<sup>53</sup> by definition refers to and includes **“a person's feelings that are lustful or sexual in an extreme or unnatural way. A person's lechery may lead to wrong and unlawful physical acts or attacks on others.”**

---

<sup>52</sup> Strong James. (2004) Strong's complete Word study concordance. Canada: AMG Publishers', p. 1938.

Because of this great sin, God gave the Benjamites over in the hands of the tribes of Israel as God proclaimed by **“mouth”** and said; **“Go up; for tomorrow I will deliver them into thine hand”** (Judges 20:28).

In order to bring things in perspective; we need to peruse the account of 1 Samuel 17:31-50 which portrays as follows:

***“What David said was overheard and reported to Saul, and Saul sent for him (v.31) David said to Saul, “Let no one lose heart on account of this Philistine; your servant will go and fight him (v 32) ...Then Saul dressed David in his own tunic. He put a coat of armour on him and a bronze helmet on his head. (v. 39) David fastened on his sword over the tunic and tried walking around, because he was not used to them. “I cannot go in these,” he said to Saul, “because I am not used to them.” So he took them off. (v .40).***

***Then he ..., chose five smooth stones from the stream, put them in the pouch of his shepherd’s bag and, with his sling in his hand, approached the Philistine He looked David over and saw that he was little more than a boy, glowing with health and handsome, and he despised him. 43 And the Philistine cursed David by his gods. (v .44) “Come here,” he said, “and I’ll give your flesh to the birds and the wild animals!”(v. 45)***

***David said to the Philistine, “...I come against you in the name of the Lord Almighty, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied. (v .46) This day the Lord will deliver you into my hands, and I’ll strike you down and cut off your head. (v. 50) So David triumphed over the Philistine with a sling and a stone; without a sword in his hand he struck down the Philistine and killed him.”***

The question is asked; what did David mean with the phrase; **“Let no one lose heart on account of this Philistine”**? God testified off David being a man after His own heart (Acts 13:22). In the Book of Deuteronomy chapter 30:14 we read that **“the word is very nigh unto thee, in thy mouth, and in thy heart, that thou mayest do it.”** The Word of God was in David’s heart; hence, his words; **“let’s not loose heart”**.

---

<sup>53</sup> Lechery is a noun applied to a person's feelings that are lustful or sexual in an extreme or unnatural way. A person's lechery may lead to wrong and unlawful physical acts or attacks on others, or to the making and viewing of inappropriate pictures and movies.

Later we read that David said to Goliath; “***I come against you in the name of the Lord Almighty ....This day the Lord will deliver you into my hands***). The crux of the matter is that as soon as David uttered these words with his “**mouth**”; in the spiritual real, Goliath was already slain. His death by the stone was only the manifestation in the physical of what already happened in the spiritual. In this we see the power that went from his “**mouth**” as he spoke the Word of God that was in his “**heart**” and on his “**lips**”.

David faced a “***Euroclydon***”<sup>54</sup> in Goliath, one who no one else wanted to take on. However, David had another spirit, one in line with the Word of God, he knew the Word, he spoke the Word and he lived doing the Word of God.

The question is asked; what is the relationship between sex, sin and the Word of God in your heart?

In Judges 20:16 we read about men off the sling who never missed the target as did David on the day he faced the philistine. This thesis believes that David not “miss his target” (the fore head of Goliath) because the Word of God was in his heart which is close to his arm as the heart is positioned in the chest.

Pertaining to sin, the relation is this; “***to sin is to miss the mark***”. One who engages in sexual sin is missing the mark, and the fact that he “***errs***” is a sign off the Word of God not being in his heart. David was “***glowing with health***” not due to his youth but because of the Word of God in his heart. Age is irrelevant for the Word of God will rejuvenate a person in soul, spirit and body. In this we see the importance of having the Word of God in your heart, on your lips and to physically do it in order not to sin<sup>55</sup>.

---

<sup>54</sup> Euroclydon: A cyclonic tempestuous northeast wind which blows in the Mediterranean. It is the modern Gregalia (Gegale) or Levanter. —Notable references— It may specifically refer to the name of the Gregale wind from the Adriatic Gulf, which wrecked the apostle Paul’s ship on the coast of Malta as portrayed in Acts 27:1-28:16. (<http://www.encyclo.co.uk/define/Euroclydon>).

<sup>55</sup> See Also Chapter Four on Deliverance.

## 4 SEXUAL SIN AND THE OUTFLOW THEREOF

In this section we will deal with the consequences and culminating effect of sexual sin as well as specific curses related to the mouth when used as a sex organ. The question is asked; what should the relationship between the ear, the mind, the “**mouth**” and the actions of a believer portray when it comes to sex? Sex is such a sacred part of mankind that in order for a believer not sin sexually when it comes to sex, our attitude towards sex can be summarized as follows; “hear no evil, think no evil, **speak no evil** and do no evil”.

### 4.1 Jezebelic Mothers and Ahab Fathers

The father as head of the family is directly responsible for building and establishing a healthy foundation when it comes to the sexual identity of a child. The problem arises when a father conveys messages that belittles downgrades and confuses his son. This brings to question the impact of **a thwarted reverberation in a child’s ear that shakes the foundation of his sexual identity.**

#### 4.1.1 The Ear Gate

Josh McDowell an expert in child psychology writes that it takes at least “four positive remarks to offset the damage to self-esteem caused by speaking degrading words over a child.”<sup>56</sup> Not only is this damaging message whispered into the ear, but the heart takes this *verbal utterance* as being true; as a result the child is scared for life if not dealt with. The ancient poet Hesiod in his classical accounts of “*Ancient Gods and Civilizations Arose*” sates as follows; “It is this chaos, this ruined earth, to which the Creator began the process of restoration: it began with a **SOUND, a reverberation that shook the fabric of the cosmos:** the “thunder of The Almighty,” the command, “*Let light be.*”<sup>57</sup>

---

<sup>56</sup> McDowell Josh (1998) *The Father Connection*. USA: Broadman & Holman, p. 91.

<sup>57</sup> Genesis Chapter 1.

The **“ear”** is referred to as a **“spiritual gateway”** termed **“Ear-Gate”** first appeared in the English usage through a story captured by John Bunyan<sup>58</sup> in 1682. Bunyan's classic, *“The Pilgrim's Progress”*, was the most extensively read and translated book in the English language apart from the Bible and it was also used as an educational essential and considered to be compulsory reading in the U.S.A.

As the book allegorizes the encounters and hindrances of a man seeking salvation, Bunyan's *“The Holy War”* of the *“Town of a Man's soul”* recounts the intergalactic conflict for the souls of mankind. The *“Town of Man's soul”*, designed in the image of the God, is the target of the deceptive and evil giant, Diabolus<sup>59</sup>. **Man's soul represented a city of five gates: the Ear-Gate, Eye-Gate, Mouth-Gate, Nose-Gate and Feel-Gate.**<sup>60</sup>

The first and most strategic gate for the enemy to breach is the Ear-Gate. Nineteenth-century theologian, Rev. Robert Maguire<sup>61</sup>, comments on the importance of the Ear-Gate:

“This was the gate of audience, and **“through this gate the WORDS of the tempter (Satan) must penetrate, if the temptation is to be successful.”** The saw this with Eve, the mother of all living as the serpent whispered the glozing words of his seductive wiles and through the Ear-Gate, the enemy **“assailed her heart and won it.”**

To give audience to the tempter, in other words, **“to extend an ear to lies or to listen to sexual perverse conversations is the next step to yielding up obedience to Satan's will.”**

---

<sup>58</sup> Bunyan Characters - Third Series, by Alexander Whyte. (<http://www.gutenberg.org/files/2308/2308-h/2308-h.htm>).

<sup>59</sup> Diabolus: Devil In many religions, the major personified spirit of evil, ruler of Hell, and foe of God. (<http://www.thefreedictionary.com/Diabolus>)

<sup>60</sup> Ibid.

<sup>61</sup> Mystery of the Iniquity. (<http://mysteryoftheiniquity.com/2011/11/12/zombie-killing-machine/>).

The enemy has many evil spirits who are ready to second their master's temptations and to commend his crafty proposals. The temptation from without is utterly powerless in itself unless there answers a yielding from within man.

This fatal act saw the destruction of innocence in mankind which led to the “Fall” **From the mouth of our enemy flows poison being whispered into our ears** which scars the sensitive soul of man. Eco’s like “you are not good enough”, “you will never be a man”; filled with pain and anger in his own this twisted way, this man justifies his actions to act out physically in an attempt to prove to himself he is a man, and the way he does it is through sex.

Masturbation is the first step followed by watching pornography which leads to prostitution. Slowly but surely the hunger for more explicit and dangerous sex births from within and culminates in rape, bestiality and murder. Ahab fathers and Jezebel mothers will raise children who may become masculine women and effeminate men. Homosexuals male and female often come from homes where there is an Ahab father and a Jezebel (dominating) mother.

Engaging in any form of sexual sin is nothing else than self-destructive behavior. The above illustrates the use of the mouth as a weapon of destruction which can lead to a person becoming a sex addict caught up in a world of sexual perversion.

A person who cuts himself or engage in sex with a total stranger or a beast for that matter; this kind of behavior makes no sense to the average person nor to the field of psychology and psychiatry.



Psychology rally such behavior deemed a form of escape, a coping strategy or a survival skill in order to restore emotional equilibrium<sup>62</sup>. This behaviour fails to release and accept that there is demon force working behind the scenes when it comes to sexual sin and sexual perversion.

Proverbs 6:2 depicts that a person is *“snared with the WORDS of his MOUTH.”* The question arises; can gossip and criticism lead to sexual perversion?

## 4.2 Gossip and Criticism as Gates to Sexual Perversion

Any sexual activity that is contrary to God’s law will bring curses for some number of generations.<sup>63</sup> Two demons which will seize such an opportunity to bring curses on a person are the demons of gossiping and criticism. It is through the lying spirit that sex demons enter and harass a person. People fail to realize is those demons do enslave.

When a believer commits a sexual sin and repents of it only to find himself craving after that same sin; he is enslaved.<sup>64</sup> Homosexuals always criticize Pastors and Christians for pointing out that the Bible condemn their sinful way of life. They are always on the defense uttering words of hostility in defending the lie they live.

In this case these uses their **mouths as sex organs** and once the lying spirit is deeply rooted and they are fully convinced in their twisted thinking that their way is in fact natural, they will go out to proclaim it verbally as if they set out to justify their actions exchanging the truth for a lie. Such sayings usually includes; ‘I am born this way’ or ‘I have the right to live as I pleases’ which contradicts Bible teachings.

---

<sup>62</sup><sup>62</sup> Self-destructive behavior in addition prone people (<http://blogs.psychcentral.com/sex-addiction/2013/10/self-destructive-behavior-in-addiction-prone-people>)

<sup>63</sup> Brand Dr Connie (2002) Sexual Brokenness and Deviation. Part III. Pretoria: Self-Published, p. 12.

<sup>64</sup> Prince Derek (1998) They Shall Expel Demons.UK: Derek Prince Ministries, p. 186

The curses in question could have come down the bloodline for generations or the individual who commits the sexual sin can now start the curse. If one transgresses the realm of moral sex according to God, this one softened his resistance to improper sex and can open the door to start a curse in the bloodline and generations to come.

In this day and age, HIV and AIDS receive very high priority. The truth is that these are in fact mere symptoms of the real killer disease **sexual perversion**. This is the actual killer disease that destroys the body, soul and mind of a person as well as having a negative imprint on the spirit of the person.

If the unsaved and in numerous cases the saved as well, don't overcome sexual sin, Revelation 21:8 warns; ***“But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.”***

As Malan so justly describes; Aids is a curse from God on those who practice homosexuality and fornication.<sup>65</sup> All sexual sin is driven by the spirit of lust. This demons is largely responsible for the braking up of a marriage. Lust is seeking only its own gratification. The person who is the object of lust will often become repulsed at having sexual contact with one's mate. Lust can be used as a bargaining device.

Richard Foster<sup>66</sup> confirms; **“Lust produces bad sex, because it denies relationship. Lust turns the other person into an object, a thing, a non-person. Jesus condemned lust because it cheapened sex, it made sex less than it was created to be. For Jesus, sex was too good, too high, too holy, to be thrown away by cheap thoughts (Matthew 5:28).”**

---

<sup>65</sup> Malan Christina EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God's Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. SA: Self-published, p. 58.

<sup>66</sup> Foster Richard (1985) Money, Sex & Power. Great Britain: Hodder & Stoughton, p. 99.

The question now is; what is the outflow of sexual sin? What if any, is the consequences and how does it impact a person or the family for that matter?

Following is a list of sexual sins and its consequences with special emphasis on “oral sex” and “pornography” pertaining to the **mouth** of a person.’

### 4.3 Oral Sex

Oral sex or oral intercourse is a practice involving sexual stimulation of the genitalia of a person by another person using the mouth (including the lips, tongue or teeth) or throat.

“**Cunnilingus**” is oral sex performed on a female, while “**fellatio**” is oral sex performed on a male; “**Anilingus**” is another form of oral sex, is oral stimulation of a person's anus.<sup>67</sup>

The question is asked, pertaining to this thesis; what is the relevancy between the mouth of a person and oral sex, a type of sexual perversion?

#### 4.3.1 The Curse of Fellatio

Fellatio by definition refers to:

“Oral stimulation of the penis, from Latin, literally means to suck.”<sup>68</sup>

This thesis believe that not only does Satan wants to control people’s mouths through lies and evil speak, but also to defile the mouth through committing sexual perverse acts with the mouth.

---

<sup>67</sup> Oral sex. ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oral\\_sex](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oral_sex)).

<sup>68</sup> Definition of fellatio.: Oral stimulation of the penis, from Latin, literally, to suck (<http://www.urbandictionary.com/define.php?term=fellatio>).

Following from a personal interview with Brand, the following was concluded; “Many counsellors in deliverance agree that when fellatio happened, the use of oral sex by mouth, when the counselee has to speak out and witness for Christ he finds it impossible and the mouth stagnates and incapacitates and the person cannot open his mouth to proclaim a word about Christ until deliverance has been done onto the mouth by speaking the Word of God commanding the Felatio demon to come out.”<sup>69</sup>

It is suggested that the mouth and the tongue be anointed with oil and freedom proclaimed. After repentance and the breaking of the curse, the counselee must commit to reading and proclaiming the Word on a daily basis, for not only will this exercise include reading and speaking but hearing the Word as well; hence, the washing of the soul, mouth and ears of the person.

The goal is to render Christians free from anything that hinders them from witnessing for Christ and to eliminate all evil speak and lies which according to the Book of Revelation Chapter twenty one verse eight, these won't enter the Kingdom of God.

Satan wants to wipe out all knowledge of Christ existence. Given this, he targets Christian's mouths in order to render them incapacitated to preach the Gospel of Christ or to merely say grace prior to eating. In this we find that these people rather refer to the man upstairs and numerous other sayings to elude saying the name Jesus Christ. Many will argue, perhaps the person is ashamed, however this thesis believe it is a question of the mouth being incapacitated due to the curse of Fellatio.

In ending and according to Dr Malan;

**“Satan's end goal has ever been the same – to wipe out all knowledge and ‘WORDS’ of Jesus Christ from the earth and thereby causing future generations to worship and pledge allegiance to Lucifer alone as God.”<sup>70</sup>**

---

<sup>69</sup> Brand, Prof Dr Connie MJ. (2013) The Curse of Fellatio as discussed with Brand in a personal interview. Radah Academy, Pretoria.

<sup>70</sup> Malan Dr Amelia (2008) Exegetical Evidence Pertaining to the Immanence of the Eternal Feminine from Antiquity Culminating in the Dawn of the Age of Aquarius. Pretoria: Self Published, p. 561.

#### 4.4 Masturbation

This is a practice of self-indulgence and self-love, strictly a selfish pleasure which produces shame, doubt, condemnation and failure. Satan's lie is that it can't hurt anyone since it does not involve anyone else. In the words of Joshua Harris<sup>71</sup>; "Masturbation is built on a self-centered view of sex.

This thwarted attitude says that sex is solely about you and your pleasure, your body, your genitals and your orgasm. In this, one see the natural tendency of sin."

#### 4.5 Pornography and Addiction

Definition of Pornography

**Etymology:** The word is similar to the Modern Greek *porvoyapacpfa* (pornographia), which derives from the Greek words *porv]* (porne, "prostitute" and *pornea*, "prostitution")

**Pornography:** Pornography or porn is the portrayal of explicit sexual subject matter for the purposes of sexual arousal and erotic satisfaction.<sup>72</sup>

Scores of men and women carry around a dark secret that is stealing their honour and poisoning their relationships. The Christian Community has a long way to go in acknowledging the scope of this cancer within its own camp. It is a silent yet one of the most destructive forms of sexual sin. It can come into the home through television, movies, internet, cell phones, radio or magazines. Seeing or reading pornography will cause the individual to want to replicate these sinful acts. The problem is that nudity or pornographic scenes are extremely hard to forget since these images is stored in the mind to be re-called at any given time and usually makes out part of fantasizing.

---

<sup>71</sup> Harris Joshua (2003) Sex is not the problem (lust is). USA: Multnomah Publishers, Inc. p. 103.

<sup>72</sup> Erotica is Not Pornography, William J. Gehrke, The Tech, December 10, 1996 - Volume 116 - Issue 65

Pornography is a killer. A well-documented case is the one of Ted Bundy,<sup>73</sup> “an infamous serial killer, granted an interview to psychologist James Dobson just before he was executed on January 24, 1989. In that interview, he described the agony of his addiction to pornography. Bundy goes back to his roots, explaining the development of his compulsive behavior. He reveals his addiction to hard-core pornography and how it fueled the terrible crimes he committed.”

Indeed, the power of pleasure has been underestimated and Internet pornography is changing the world in a fundamental way. Yet to the person in addiction, the momentary pleasure is irresistible and all-important. It is imperative that men/women treat pornography and sexual addiction with the respect accorded any drug addiction, for, as shall be seen, that is precisely what it is. It provides the false promise of an exciting double life where mankind can have the best of both worlds.

The person mired in addiction finds in the end that this double life leaves joy in neither of the worlds, with even the sexual self being ruined and consumed as the chemically altered brain is left to crave what can never be fully satisfied.

Guilt and shame are the supporting pillars of secrecy and keep whispering rationalizations to the person trapped in addiction, such as, "You don't need to hurt anyone else," and "You can get rid of this on your own without anyone else knowing because you are stronger, smarter, somehow different from everyone else." In this latter rationalization lies the true essence of addiction-pride. "My will, not thine." My. Me. I. It is in the isolation of pride that the addiction thrives and conquers and destroys the agency of the person.

---

<sup>73</sup> Fatal Addiction: Ted Bundy's Final Interview. ( <http://www.pureintimacy.org/f/fatal-addiction-ted-bundys-final-interview/>).

#### 4.5.1 Pornography and the Mouth

The relation between pornography and the mouth is found where semen swapping pornography involves performers trading semen between their mouths. This too is a type of oral sex and a gross defilement act involving the mouth and an outright abomination. Leviticus 17:11 reads;

***For the life of the flesh is in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul.***

***Leviticus 17:11***

Donald L. Hilton<sup>74</sup> explains that most, if not all, families will be affected by pornography. Men must safeguard themselves. If they are secretly involved, they will never have peace until they are healed. Even if you are healed, a person must safeguard himself against future addiction, as all are vulnerable who are not "sober and vigilant" as Peter warned.

Be well balanced, be vigilant and cautious at all times; "***for that enemy of yours, the devil, roams around like a lion roaring, seeking someone to seize upon and devour***" (1 Peter 5:8).

#### 4.5.2 Pornography and Addiction

When pornography is viewed, it is processed by the brain, it affects the brain and nervous system at the cellular level and it has a dramatic and lasting impact on attitudes, beliefs and behaviours. It affects men, women, teens and children differently.

---

<sup>74</sup> Hilton Donald L (2009) He Restoreth My Soul. USA, Forward Press Publishing, LLC, p x

The brain release neuro-chemicals during viewing of, pornography. Pornography is the most addictive "substance" on earth.

When we undertake to alter or damage the pleasure centres of our brains, to reset our thermostats for pleasure, we tread very dangerous ground. Society has bought into the lie that the only constraint against purely recreational sex is physical disease. The concept of sin has largely disappeared in a "whatever turns you on" world. Safe sex is the new religion. As long as there is no physical disease transmitted, any emotional, spiritual, or psychological trauma is discounted with regard to sexual behaviour if the individual is OK with it.

How naive we are to think we can disregard lessons tested in the "laboratory of history,"<sup>75</sup> as Durant called it, and not be harmed. How foolish to think we can allow the checks and balances of the complex pleasure centres of the human brain to be casually damaged and not face serious consequences. The "great and spacious building" of addiction is easy to enter, but extremely difficult to leave. Indeed, those who successfully exit will find it to have been the most difficult task they have ever accomplished.

The more important question is not "Is pornography addictive? but rather, "Is pornography a drug addiction?" Mark Kastleman explains his views in the following; "Does pornography use lead to a chemical dependency commonly experienced with illicit street drugs, alcohol, tobacco and prescription drugs? Is pornography use 'substance abuse?' Immediately, there are some in the scientific, medical and psychology fields who fire back, "How can you classify pornography as a drug or substance? It doesn't come in a liquid, powder or pill form. You don't ingest it or inject it.

---

<sup>75</sup> Durant Will and Ariel (1968) *The Lessons of History*. Simon and Schuster, pp 35,36.



The response is two-fold:

- When an individual ingests or injects a "drug," that chemical travels to the receptors in the brain and other parts of the body, seeking to "mimic" the body's own natural neurotransmitters. In effect, the drug tries to "fake" the body into releasing its own natural and endogenous chemicals. For example, Prozac triggers the body to release its own natural serotonin. Likewise as you have seen from the funnel illustration, pornography "mimics" sexual intimacy and "fakes" the body into releasing a tidal wave of endogenous chemicals, which is exactly what pharmaceutical and illicit street drug do. Can pornography not then be referred to as a "drug"?
- For those who insist on precision in the use of scientific terms such as "drug," allow me to put your minds at rest. Can we agree that pornography viewing triggers the release of the body's own endogenous chemicals, just as sexual intimacy does? And that the porn viewer can become addicted to these internal chemicals just as he would if the release were triggered by a pharmaceutical drug? Is this not chemically-induced addiction?

Psychologist M. Douglas Reed<sup>76</sup> was once quoted in saying; addiction can exist within the body's own chemistry;

***“Pornography is not like a drug, it is an endogenously processed poly drug providing intense, although misleading, sensory rewards.”***

#### 4.6 The Bastard Curse

This applies when a child is conceived before marriage; a bastard is conceived.<sup>77</sup> The descendants are cursed for ten generations (Deuteronomy 23:2).

---

<sup>76</sup> Is Pornography a Drug Addiction? (<http://www.netnanny.com/blog/is-pornography-a-drug-addiction/>).

The descendants will tend to conceive bastards children generation after generation. Creating a bastard loses demons to lead children away from God, they do not feel at home anywhere and drift from church to church or from one job to another. These children are more likely to have multiple sexual partners which relates to the “**vagabond**” spirit; one who can find no rest or fulfillment.

Cain received this curse from God; Genesis 4:14 reads;

***Behold, thou hast driven me out this day from the face of the earth; and from thy face shall I be hid; and I shall be a fugitive and a vagabond in the earth; and it shall come to pass, that every one that findeth me shall slay me.***

***Genesis 4:14***

In addition, Deuteronomy 23:2 implies that:

***A bastard shall not enter into the congregation of the LORD; even to his tenth generation shall he not enter into the congregation of the LORD.***

***Deuteronomy 23:2***

#### **4.7 Incest, rape or molestation**

If this is done by a family member it destroys the natural sex life with the person's spouse. Incestuous relationships loosens demons to cause all that is in the “bastard curse,” including hardness of heart, hate, distrust, insanity and deformity, confusion, perversion and defilement. Deuteronomy 23:3 reads; “***An Ammonite or Moabite shall not enter into the congregation of the LORD; even to their tenth generation shall they not enter into the congregation of the LORD forever.***” See also Leviticus 18:6-18 and Deuteronomy 22:30; 27:16, 20, 22-23.

---

<sup>77</sup> Malan Dr Chrisitna EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God's Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. Pretoria: Self-published, p. 56.

## 4.8 Fornication

This refers to all unlawful sexual acts. It is all kinds of sex outside of marriage. Both Hebrew and Greek terms link fornication directly to cult prostitution and ritualistic intercourse where the partakers are responsible to the gods of those they copulate with, or serve, through the act of copulation.<sup>78</sup>

Simon Goldhill<sup>79</sup> with regards to fornication comments; **“The 1662 version also declares that God established marriage ‘in the time of man’s innocency’, as though Adam and Eve were married. But were they?”**

**For Christians, the story of Adam and Eve is the tale of the horrific eruption of desire into the world which results in the Fall of Man. Before such desire came into things, was marriage necessary? Virginity and fasting were precisely the desperate attempt to regain man’s innocency. Marriage was at best a second-rate attempt to control fornication.”**

## 4.9 Adultery

Refers to voluntary sexual intercourse between a married individual and someone who is not his or her legitimate spouse.<sup>80</sup>

The question arises; is a married couple to abstain from sex during the women’s menstrual cycle? Gene and Earline Moody<sup>81</sup> explains as follows; “During the menstrual cycle, periods of geographical separation from the wife and during pregnancy, sexual relations are either undesirable or unwise.

---

<sup>78</sup> Malan Dr Chrisitna EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God’s Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. Pretoria: Self-published, p. 63.

<sup>79</sup> Goldhill Simon (2004) Love, Sex & Tragedy. USA: London, p. 126.

<sup>80</sup> Exodus 20:14; Matthew 5:27-28.

<sup>81</sup> Gene and Earline Moody Deliverance Manual. Sexual Deliverance Manual. Sexual Sins Summary. ([www.moodymanual.com/demonbuster.com/sexuals3.html](http://www.moodymanual.com/demonbuster.com/sexuals3.html)), pp. 12-13.

The basic need is to bring the sex drive under control. Believers has to learn to avoid all kinds of sexual impurity and the debilitating guilt, which follows such involvements.”

Demons always attempt to lure a man to involve himself in sexual activity without regard for his physical or mental health as proof of his manhood. Adultery is border line rape since – the one who initiate it, exercises a dominant power over another to taste the forbidden. It’s a question of “I want it and I will do anything to have it.”

The more times a person has engaged in sexual activity in the past, whether it was masturbation, heterosexual or homosexual activities, the more difficult it will be for this person to break these illicit practices. The path to victory starts with self-control in being as persistent to resist the demons, as the demons are persistent against the individual. This causes the individual to be in proper submission to God (James 4:5-8). The way to freedom will be dealt with in Chapter four.

***And when he hath made her to drink the water, then it shall come to pass, that, if she be defiled, and have done trespass against her husband, that the water that causeth the curse shall enter into her, and become bitter, and her belly shall swell, and her thigh shall rot: and the woman shall be a curse among her people.***

***Numbers 5:27***

#### **4.10 Sodomy**

In general this refers to male with male sex. Sodomy is also defined by various sources as “the act of anal intercourse, oral intercourse, or bestiality.”<sup>82</sup> Malan states as follows; **“Of all sexual perversions; it seems if this is one of the perversions that put a person in total spiritual bondage to the degree of a total mind control.”**<sup>83</sup>

---

<sup>82</sup> Sodomy. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sodomy>).

<sup>83</sup> Malan Dr Christina EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God’s Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. SA: Self-published, p. 64.

In essence; homosexuality is perverse, unnatural, abhorrent, detestable and an abomination which often brings confusion and every evil work.

#### **4.11 Prostitution**

This entails the selling of sexual favours. Strictly speaking it is the merchandising of sex which involves intercourse with someone for money.<sup>84</sup>

In the case of one who suffered severe rejection, rejection causes the hurt person not to respect themselves, therefore they do not respect others or their rights. In this instance it is all about showing oneself that one can have any women one wants. When such one come to realize it was only about money, this one feels rejected again and the cycle of rejection escalates.

When a person or one of his direct line ancestors commits a sexual sin which carries a curse, demons which accompany that curse will follow all the descendants and try to bring each member into sexual sin. These demons have legal right to do this until someone breaks the “curses” and cast out the demons which accompany the curse. Satan’s purpose with this is to destroy whole family lines.<sup>85</sup>

#### **4.12 Occult Sex and Sex Orgies**

These cause an individual to become very demonized. Demons of scubus<sup>86</sup> and incubus<sup>87</sup> lead to depravity. Exposure to occult sex, sex orgies and all kinds of perverse sexual acts loose sensual appetites and lewd emotions.

---

<sup>84</sup> Leviticus 19:29; Proverbs 7:25-27.

<sup>85</sup> King David’s family and Saul’s family – II Samuel 11 and 12. Satan tried to destroy the bloodline through which Jesus Christ was born.

<sup>86</sup> Succubus: An imaginary demon assuming female form and formerly held to have sexual intercourse with men in their sleep.

<sup>87</sup> Incubus: An evil spirit supposed to descend upon and have sexual intercourse with women as they sleep.

#### 4.13 Bestiality

Sex with any beast creates a very degenerate mind, physical deformities and is a form of Baal (Satan) worship. Satan uses sex to pervert mankind and wants to make them lower than the animals.

***Neither shall thou lie with any beast to defile thyself therewith: neither shall any woman stand before a beast to lie down thereto: it is confusion.***

***Leviticus 18:23***

***Cursed be he that lieth with any manner of beast. And all the people shall say, Amen.***

***Deuteronomy 27:21***

### 5 AN HISTORRAL AND GENERAL OVERVIEW OF SEXUAL STRONGHOLDS

#### 5.1 Strongholds and the Ruling Spirits

Sin opens the door for demons to enter in a person's life when a particular sin is repeated over time; hence a stronghold has formed. Certain demons are linked to each stronghold and is controlled by a strongman or principality in the spiritual realm.

***So he carried me away in the spirit into the wilderness: and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns. And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet colour, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication: And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.***

***Revelation 17:1-5***

Richard Ing<sup>88</sup> in his book on Spiritual Warfare with special emphasis on verse 3 refers to the seven heads as the rulers or principalities and the ten horns as the evil spirits in charge, each one over a specific area.

Ruling spirits possess intelligence and emotions and they are up to date with every person's history past and present due to being around for thousands of years. All of the powers and principalities report to Satan as the head of the kingdom of darkness. Below is a list of some of the well-known ruling spirits.

#### Types of Ruling Spirits Include:

- Spirit of Kadesh Barnea:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A spirit that operate at the point of breakthrough.</li> <li>• A spirit of retreat to ruin as is the case when Israel ignored God's instruction to take the Promised Land – result all perished (Deuteronomy 1:1-8).</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Infirmary:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Constantly sick - could result in terminal sickness.</li> <li>• A spirit that attacks a person's health.</li> <li>• A spirit that can cause cancer – heart attacks etc.</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Lust:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A spirit that operates through the eyes (I John 2:16) and the flesh (Galatians 5:16).</li> <li>• One of the main spirits that lead people into sexual perversion.</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Unforgiveness:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A spirit that works within the spirit of bitterness.</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Division	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Also referred to as a "fault-finder<sup>89</sup>" spirit – spirit of criticism. Bring division – conflict in church/ marriage/work – suspicion-de-stabilization spirit</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Anger:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•</li> </ul>

**Table 7:** Ruling spirits

See also the additional ruling spirits on the next page:

---

<sup>88</sup> Ing Richard (1996) Spiritual Warfare. USA: Whitaker House, p. 23.

<sup>89</sup> Frangipane Francis (1994) The Three Battle Grounds; The Mind, The Church, The Heavenly Places. USA: New Wine, p.138.

- Spirit of Fear:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keep Christians from walking in fullness to their Godly ordained calling.</li> <li>• Silence Christians – fear of man – hijack the mouth of a person preventing God from talking through him.</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Pride:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operates in closeness with the spirit of failure and blame shift Gen 3:12 “The woman thou gavest me”</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Rebellion:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operate closely with spirit of <b>hatred</b> – No peace – constant feeling of emptiness.</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Rejection:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A spirit that rejects God’s counsel (Satan/Cain)</li> </ul>
- Spirit of Antichrist:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Many of these spirits already operating in the world</li> <li>• Operate through the spirit of Jezebel.</li> <li>• Main Antichrist spirit yet to come on the scene.</li> </ul>

**Table 7:** Additional ruling spirits

## 5.2 Spiritual Authority and the Braking of Strongholds

The authority we have as spirit filled believers over the powers of darkness which is given to Christians by the Lord, is subject to the believers understanding of that authority.

### 5.2.1 Definition of Authority

Authority constitutes the foundational principle in the study of theology. Presumably all who operate within the broadest concept of “Christian” theology would acknowledge the authority of God as the supreme norm for truth. However, how the authority of God is conceived and expressed varies considerably within the “Christian” Spectrum.”<sup>90</sup>

---

<sup>90</sup> Ryrie Charles C (1999) Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth. Chicago: Moody Press, p. 20.



The right to command and enforce obedience, the right to act officially, one who is authorized, endowed with authority, formally sanctioned, justify commission or accepted as authoritative.<sup>91</sup>

### 5.2.2 Etymology of the Word Authority

Understanding authority from a New Testament perspective deems it necessary to peruse the term etymologically.

According to the Wycliffe Bible Dictionary<sup>92</sup> authority came to mean the legitimate or right full power to act or possess or control. Authority of Christians expressed on the next page, in a biblical context reads;

***Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.***

***Luke 10:19***

The God-given authority in the body of Christ is grounded on their hearts showing the nature of Christ as well as testifying of Christ with their lips.

Believers have authority over the rulers and powers of darkness yet some find that hard to believe. Could this be because they see authority as a personality type rather than a legal arrangement? The believers authority is not a product of his maturity or his calling. The enemy will do everything he can to keep Christians from being convinced of their authority as well as stripping them from their authority through the working of the “Jezebel Spirit” which will be discussed later in this Chapter.

---

<sup>91</sup> Bloomer George G (2003) The Battle Plan, Strategies for Engaging in Spiritual Warfare, De? CO: Legacy Publishers International, p. 97.

<sup>92</sup> Pfeiffer, Chares F, Vow Howard F, Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p. 179.

## 6 BABYLON - SATAN'S EMPIRE

The entire world makes up the Babylonian religion and the system created by Satan in opposition to God. All that exists in the world which is not of God falls under the control and evil influence of Babylon, Satan's empire. You cannot walk between the two. Either you serve God or you serve Mammon. *"Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues"* (Revelation 18:4).

### 6.1 The Spirit of the Antichrist

This spirit which is to come on the scene at the end times (Book of Revelation) is a worldwide power as well as a ruling spirit. It is found both in and outside the Church. It is the spirit of religion that honours the flesh.

People including some believers yielding to this spirit respond well to materialism, and appreciate the things of the world, and in return, the world responds to them as they worship mammon.

Government Institutions, the business world, entertainment world, law and politics, as well as religion, are to an extent antichrist in nature. Everything the world that opposes God is linked to the Antichrist. Every spirit which denies the Father and the Son, is Antichrist. The problem is; Many Christians never really left the world in pursue of that which the world has to offer. The Antichrist spirit manifest the strongest in the areas of religion, money, power and sex.

The enemy sets various traps to ensnare Christians with the cares of this world by the thorns and thistles of sexual lust especially. The Bible affirms the working of this evil. In 2 Timothy 4:10, Paul makes this sad report, ***"For Demas hath forsaken me, having loved this present world, and is departed unto Thessalonica."***

The temptations of this world ensnared and convinced Demas to turn his back on the ministry as is the case with many today. This spirits aim is to pull many Christians back into the world.

Those obsessed with worldly things is under direct control of the spirit of Antichrist. Being of this world is one thing but conforming to it is another. Paul speaks of this when he said;

***But this I say brethren, the time is short: it remaineth, that both thy that have wives be as though they have none; and they that weep, as though they wept not; and they that rejoice, as though they rejoiced not; and they that buy, as though they possessed not; and they that use this world, as not abusing it; for the fashion of this world passeth away.***

***I Corinthians 7:29-31***

A Christian who is pulled back into the world will be scared for life but a person should not allow those scars to define you.

People reap the consequences of their words, thoughts and actions. It is in this that the "mouth" an open well for destruction is the most destructive of all the members of the body.

## **6.2 Satan and The Spirit of Mind Control**

The enemy wants to control the minds of mankind in order to force humanity to worship him.

According to Ezekiel 13:18-21; witchcraft steals the souls of men and women. The soul contains the intellect, emotions, and will, and it is these three areas which Satan seeks control over by means of controlling, beguiling, seducing and manipulating spirits.

A Christian who is under the power of the Witchcraft Mind Control spirit finds himself bombarded by uncontrollable sexual urges and immoral thoughts. These emotions and feelings usually arise unexpectedly. Being a man of two minds mark his personality. Memories of previous illicit sexual encounters haunt him and the urge to masturbation and act out increases. Masturbation and more serious sexual offences becomes an escape goat, a way of acting out when stressed or in an attempt to fill unmet needs.

## **7 THE JEZEBEL SPIRIT**

### **7.1 The Spirit of Whoredom: A Live and Well in This Day and Age**

This spirit loves to hide in the innermost chambers of a person's body and soul.

She is the queen of witchcraft; the vehicle used to steal away fragments of the soul of a person.<sup>93</sup>

God's purpose for all believers is to conform them to the image of His Son which refers to excelling in all areas in spirit, soul and body. Concurring the spirit of whoredom also known as Jezebel, requires dealing with every stronghold and cutting the "cords" of lust for those tied up in sexual immorality.

### **7.2 Satan Operating through the Jezebel Spirit**

If Satan cannot attack a Christian directly he will operate through the Jezebel spirit to luer a believer into sin.<sup>94</sup> "As this spirit begins to manifest in a Christians life a noticeable tolerance towards sexual sin is evident."<sup>95</sup> The Bible affirms that God's judgment against tolerating Jezebel is sickness and death (Revelation 2:22-23). Tolerance opens the door for the tempter to destroy the victim.

---

<sup>93</sup> Ing Richard (1996) *Spiritual Warfare*. USA: Whitaker House, p. 197.

<sup>94</sup> Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds*. England: New Wine Press, p.p. 136, 137.

<sup>95</sup> Ibid, p. 137.

While Jesus walked in the spirits of wisdom, understanding, counsel, strength and knowledge. His delight was founded ***“in the fear of the Lord”*** (Isaiah 11:2-3). Therefore the sin of presumption can be seen as the antithesis of the fear of the Lord; in other words, it is the forerunner of future defeat. “Sin of Presumption” / Face of the Lord

### 7.3 Exposing the Jezebel Spirit

Jezebel has a controlling influence in directing demons of homosexuality and lesbianism according to Frangipane being delivered from a controlling spirit will necessitate receiving deliverance from sexual fantasies<sup>96</sup>.

Through transference and not necessarily through audible words, this principality is said to be able to put words into a person's mind.

This spirit of whoredom uses bewitching powers, to seduce men and women to commit sexual sin.

The apostle Paul wrote about this and describe this demonic influence. Galatians 3:1 reads: ***“O foolish Galatians, who hath bewitched you that ye should not obey the truth before whose eyes Jesus Christ hath been evidently set forth crucified among you?”*** Bewitched, Greek *baskainō*, means to be charmed with words. This spirit of seduction uses enticing words and a flattering tongue.

In this we see the abuse of the mouth piece relating to the kingdom of darkness.

Proverbs 5:3 states: ***“For the lips of a strange woman drop as an honeycomb, and her mouth is smoother than oil.”***

As-well as Proverbs 6:24<sup>97</sup>: ***“To keep thee from the evil woman, from the flattery of the tongue of a strange woman.”***

---

<sup>96</sup> Ibid, p. 138.

<sup>97</sup> See also Proverbs 5:3; 7:5; 2:16)

Deceit in the form of spoken word is what caused mankind's downfall when Eve believed Satan's lie that thy will become as gods. To seduce is to deceive a person with expectation in order to establish a soul tie.

The Jezebel spirit is a strong man spirit. The question is; What's in you that this spirit can detect? It must be stressed that she works a network of demon powers to climb the ladder of control and work in close relationship with the spirit of witchcraft, the spirit of divination, and the spirit of seduction which literally means **to lead astray**. It is a cunning "step-by-step" process of temptation and enticement in luring Christians to engage ins sexual sin especially.

## **8 THE BATTLE FOR THE SOUL PERTAINING TO SOUL TIES AND SPIRITUAL WARFARE**

The problem and that which will be addressed in this section, pertains to the areas of a person's soul which could be fragmented - held captive by Satan and his demons in spiritual places of darkness which prevent believers from walking in total freedom and entering the fullness of their Godly ordained calling and ministry on earth.

Each and every person who experienced severe emotional trauma including rejection and sexual abuse as well as those who has a generational background of the occult or blood shedding by their forefathers, is almost without doubt being held captive in some area of life. The problem is this; the area of a person's life where he or she does not live in victory, that is, where there is a stronghold or repetitive sin which the person doesn't overcome, has to do with captivity. Is this what God's prophet referred to when he wrote:

***"Is not this the kind of fasting I have chosen: to loose the chains of injustice and untie the cords of the yoke, to set the oppressed free and break every yoke?"***

***Isaiah 58:6***

It must be stressed, at no time, does the author of this thesis within the context of this study, suggest that the soul of a born again believer is lost; rather, the aim is to illustrate that a part of the soul can be in captivity and as Dr Ana Mendes Ferrell<sup>98</sup> explains; **“a soul may belong to God (being saved and redeemed) yet suffer demonic influence because of fragments of the soul are held captive”**; as a result, the effect of the part of the soul which is bound, could show in the form of ailment, suffering, fear and breakdowns in the person’s life which cannot be overcome by prayer alone.

### 8.1 The Inter-Relationship Between Body, Spirit and Soul

Man is created as a sexual being and consists of a body, soul and spirit which are separate, yet inseparable. As a result of this inter-relationship, whatever happens in the spiritual realm impacts the physical realm and what happens in the physical impacts the spiritual. Outside of marriage, ungodly sex results in ungodly soul ties forming.

***...and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.***

***1 Thessalonians 5:23***

Contained within the soul are a person’s thoughts, his will and his emotions and together these are commonly understood as the person’s personality.

***Then those who gladly received His word were baptized; and that day about three thousand souls were added to them.***

***Acts 2:41***

Ultimately, a person is dependent on how his soul which expresses his individuality. This is the organ of man’s free will, the organ in which spirit and body are completely merged.

---

<sup>98</sup> Ferrell Dr Ana Mendez (2009) Regions of Captivity. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, p. 71.

Hence, if man's soul wills to obey God, it will allow his spirit to rule over him as ordered by God.<sup>99</sup>

The complexity of the man's spirit, is one of linking man with the Divine, is the highest; the body, connecting man with the sensible and animal, the lowest; intermediate stood the soul, partaker of the nature of the others, the bond that united them and through which they could act on each other.<sup>100</sup>

The soul as the command center, maintains their due relation; to keep the body, as the lowest, in subjection to the spirit; itself to receive through the spirit, as the higher, from the Divine Spirit what was waiting (sic) it for its perfection.<sup>101</sup> One can see the spirit as God-given; the soul as a living soul; and the body which is God-formed.<sup>102</sup>

Christians are born again, and linked to Christ through one spirit. I Corinthians 6:17 reads; ***"But he that is joined unto the Lord is one Spirit."***

It must be stressed that the born-again spirit is God-conscious in relation to the unsaved soul which is self-conscious and self-seeking. I Peter 1:22-23 portrays as follows; ***"Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit...Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth forever."***

Regardless of the spirit being reborn the moment a person come to faith in Christ; the problem persist in the soul yet to be transformed by the renewing of the mind to the Word of God (Romans 12:2). This is what Satan targets for the Bible teach, work out your own salvation (Philippians 2:12) with fear and trembling. What does "fear and trembling" refer to?

---

<sup>99</sup> Nee Watchman (1998) The Spiritual Man. Volume 1. CA: Living Stream Ministries.

<sup>100</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published, p. 325.

<sup>101</sup> Nee Watchman (1998) The Spiritual Man. Volume 1. CA: Living Stream Ministries.

<sup>102</sup> Nee Watchman. The Latent Power of the Soul. (<http://www.worldinvisible.com/library/nee/5f00.0634/5f00.0634.c.htm>).



When a soldier steps on to the battle field, there is always the element fear. Is this thesis implying that a Christian is driven by fear? No, but he better learn how to deal with fear which is not of God, for sooner or later, he will have to take the adversary head on.

According to Brand; until the soul has been totally surrendered to the will and purpose for God for a person's live, it will dominate the choices the person makes.<sup>103</sup>

Here with lies the problem, Satan wants to prevent this from happening and as a result, he will do anything in his power to fragmentize the soul of a Christian. He does this through sin in targeting the soul; the question is why the soul?

A man's soul can carry over much spiritual defilement from his past lifestyle and be assured; Satan is up to date with your generational filth. He will hammer at your weaknesses. Is this why so many believers can't shake off old sinful patterns; why do so many Christians end up practicing sexual immorality to the point where some are caught up in a life style of sexual perversion?

The fundamental problem why believers continue to struggle with sexual sin or why they backslide to the point where sexual immorality in gulps them, is not because the Holy Spirit is working in one's spirit to lead one to perfection; rather, because evil is operating in the soul wanting to lead astray?

Sin opens the door for Satan to gain access to the soul. As such, while the Holy Spirit is the power of God, man's soul in this context, appears to be the power of Satan.<sup>104</sup> Sexual sin equals ungodly soul ties; the question now is; what is a soul tie?

---

<sup>103</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published, p. 326.

<sup>104</sup> Nee, Watchman. The Laten Power of the Soul. (<http://www.worldinvisible.com/library/nee/5f00.0634/5f00.0634.c.htm>).

## 8.2 What is a Soul Tie?

A soul tie by definition is;

In its simplest form, refers to two souls “knit together” in the spiritual realm.<sup>105</sup>

One source argues there not being any such thing as a good soul tie simply because God will then come second.<sup>106</sup> In contradiction to this claim, Peter Horrobin, director of Ellel Ministries, holds that godly soul ties are God’s provision for healthy nurturing and for relationships throughout life; Horrobin however do acknowledge the existence of ungodly soul ties.<sup>107</sup>

A Biblical example of an ungodly soul tie can be seen in Judges 16:16: “***And it came to pass, when she pressed him daily with her words, and urged him, so that his soul was vexed unto death...***”

From a Biblical perspective, the phrase “***she pressed him***” is the most accurate answer for how a soul tie is formed. This thesis holds that this is a *spirit of seduction* which works closely with a *spirit of manipulation*, operating in the soulish area of a person.

The question still remains; how does this spirit create soul ties? By releasing a “spiritual force” against the person’s mind, against his imagination and against his emotions. The purpose of this spirit is to create ungodly soul ties in order to exercise control over a person.

---

<sup>105</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God’s Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published, p. 327.

<sup>106</sup> Savard Liberty (2001) Keys to Understanding Soul Ties, Soul Power & Soulsh Prayers. Florida: Bridge-Logos Publishers, p. xiii.

<sup>107</sup> Horrobin, Peter J (1991) Healing Through Deliverance. Volume 2. The Practice of Deliverance Ministry. Kent, UK: Sovereign Word, p. 120.

A soul tie can be seen as a spiritual or emotional attachment to another person, the bond however is the spirit of seduction also known as the spirit of Jezebel. In essence, a soul tie can be seen as a “spiritual truth” revealed through God’s Word.<sup>108</sup>

In the demonic world, unholy soul ties can serve as bridges between two individuals to pass demonic garbage through. Soul ties can also be used to manipulate and control another person, knowingly or unknowingly.

Soul ties which formed due to sexual sins are the most difficult to brake when it comes to setting the sexually enslaved free.

Table below refers to ways through which soul ties can be created.

Sexual relationships: Any illicit and immoral sexual behavior
Emotional manipulation: Manipulating a person for self-gain
Shared life experiences: Trauma – Rejection – Abuse (all kinds)
Personal tragedies: Divorce – terminal illness (fear driven)
Loss of a loved one: Pain – severe heartache
Flattery of the prideful: Words of perverse sexual nature
Consoling another: Exploit vulnerability of another in difficult times
Reaching out to the lonely: Sexual manipulation
Submitting to the Jezebel spirit: Not fighting the good fight – Drown in passivity
Agreeing with Jezebel’s offenses: Hurts, wounds, and un-forgiveness towards those in authority or leadership.
Financial crisis: Doing any favors in exchange for money - prostitution

**Table 9:** Ways that soul ties can be created

---

<sup>108</sup> Brand, Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God’s Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 328

### 8.2.1 The Battle for Captivity and Release of the Soul

Taking control of what is happening in the soul is vital to winning the battle for the soul which Satan so desperately wants to have dominion over.

In the account of Isaiah 6, the prophet of the Lord attests that there are people who are in captivity; he also reveals the need to proclaim liberty to those who are captive and the need for

unlocking the cells where they are bound.

Isaiah is documented in saying;

***The Spirit of the Lord God is upon me; because the Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound.***

***Isaiah 61:1***

Without a doubt, part of the ministry of the believer entails, working towards setting the captives free, for there is no scriptural evidence that Isaiah only received the anointing to do the above. As the Holy Spirit anointed the prophet, so does every born again believer have the same anointing in that all who are in Christ Jesus, within them resides the same Spirit which raised Jesus from the dead and which came upon the prophet.

The question is will believers embrace this truth and give up a bit of their comfortable lives and take up their cross and walk with it?

The battle to disjoin a part of the soul in order to manipulate and control the fragmented part of the soul, is one or lost in the mind, hence, the necessity to address two key aspects concerning the soul of a person.

### 8.2.1.1 Man's Thoughts, the First Aspect Pertaining to the Battle off the Soul

The question is asked; can a person be manipulated and controlled via impartation of evil thoughts, whether direct or indirect? The Apostle Paul in 2 Corinthians 10:5 makes an astonishing revelation towards this possibility, he writes as follows:

***Cast down imaginations and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ.***

***2 Corinthians 10:5***

Considering the importance and instruction to bring every thought captive to the obedience of Christ, begs to question where evil thoughts come from? There is no Scripture indicating that Satan, can, read a person's thoughts; nor is there any indicating that he can in fact impart wicked thoughts in a person's mind.

It will be immature and ignorance on the part of humanity, to think that every wicked and sinful thought is due to mankind's corrupt state of mind, and to think that Satan cannot, nor does he, have an influence in what is transpiring in the believers mind regarding the battle off the soul.

The author of this thesis, as do many Christian Counselors and to an extent, certain Theologians are in agreement that nonbelievers, as-well as believers to a lesser degree, can and do in fact experience evil and sinful thoughts which can include thoughts of taking something illegally, a man thinking of killing the neighbor's dog which does not want to stop barking or a mother who, but for a brief moment, consider to throw her baby against a wall in order just to stop the baby from crying.

The man and mother both believers; why will they harbor thoughts of murder? No, these are demonic and indirect bombardment of thoughts and or imaginations which are adverse to the obedience of Christ.

Watchmen is quoted in saying:

**“The sphere of Satan’s operation is in man’s thought life. He will inject a thought, an imagination, which appears to be your own. Under this deception, you accept it and use it as if it were yours, though in actuality it is his.”<sup>109</sup>**

Spiritual discernment in this matter is vital in not accepting these thoughts as one’s own and taking into captivity all evil thoughts to the obedience of Christ. Crucially, without a spirit of discernment, it is impossible to discern spiritual things, hence the importance to be able to recognize and hear the voice of the Holy Spirit, as-well as not being ignorant of the Devils devices (2 Corinthians 2:11).

Accepting evil thoughts as one’s own and acting them out, can over time form a demonic stronghold and result in a part of the soul being fragmented and violence can become the norm to dealing with certain hindrances, in this case a barking dog.

Satan will go to any extreme and manipulate and circumstance by using all of his devices to his exposal in order to capture a part of the soul in order to control the person in question. Satan’s aim is to control a person’s mind and in so doing, he can inject evil thoughts to the extent that the person in question becomes a puppet to be used as Satan will’s.

### **8.2.1.2 Temptation, the Second Aspect Pertaining to the Battle off the Soul**

As previously mentioned based on James 1:13:

- God does not tempt anyone - He does however allow it - Man has a free will.
- God cannot be tempted with evil.
- Man can be tempted, and does get tempted.

---

<sup>109</sup> Resist the Devil. ([http://www.twolisteners.org/Resist\\_The\\_Devil.htm](http://www.twolisteners.org/Resist_The_Devil.htm)).

The key element is that, the intension and driving force behind temptation in this context is evil of nature. The account of Matthew 4:1-3 reveals Satan as being the tempter of old. The “serpent” as recorded in Revelation 12:9 is identified as the Devil; **“and the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world”**, and attests to his nature as being evil - the deceiver.

The Devil, Satan, first tempted mankind in the Garden of Eden; ever since, and till today, he still tempts all of humanity, believer and nonbeliever. In essence, temptation can be referred to as “Satan’s action upon the souls of mankind with the intent to induce man to sin; he excites within humanity the concupiscence, that is, the lust of the eyes, the lust of the flesh and the pride of life” (1 John 2:16). The eyes, the flesh and mankind’s pride are the three trigger points Satan uses to tempt a person.

### 8.2.2 Soul Ties Through Sexual Activities

Sexual union involves all three parts of a person’s body, soul and spirit. If sex is in the confines of marriage between a man and a woman, a healthy soul tie is being created.<sup>110</sup>

However, any ungodly sexual union (physical, fantasy or otherwise) with another outside of marriage will create an unhealthy thwarted and sinful soul tie which acts as intimate bonds between people that were never intended by the Lord.<sup>111</sup>

***Now Dinah the daughter of Leah, whom she had borne to Jacob, went out to see the daughters of the land. And when Shechem the son of Hamor the Hivite, prince of the country, saw her, he took her and lay with her, and violated her. His soul was strongly attracted to Dinah the daughter of Jacob.***

***Genesis 34:1,3,34***

---

<sup>110</sup> See Mark 10:7-9

<sup>111</sup> Brand, Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God’s Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 329

She was sexually assaulted by Shechem which resulted in a joining together of their souls. In the same way if a person has a sexual relationship with another there will be a soul tie formed.

***Do you not know that he who unites himself with a prostitute is one with her in body? For it is said, "The two will become one flesh." But he who unites himself with the Lord, is one with him in spirit.***

***I Corinthians 6:6-7***

Sexual immorality is a bad thing. If a person has sex with a prostitute they will become "one flesh" (Body, Soul and Spirit) and a new formed "soul tie" has formed.

The same principle operates in ungodly soul ties; a demonic stronghold can set itself up over the life of an individual and this individual will continually draw sexual immorality, lust and perversions to himself for reasons unknown to him. When there is a sinful joining of two individuals, evil spirits in one individual open up the other individual for similar spirits, as they become one.

An ungodly soul tie automatically exposes an individual to the works of Satan and places his soul and body in bondage to Satan. As a result, this demonic soul tie/bondage invites other evil spirits to have legal rule in a person's life and exposes this one to be effected by all the evil forces connected to the person which one has connected to via this illegal soul tie.<sup>112</sup>

Horrobin explains that when one has had sex with many partners, it is as if this one's spirit (and soul) is spread all over the place.<sup>113</sup>

---

<sup>112</sup> Soul Ties Part 1. (<http://faithfuldiplomat.com/?p=33>).

<sup>113</sup> Horrobin, p. 125.



Sex in itself is not the problem; having sex outside the protection of marriage is. In this case, the fragmented soul can be compared with a broken mirror, reflecting a broken, shattered image of oneself.<sup>114</sup>

Soul ties that are formed due to ungodly sexual activities splinters the soul, and are destructive, hence, the struggle to “bond” or be joined to anybody because of disunity between the fragmented pieces of the soul.<sup>115</sup> For braking of soul ties, see Chapter Four.

### 8.2.3 Regions of Captivity and the Call to Spiritual Warfare

The idea that people’s souls could be trapped in a spiritual prison or in the “**gates of the shadow of death**”<sup>116</sup> seems farfetched; the question is; is it really?

*Have you entered the springs of the sea? Or have you walked in search of the depths? Have the gates of death been revealed to you? Or have you comprehended the breadth of the earth? Tell Me, if you know all this.*

*Job 38:17-20 (NKJV)*

Jesus came not only to deliver mankind from sin, but to set us free from bondage. The lie that freedom is automatic when a person comes to accept the Lord as Saviour is what keeps believers in darkness for we must truly nail our sins and iniquities to the cross to be delivered from the prisons of our souls.

King David, a man after God’s own heart made petition to God in asking; “**Bring my soul out of prison so I may praise thy name**” (Psalm 142:7a).

---

<sup>114</sup> Orchnson Anna E (2004) Sexual Sin. God’s Law and God’s grace. Understanding the Consequences for the Individual, Family and the Nation. Then Embrace God’s Grace. SA: House of David Publishing, p. 26.

<sup>115</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God’s Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 331.

<sup>116</sup> Ferrell Dr Ana Mendez (2009) Regions of Captivity. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, pp. 33.

The question is; do believers want this area of new revelation to manifest in their lives? Do you as Christian want to get rid of every hindrance that is stopping you from conquering your promised land: the fullness of your soul.

An expert in this area once wrote; ignorance and the lack of understanding in this area has produced the bitter fruit of a powerless and defeated Christianity that is not generating the impact this generation demands.

God's law reveals sin; if a believer who knows he has a problem when it comes to illicit sex decides to turn a blind eye to the problem, this Christian chooses to dwell with darkness; he allows a measure of his life to remain hidden in a shadow.

Psalm 107:10-14 reads; ***“Such as sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, being bound in affliction and iron...Then they cried unto the LORD ...and he saved them out of their distresses. He brought them out of darkness and the shadow of death, and brake their bands in sunder.”***

In a sense, this goes beyond casting out demons of the occult, drugs, alcohol, etc. Captivity, being ***“bound in affliction”*** plays a role in the lives of all mankind. This thesis is in agreement that every new-born believer would at some point in his life have to be set free in order for the life of Christ to shine from within, unhindered by blockages and baggage of the past.<sup>117</sup>

Captivity represented one of the most important parts of Jesus' suffering and victory through His death and resurrection for He descended to the lowest parts of the earth to take mankind's captivity away from the devil. Jesus literally stripped Satan of the keys of hell and death (Isaiah 22:22).

---

<sup>117</sup> Ferrell Dr Ana Mendez (2009) Regions of Captivity. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, pp.26.

This affects all of humanity, from the most downtrodden to the most successful. The question abounds; by what means can Satan hold the soul of a person captive? Mendes, in her book *The Regions of Captivity* states; through sin, sickness, fear and or pain.<sup>118</sup> In addition, being continually lied to and deceived over and over can also splinter the soul.<sup>119</sup>

Marilyn McGregor<sup>120</sup>, a trained deliverance minister herself in her review of Mendes' book welcomes the idea that one can, by the Spirit, **prophetically** bring people out of the bondages that they've been trapped in. The role of the mouth piece in prophesying word in order to set the captives free cannot be over emphasized. Jesus illustrated the very same principle when He said; **"Lazarus come forth"** (John11:43). The question remains; what and where are these regions of captivity?

Mendes through personal experience holds as follows; "I witnessed the spiritual world and its different regions, the prisons in which souls are kept captive and shown to me was the devil's destructive designs. Just as there are heavenly places, there are also places or **regions of darkness also referred to as infernal places**. The two spiritual regions, the kingdom of light and darkness, continually affect the land and the living. She concludes in saying; we don't have to be dead for Heaven to manifest itself in our lives; likewise, we need not die for our lives to become a living hell."<sup>121</sup>

An anonymous source however holds that "this new revelation of the *spirit realm* and this *spirit war* is a 'wind of doctrine' and it is blowing a gale force inside the Church; the source describes this as a Christian Jihad against the government of the devil."<sup>122</sup>

---

<sup>118</sup> Ferrell Dr Ana Mendez (2009) *Regions of Captivity*. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, pp. 35-39

<sup>119</sup> Ibid; p. 24.

<sup>120</sup> Review on "The Regions of Captivity. (<http://www.amazon.com/Regions-Captivity-Most-Powerful-Delivered/product-reviews/0768432332>).

<sup>121</sup> Ferrell Dr Ana Mendez (2009) *Regions of Captivity*. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, pp. 35-40.

<sup>122</sup> Declaring Spirit War on the spirit realm – new apostle style.

Rebecca Greenwood<sup>123</sup> in her commitment to the praxis and the lack of concern with the praxis in the Western church asserts; “I am a prophetic warfare intercessor and have dynamically and consistently engaged in strategic-level spiritual warfare, addressing territorial spirits and I have witnessed the lack of awareness concerning the enemy, especially in the Western church.”

Sandy Simpson<sup>124</sup> pertaining to *The Three Fallacies of Third Wave Spiritual Warfare* warns about the wrong of spiritual warfare; Simpson states: “When so-called Christians employ unbiblical pagan methods to rid themselves of demons, they end up giving the enemy an opportunity to deceive them and a foothold in their lives.

In response to the argument against spiritual warfare, this thesis can’t put it more clear and agree with Ray Stedman on the subject when he said; **“What a tremendously candid admission of human ignorance in the face of life as it really is.”**

Stedman<sup>125</sup> goes on saying;

**“Spiritual warfare is not about the struggle of man against man. It is not a political struggle, a social struggle, an economic struggle, or even a religious theological-doctrinal struggle. It is not a struggle between human beings. It is a struggle within human beings.”**

The reality of spiritual warfare from a Biblical perspective is clearly illustrated in the Book of Daniel. Chapter 10:12–13 encloses some glimpses of the operation of the spirit realm and how it is influenced by prayer. Daniel, through prayer (emphasize the role of the mouth and making petition with words) and fasting, enquired from the Lord concerning understanding a vision. An angel was to bring him a message and explain the vision, yet this angel met opposition from the ‘prince’ of Persia, Satan himself. As Daniel continued to make petition the archangel Michael was sent to help and God’s message got through to Daniel.

---

<sup>123</sup> Controversial View in Spiritual Warfare. (<http://www.patheos.com/blogs/jesuscreed/2013/01/15/controversial-view-in-spiritual-warfare/>).

<sup>124</sup> Three Fallacies Of Third Wave Spiritual Warfare. (<http://www.deceptioninthechurch.com/threefallacies.html>).

<sup>125</sup> Spiritual Warfare. (<http://www.raystedman.org/warfare/warfare1.html>).

Here with lies the ignorance with some of the clergy; one cannot deny that Daniel's praying was active spiritual warfare, yet, some men of the cloth argues that Daniel did not himself address the demonic powers and principalities and in so doing, these deny the need for conscious, active and aggressive spiritual warfare.

Pertaining to the message of Matthew 12:28; Jesus taught that spiritual warfare in relation to Him casting out demons by the Spirit of God bears testimony that the kingdom of God is with us.<sup>126</sup>

The mouth is an indispensable weapon to loosen souls in captivity; how so?

**"The Word of faith decreed from a spirit united with Jesus does not stop on the surface of the earth; it has power to penetrate the heavens, hell, and the regions of captivity."**<sup>127</sup>

The question is; what are Christians to do, do we look away or do we fight? There is no other answer for those who truly love God, their family and have a passion for people, than yes the. We will ride with the armies of heaven; we will be dressed in white! Christians are not called to live on the defensive, rather, to be fearless on the offensive, militantly and aggressively confronting the foe with creative God-given tactics.<sup>128</sup>

The message to Christians pertaining to spiritual warfare is this; "we need to lift ourselves out of a self-centered spirituality – a mentality that says we are victims rather than a general."<sup>129</sup>

Christians have the assurance that God does want to set them free from restraints which keep their souls captive; God in speaking to the prophet Jeremiah said **"I am with you,' declares the LORD, 'to save you'"** (Jeremiah. 30:11).

---

<sup>126</sup> Spiritual Warfare. (<http://www.colindye.com/2011/12/17/spiritual-warfare/>).

<sup>127</sup> Mendez – Ferrell, Dr Ana. (2009) Regions of Captivity. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, pp. 42-44

<sup>128</sup> Brand Dr Connie (2007) Spiritual Warfare Two; The Kingdom Principles of the Bible as Root to Spiritual Warfare. Pretoria: Self-Published, p. 38.

<sup>129</sup> Dawson, John. (unknown) Taking our cities for God. Creation House, p. 21.

#### 8.2.4 The Strategy for Spiritual Warfare

The strategy for spiritual warfare is summed up in Matthew 5:48; ***“Be ye perfect as I am perfect, and be ye holy as I am Holy.”***

Jesus does not call for “wholeness,” though that might have a better translation than “perfect”, since “wholeness” places all the focus on the Christian, and Jesus points us away from ourselves to love our *adversaries*.

All-embracing love is His goal, even if broken, adulterated by elements of our own unredeemed shadow, broken.

***For in him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily. And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power.***

***Colossians 2:9-10***

Of importance are the conditions to be met by ourselves. When a believer attempt to go into battle, with any holds of the flesh or evil spirits in his life, the enemy will use it against him to rob him of the real victory planned by the Lord for him. When we are to battle effectively in spiritual warfare, no strongholds should be holding us into any bondage; equally, no spiritual power should be influencing our lives other than the Spirit of the Creator. The most important aspect to spiritual warfare is “Satan must have nothing on me” (John 14:30).

God opposes the *proud*; should we humble ourselves before Him He will exalt us. *Submit* every aspect of yourself to God and the *resist* the devil and he will flee from you. Ones authority over demons is conditional on *obedience*. Disobedience renders us vulnerable. By entering into a spiritual battle, believers has to be prepared before-hand; if the Lord does not lead, we battle is vain.

From on who has actively been involved in spiritual warfare; “unforgiveness of any kind

will block the Lord's work through you, because it is an avenue for the Satan to exploit."<sup>130</sup>

## 9 SEDUCTION OF CHRISTIAN MEN AND LEADERSHIP

Once soul ties have been established, the victim becomes a eunuch<sup>131</sup>, a castrated male that can no longer reproduce. Likewise, a eunuch has no life outside the controlling world as was the case with Jezebel who manipulated her husband, king Ahab. They have no strength of their own and constantly look to the Jezebel spirit for approval, instruction, validation and companionship.

This spirit aims at getting Christian leaders to feel worthless about them by attacking their manhood. These men turn to pornography, sex especially sex outside of marriage and prostitution to prove their manhood. In this Satan sends hoards of demons to take control of this person and to arrest his mind which sets the course for this person to become sexually enslaved.

### 9.1 The Fall of a General and the Spirit of Error

This spirit is also related to the Jezebel spirit and work in conjunction with the antichrist spirit to get people to sin.

***Now the Spirit speaketh expressly that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith giving heed to seducing spirits and doctrines of devil.***

***I Timothy 4:1***

---

<sup>130</sup> Brand Dr Connie (2007) Spiritual Warfare Two; The Kingdom Principles of the Bible as Root to Spiritual Warfare. Pretoria: Self-Published, p. 70.

<sup>131</sup> Eunuch: Refers to a male who may have been castrated. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/eunuch>).

The aim of the spirit of error is to cause people and Christian leaders especially to go astray, to lead them in error by deceiving them in order to fall away from their faith by worshipping after other gods and in this case, the god of sex, hence the god of self.

Jezebel will either feature publically or behind the scenes. Those who submit to her leadership she will belittle, degrade, put down and try to destroy their lives. She loves to steal men's influence, ideas but her ultimate aim is to lead men astray from their wife's.

As already said the spirit of Jezebel forms soul ties with her victims while working her demonic plan. The control of others gives her a sense of value and satisfaction whereby people are only tools to be used as she sees fit.

This spirit at work in the wives of men in leadership positions will usurp their authority at home by ruling them and ordering them what to do.

The Jezebel spirit search for anything that can provide her and open door in the lives of men in leadership. Jesus said, ***“For the prince of this world cometh and hath nothing in me”*** (John 14:30). Men who is struggling with a spirit of the lust of the flesh she will easily find open door to seduce looking to create a soul tie. The lips of a Jezebel seems sweet but literally refer to sex dripping from her mouth, an open well from which proceed destruction and death. The Jezebel spirit takes advantage of all men's flaws and weaknesses. As their relationship grows she makes them feel that they can't live without her and need her in order to be successful.

This spirit is one that lure men into sexual immorality, bit by bit; she sucks the life out of men and makes them want to give up and quit. Many Christian leaders where destroyed by this spirit, all but a small minority left the ministry, some got divorced and in one specific case, Roberts Liardon one of the greatest Christian generals ever, gave up his wife and became a full blown homosexual. The question is how this is possible; how can this happen to a re-born spirit filled believer?



Illicit sex and sex outside of God's plan is the single most devastating thing which by itself, is almost always the main reason why marriages fail, Christian's leaders come to a fall and end up living single lives saturated with immoral sex to the point where many are captured in a world of sexual perversion.

Satan through spirits of seduction and manipulation has brought many of God's generals to a fall. Some Biblical examples include King David and Bathsheba; Solomon who turned towards other gods and Abraham who listened to his wife which resulted in a child out of wedlock in Cain. For men to overcome this spirit, the Ahab in them must die off which nullifies her control.

Jonas Clark is quoted in saying; **"the rise and fall of spiritual power within the Church of Christ has been related to the acknowledgement and opposition toward demonic principalities and powers."**<sup>132</sup>

A Christian leader's success depends on his ability to discern how evil spirit's operations. The church and its leadership is warned that God will not accept a passive attitude of doing nothing to overcome this spirit.

***Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols."***

***Revelation 2:20***

Elijah fled from Jezebel and cried to the Lord, ***"I had enough, Jesus let me die"*** (Revelation 19:4). What was God's response; what do God expect of men who suffer from this spirit? ***"Get up and eat"*** (Revelation 19:5). This cancer will not go away by itself and spiritual warfare is inevitable if a leader want to survive.

---

<sup>132</sup> Sex, Jezebel, and The Spirit of Whoredom by Jonas Clark (<http://www.jonasclark.com/spiritual-warfare-prayer/sex-dedction-jezebel-spirit-whoredoms.html#xzz2fVhOem2x>), p. 1.

Where this spirit operates there is no peace; “***And it came to pass when Joram saw Jehu that he said, ‘Is it peace, Jehu?’ And he answered, ‘What peace so long as the whoredoms of thy mother Jezebel and her witchcrafts are so many?’***” (II Kings 9:22).

The spirit of whoredom represents betrayal of faithfulness, breaking of vows, and prostitution of self in word and or in deed.

***For a whore is a deep ditch; and a strange woman is a narrow pit. She also lieth in wait as for a prey, and increaseth the transgressors among men.***

***Proverbs 23:27-28***

As in the words of David Allen Lewis<sup>133</sup> in his book “Smashing the Gates of Hell: “Leadership never promotes escapism nor irresponsibility. Properly studying, understanding, and identifying with the plan of God promotes the highest Christian citizenship responsibility. Correct understanding of God’s Word demands that a Christian gets involved with the work God called him for here and now. Christian are to occupy and take the ground till Jesus comes.”

You are called to be a soldier in the army of God. Your only effective defense is to take the offense against the Satan and his army. “***Resist the devil and he will flee from you***”<sup>134</sup> (James 4:7). A leader must be truehearted and steadfast in his allegiance to the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit.

The following must be stressed; if there is one thing that will prevent a Christian from being victorious it is passivity. **Defeat dwells in passivity, regardless if hope and faith are present, inaction will result in a battle lost!**<sup>135</sup>

---

<sup>133</sup> Lewis Allen David (1992) Smashing the Gates of Hell. USA: New Leaf Press, p. 95.

<sup>134</sup> Ibid, p. 232.

<sup>135</sup> Ferrell, Dr Ana Mendez (2009) Regions of Captivity. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, p. 31.

## 9.2 Sex, Sensuality and Demons Related to Sexual Sin

The spirit of whoredom understands what it takes to gain power within the Babylonian system, by using sex to cripple a Christian physically, emotionally and spiritually.

When this spirit is allowed unfettered freedom seduction will lead to sexual immorality, fornication and adultery.

***Do not prostitute thy daughter, to cause her to be a whore; lest the land fall to whoredom, and the land become full of wickedness.***

***Leviticus 19:29***

The spirit of whoredom uses sex and sensuality to seduce, capture, and control. The sensual enticements come in many ways and if need be she will swap sex for favours. Sex is a mighty weapon used to capture ignorant and unsuspecting leaders. Sex is only the means to an end. Scripture warns men to:

***...keep thee from the evil woman, from the flattery of the tongue of a strange woman. Lust not after her beauty in thine heart; neither let her take thee with her eyelids. For by means of a whorish woman a man is brought to a piece of bread: and the adulteress will hunt for the precious life.***

***Proverbs 6:24-26***

The phrase “**tongue of as strong woman**” refers to **words of poison** coming from her mouth in that the tongue is as a world of iniquity (James 3:6)

The spirit of whoredom is a hunting spirit which hunts men and Christian day and night and is always on the prowl for victims. This spirit works through the senses, especially the eyes and not necessarily through beauty but through sexual attraction instigated by the seducing goddess of lust.

Hosea 4:12 reads; My people ask counsel at their stocks, and their staff declareth unto them: for the spirit of whoredoms hath caused them to err, and they have gone a whoring form under their God.

This marriage between Hosea and a harlot illustrated to the nation what they were doing when they rebelled against God to embrace the idols and false gods of their neighboring nations. Even though one might not be actually offering to a physical idol, anything put ahead of God is still considered an idol, and thus a form of spiritual adultery.

Brand<sup>136</sup> states; a person oppressed under the Spirit of Whoredoms, will idolize Sexual immorality of any form, and this idolatry will instruct such an individual in the way he should go. As soon as the person's sexual appetite becomes an obsession, or a sexual fetish the Spirit of Whoredoms is involved.

Dennis Aaberg<sup>137</sup> adds as follows; if you have sex outside of marriage, you have given in to the Spirit of Whoredoms. The spirit of whoredom divides and separates and cause believer to error, leading them astray from their God given destiny which opens up a door for the spirit of bondage to continually keep one captive to lust, fornication and unrighteousness.<sup>138</sup>

### 9.2.1 Bondage Pertaining to the Spirit of Whoredom

According to Authors Pat Legako and Grobble Cindy<sup>139</sup>; "This spirit drives his behavior with addiction and compulsion; whoredom refers to obsessive thinking, which is idolatry."

---

<sup>136</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 406.

<sup>137</sup> Aaberg Denis G (2007) Seducing Spirits, Xulon Press.

<sup>138</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 407.

<sup>139</sup> Legako, Pat, Gribble, Cindy (2007) Deliverance: Rescuing God's People: Developing and Operating the Ministry. Tate Publishing and Enterprises, pp. 112-117.

In essence, it is lusting after something, it is attempting to gratify the immediate lust of the flesh and it is all about selfishness.<sup>140</sup>

Romans 8:15 makes mention of this spirit of bondage; ***“For ye have not received the Spirit of bondage again to fear, but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.”***

The NIV<sup>141</sup> refers to bondage as “the spirit that makes you a slave again to fear.” Brand holds that bondage includes any kind of addiction.<sup>142</sup>

In general; any addiction, whether drugs, unnatural sex, alcohol, or food provide a false comfort or an escape. First Corinthians 6:12 reads; ***“All things are lawful for me, but I will not be brought under the power of any.”*** The (NIV) reads; ***“...I will not be mastered by any.”*** The spirit of bondage is the sexually enslaved master.

### 9.2.2 Asmodee and the Spiritual Marriage

The question is asked; what is meant with the term “spiritual marriage” and who or what is the driving force behind it?

One source reveals that the spiritual marriage refers to a “relationship where both man and woman are able to learn, to understand themselves and each other by using sex to develop inwardly. The spiritual marriage forms the foundation of personal transformation and spiritual progress with the practice of alchemy<sup>143</sup>, which has the power to create and transform in a person in a spiritual way.”<sup>144</sup>

---

<sup>140</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God’s Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 408.

<sup>141</sup> NIV: See Abbreviations

<sup>142</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God’s Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 407.

<sup>143</sup> Alchemy: See Terms and Definitions.

<sup>144</sup> A Spiritual Marriage. (<http://belsebuub.com/articles/a-spiritual-marriage>).

According to Dr Anke Brand<sup>145</sup>, Asmodee is this entity which is heavily involved with sexual immorality and works hard at joining people into spiritual marriage. Dr Connie Brand<sup>146</sup> holds that this entity is a principality who aims at bringing sexual immorality to pass. Brand refers to the following list of sexual deflections:<sup>147</sup>

- Conflict in marriage between spouses - causes discontent and unhappiness.
- Prostitution.
- Barrenness of the womb.
- Lust.
- Multiple divorces and the inability to have and fulfilling an abundant marriage life.
- Sexual Perversion: Homosexuality, Lesbianism, Bestiality, Incest, Masturbation, Pornography, Alternative Lifestyle Forms (Swinging<sup>148</sup> and BDSM<sup>149</sup>).
- Often people have sex with a spiritual being in their dream believing it to be the Holy Spirit or Christ. This experience consists of a high level of sexual excitement.
- Asmodee causes dreams of a sexual nature. Either by seeing the male and/or female sexual organs, or having sex in a dream, petting and fondling in a dream or reaching climax in a dream.

Brand makes special mention of Asmodee working together with Abaddon (spirit of destruction), in Greek he is known as Apollyon (the destroyer)<sup>150</sup> along with other spiritual realities, principalities, gods and Satan are responsible for the breaking of marriages and causes family fudges.

---

<sup>145</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 403.

<sup>146</sup> Brand, Dr Connie. Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Startegie. Unpublished. Radah Academy.

<sup>147</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,pp 403 - 404.

<sup>148</sup> Swinging: See Terms and Definitions

<sup>149</sup> BDSM: See Terms and Definitions

<sup>150</sup> Abaddon/Apollyon: He is the destroyer. Abaddon causes confusion of the mind and thoughts, disbelief and doubt, deception, disunity, strife, breaking of families, involvement in occultism, addictions. See Job 31:12, Revelation 9:11.

Lesbos is a spirit that works in the family bloodlines to cause confusion in the sexual identification of men and women. This evil spirit is responsible for causing homosexuality and lesbianism, perverting the bloodlines for generations to come.

Asmodee (marriage breaking spirit) is said to operate in marriage in the following way:<sup>151</sup>

- Leads the husband (or wife) into a mid-life crisis or “middle-age-craziness” to leave one’s wife for a younger, more beautiful woman.
- Believing a lie that one deserves someone better.
- Breaks down the morality of one of the spouses.
- Drives the man or wife to just want to leave the marriage. They “just want out!” are the cause for many marriages to fail.
- She uses any or all of the following instruments to lure a spouse into adultery: jealousy, disappointment, resentment, boredom, anger, lies, frigidity, hindrance, deception, temptation, delusion, death, hopelessness, despondency, strife and spite.

In essence, these evil spirits rage against marriages and homes today, resulting in confusion and chaos, and are destroying, manipulating and plundering individual’s lives through immoral and perverse sex.

### 9.2.3 The Spirit of Perversion

The Catholic Church for example sees sexual perversion as a cause and as a symptom of the decay of society’s moral standards. Some conservative religious groups regard any and all sexual activity outside procreation as immoral and therefore a perversion.

---

<sup>151</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God’s Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published ,p 405.

Regardless; Satan succeeded in introducing sexual perversion to distort man's ability to worship their Creator, and he aims to divorce sex from the intimacy of marriage.

The account of Isaiah 19:14 portrays as follows; ***"The Lord hath mingled a Perverse Spirit in the midst thereof: and they have caused Egypt to err in every work thereof, as a drunken man staggereth in his vomit."***

Laneen Haniah,<sup>152</sup> gives a thorough definition of sexual perversion in her book: The Spirits of Sexual Perversion. According to Haniah, perversion is a **"Deviation from God-ordained sexual intimacy between husband and wife; misuse of sex and/or sex organs; corruption of sexual intimacy in through or in action as it relates to God's plan and purpose for it..."**

She adds that there are ten manifestations of sexual perversion that she noted that are expressly outlined and/or described in The Bible. These include:

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| 1. Fornication   | 6. Prostitution                                 |
| 2. Masturbation  | 7. Rape/Pedophilia                              |
| 3. Adultery      | 8. Pornography/Sexual fantasy                   |
| 4. Incest        | 9. Bestiality                                   |
| 5. Homosexuality | 10. Sexual Lust (Lasciviousness) <sup>153</sup> |

According to Brand,<sup>154</sup> **"a broken spirit characterizes the strongman of perversion."** Being oppressed by a Spirit of Perversion, an individual's mind and soul can be perverted to such a point that he actually believes that his lifestyle is kosher. In being ensnared in a sexual immoral lifestyle the Spirit will perverse such a person's mind and every word that proceeds from his mouth. In addition; every thought is centered on sexual fantasies, fornication and adultery.

---

<sup>152</sup> Haniah Laneen Anavah (2004) The Spirits of Sexual Perversion Handbook. Victoriously Free! Publishing.

<sup>153</sup> Ibid

<sup>154</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published, p 410.



One source reveals that a person's sexuality is as individual as his spiritual belief. Sexual perversion establishes an open door for future generations to be drawn into sexual sin. Sexual sin can result in a curse coming upon you, your partner and/or ones children. The scriptural basis for generational curses is found in Exodus 34:6-7.

The reality is however that when sexual addiction is in operation there is demonic activity which requires the delivering power of Jesus which will be dealt with in Chapter Four. It must be stressed that the satanic kingdom also works through *water spirits* to exercise dominion over human life through sexual immorality.

#### 9.2.4 Water Spirits

According to Dr Connie Brand,<sup>155</sup> water spirits use illicit sexual acts to keep people continuously within a prison of higher demonic manipulations; she adds that there are millions of water spirits that combine with forces of witchcraft to manipulate and dominate man through sexual acts and the power of lust.

These spirits wants to hold God's people captive in the area of sexual immorality.

## 10 SATAN AND SEXUAL PERVERSION

As previously mentioned; Satan uses sex to defile mankind with the aim being sexual enslavement. This Chapter is not concerned to where sexual perversion starts, rather, the culminating effect thereof. The question is; what is the relation between the dark kingdom and sex, and what can this be referred to as? In the simplest form, this Thesis will refer to it as "The Dark Side of Sex." As we know, God created sex and it was good.

---

<sup>155</sup> Brand Dr Connie MJ. From Bondage to Freedom. Conference held at Pretoria, 2 August 2009.

The problem is Satan and the perversion of sex. Considering how many Christians are addicted to pornography, or those who are trapped in a lifestyle of illicit sex, or what about the extreme cases where some practice bestiality; what are we to do? Should we disregard it or should we apply Biblical principles not to ignore the devils devices?

### 10.1 The Shadow Pertaining to the Dark Side of Persona

C.G. Jung<sup>156</sup> a psychiatrist himself explains; “The shadow refers to the unknown “dark side” of a person’s personality—dark both because it tends to comprise primarily of the primitive, negative, socially or religiously depreciated human emotions and impulses like **sexual lust**, power strivings, selfishness, greed, envy, anger or rage, and as a result of its unenlightened nature, completely obscured from consciousness.”

The question is asked; what if any is the role or the relation between “The Shadow” or the unknown side of the personality in question concerning evil and sexual perversion? Jung holds that “**whatever a person consider as evil**, inferior or unacceptable and deny in oneself, **becomes part of the shadow**, the *counterpoint* to which Jung refer to as the ***persona*** or *conscious ego personality*.”<sup>157</sup>

The question arises; what about the ***impersonal*** shadow of a person given there is one?

According to Jung one can “differentiate between the *personal shadow* and the *impersonal or archetypal shadow*, which confesses transpersonal, pure or radical evil as symbolized by the Devil and demons as well as combined evil.

---

<sup>156</sup> Essential Secrets of Psychotherapy: What is the "Shadow"? (<http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/evil-deeds/201204/essential-secrets-psychotherapy-what-is-the-shadow>).

<sup>157</sup> Ibid; p. 1.

This is typified by the horror of the Nazi holocaust where historical figures like Adolf Hitler, Charles Manson, and Darth Vader (in the Star Wars movies) personified the shadow embodied in its most negative and destructive archetypal human form.”<sup>158</sup>

By definition, The Personal Shadow is referred to as;

**“That hidden, repressed, for the most part inferior and guilt-laden personality whose ultimate ramifications reach back into the realm of our animal ancestors and so comprise the whole historical aspect of the unconscious.”<sup>159</sup>**

Based on this definition, a shadow is a prehistoric part of our human inheritance, which, according to Jung, does not matter how hard you try, trying as you might, it can never be avoided.

Pertaining to bringing the shadow to consciousness, one of Jung’s followers, Liliane Frey-Rohn (1967) once wrote,<sup>160</sup>

**“It is a psychological problem of the highest moral significance. It demands that the individual hold himself accountable not only for what happens to him, but also for what he projects. . . Without the conscious inclusion of the shadow in daily life there cannot be a positive relationship to other people, or to the creative sources in the soul; there cannot be an individual relationship to the Divine (cited in Diamond, p. 109).”**

The question abounds; according to Jung, the personal shadow embraces evil, the question then is, relationship with which Divine is Frey-Rohn referring to? We have already previously established that sin originated as a result of evil expressing itself through Satan’ rebellion against God; are we now to believe that evil itself has a dark and gloomy shadow to it?

---

<sup>158</sup> Essential Secrets of Psychotherapy: What is the "Shadow"? (<http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/evil-deeds/201204/essential-secrets-psychotherapy-what-is-the-shadow>), p. 1-2.

<sup>159</sup> Ibid; p. 1-2.

<sup>160</sup> Ibid; p. 2-3

In taking it one step further; are we then to believe that when a person alienates himself to watch pornography that this person is hiding in the shadow of sin?

In moving on; given Jung' explanation whereby the personal shadow do tend to embrace depreciated human emotions and impulses like **sexual lust**; by implication, can one therefor say that this shadow has the potential to encompass immoral and perverted sex?

Considering that the Bible is the axiom of this thesis, there is no concrete proof that this is indeed the case, however, the Bible does not specifically deny this possibility, does it.

Deuteronomy 29:29 reveals;

***The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.***

***Deuteronomy 29:29***

What the Bible does reflect is that there is no darkness in God, nor is there any evil in Him nor can He lie for God is not a man who lies. Given what the Bible teach and that which Jung himself testified to, this thesis make the following statement:

Satan as the ruler of this world is the head of the dark kingdom, evil originated in him as a result of his rebellion; given this, and the fact that the personal shadow embraces evil and that there is the possibility that it do in fact encompass evil, this thesis deem to say that there is a direct channel of operation from Satan whereby he can impart his evil only to be manifested in the personal shadow of a person to do his will on earth as was the case with Adolph Hitler. This thesis also dare say that sin is the link that opens this channel and that within the realm of the shadow, Satan promotes sexual lust and all other kinds of evil.

## 10.2 The Systematic Promotion of Sexual Deviance

In 1953, the Time Magazine cover quoted Alfred Kinsey<sup>161</sup> in saying; **“The only unnatural act is that which you cannot perform.”**

According to one source, the two “fathers”<sup>162</sup> of the Sexual Revolution” in the 20<sup>th</sup> century were both sexual perverts with an evangelical mission in life; their motto was to infect society with their wacky ideas and turn the world into a vast masturbatorium.

It is said that both Kinsey and Wilhelm Reich enthusiastically embraced the laissez-faire Freudian philosophy which declared; **“I advocate an incomparably freer sexual life”**. The hidden agenda behind this revolution was one of: “If only Americans knew—we are bringing them the plague!”

The same source asserts that according to Freud and his followers, anti-Semitism was a worldwide pathology which had its roots in sexual cruelty and that its cure laid in “sexual liberation”. What does the Bible teach concerning this subject?

There is only sexual liberation within God’s plan for sex within the marriage union. Concealed within sexual liberation outside of God’s plan for sex, is found the path to sexual perversion.

This was a blatant attempt to offer sex as the great liberator for all political and economic frustrations in that all the world’s problems could be alleviated by sexual activity—particularly by obsessive and addictive sex. The question arises; is it by coincidence that sexual immorality is proliferating in this day and age? No; this thesis deems that Satan in paving the way to a One World Order instigated this with the following in mind:

---

<sup>161</sup> Masters of Porn: The Systematic Promotion of Sexual Deviance. (<http://www.theoccidentalobserver.net/2012/06/portraits-of-masters-of-porn-the-systematic-promotion-of-recreational-sex-sexual-callousness-and-sexual-deviancy/>).

<sup>162</sup> Fathers of the Sexual Revolution: Alfred Kinsey (1894-1956) and his cult psychoanalyst Wilhelm Reich (1897-1957).

People who spend all their waking hours in search of sexual stimulation, hence, the sexually enslaved, are obviously unfit to organize pogroms, mount bloody revolutions, or become a threat to his One World Régime.

Michael E Jones's<sup>163</sup> in his magisterial work on "Libido Dominandi", where both Kinsey and Reich were discussed in great detail, wrote as follows; "Sex, according to the philosophers of the Sexual Revolution inspired by Reich himself, is to be the panacea for all humanity's problems - the new opium of the people.

If they can have bread, let them eat cake. If people don't have jobs, security, fulfillment, and a legal purpose in life, offer them have sex as a substitute. If nothing else, fun sex will provide a useful diversion and give them something to do."



**Figure 8:** After The Fall – Washington DC 2013<sup>164</sup>

---

<sup>163</sup> Masters of Porn: The Systematic Promotion of Sexual Deviance. (<http://www.theoccidentalobserver.net/2012/06/portraits-of-masters-of-porn-the-systematic-promotion-of-recreational-sex-sexual-callousness-and-sexual-deviancy/>).

<sup>164</sup> See Plates and Figures.

Reich a famous psychoanalyst-to-be was a compulsive masturbator from childhood and a self-confessed pervert with wide-ranging sexual interests; he believed that masturbation was a valuable tool in generating “well-balanced” people without so-called “religious hang-ups” or “anti-Semitic attitudes”. He portrayed that masturbation and the religious life were incompatible, which saw him advocating masturbation as a effective means of eliminating the religious instinct—which he considered the ultimate evil.

It is said that at the age of 15 he began visiting brothels where his unquenchable appetites made him the talk of the town. The same source quotes him in his Autobiography describing his uncontrollable libido:<sup>165</sup>

**“Was it the atmosphere, the clothing, the red lights, the provocative nakedness, the smell of whores—I don’t know! I was pure sensual lust. I ceased to be. I was all penis! I bit, scratched, thrust, and the girl had quite a time with me! I thought I would have to crawl inside her...”**

As a Psychoanalyst; he was known to have masturbated the female patients in therapeutic sessions being of opinion that the pleasure of living and the pleasure of orgasm are identical; the idea was one of associating infinite happiness with the provision of an infinite number of orgasms.

In Reigh is a primary example of one who lived for sensual pleasure only, it controlled his life to the extent that there was no room for religious instinct, it was all about the phallus and worshipping sex. This is Satan’s plan for all of humanity. He together with three of the most power full spirits related to sexual immorality in Leviathan, Dagon and Ashtoreth vigorously works at seducing Christians to entangle them a world of sexual pollution.<sup>166</sup>

---

<sup>165</sup> Masters of Porn: The Systematic Promotion of Sexual Deviance. (<http://www.theoccidentalobserver.net/2012/06/portraits-of-masters-of-porn-the-systematic-promotion-of-recreational-sex-sexual-callousness-and-sexual-deviancy/>).

<sup>166</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God’s Securing Intervention. SA, Self-published, p 416.

Malan adds by saying that sexual deviation and brokenness abort the believer from his or her God-given destiny, purpose and calling being defiled and stripped of their innocence.<sup>167</sup> Through defilement on various levels, Satan gets people to join his kingdom and sexual perversion is his biggest weapon pertaining to defiling man.

**Defilement on all levels includes every immoral thought - word uttered - activity.**

### 10.3 The Goddess

One of Satan's most powerful weapons is the arousal of sexual desires in woman. The Lie of Satan is that man shall all be a god. And through sexual ecstasy and sexual intercourse man can receive a higher state of divine consciousness- man can become one with the Goddess. Satan teaches a new theology of the New age that sex is spirituality. To the discerning Christian this is a code phrase for demonic control?

According to Brand;<sup>168</sup> author Wanda Marris and co-founder of Living Truth Ministries writes in her book *New Age Lies to Women* states that in the New Age World Religion there are few limits on what is acceptable sexual behavior. Those practicing tantric sex believes that sexual union (in or out of marriage) bring spiritual communion with the divine energy forces of The Universe. **“Those involved in witchcraft and Satanism, consecrate themselves to Satan through ritual sexual orgies.”**

Miriam Starhawk,<sup>169</sup> author of several books and well-known self-proclaimed feminist witch, living in Berkeley, expresses her views on sexuality that it is sacred because according to her it is a sharing of energy, in passionate surrender to the power of the Goddess, immanent in man's desires. She continues that in orgasm we share in the force that moves the stars.

---

<sup>167</sup> Malan Dr Christina EM (2010) *The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God's Purpose for Godly Bloodlines*. SA: Self-published, p. 68.

<sup>168</sup> Brand Dr Anke (2010) *Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention*. SA, Self-published, p 426.

<sup>169</sup> Starhawk Mirriam (1986) *Yoga Journal*. May, June, p. 59.



Many writers agrees that it is good for a woman to be in the image of the Goddess, an image of sensuality and eroticism, both sacred and profane, holy yet sexually promiscuous. She must be sexual (a prostitute) and spiritual (a priestess).

Satan has further twisted the human soul to a point where the worshippers of the Mother Goddess believes that it is through sexual union that a person's mind and soul will be cleansed and purified. Sex was therefore considered to be a form of baptism. It is a ritual that "washes away sins."

What this means, explain Marrs, is that it doesn't matter who a person have sex with, or where or when he have sex, and it doesn't matter if this person is married to his sexual partner or not, the only thing that matter is this: that the sexual intercourse is an act of holy sex, it is a ritual and sacred art. It lifts one from the profane to higher levels of sublime spirituality.

To the New Age, sexual perversions are accepted as legitimate lifestyles, Making love to a stranger, orgies, bisexuality, lesbianism, homosexuality, bondage etc. are acceptable and the New Age approves. Doesn't matter what your perverse sexual tastes are, the New Age content that man is a god, and he can choose his sexual path to godhood.

In the sex act (whichever way a person prefers it, either it be in bondage, in group sex, homosexual sex etc.) and especially when ecstasy and orgasm is attained, the persons involved become one with each other and also one with the androgynous<sup>170</sup> god, who is the unified "Father of Light" (Satan) and the Goddess, or Bride, of Darkness.<sup>171</sup>

---

<sup>170</sup> Androgynous: See Terms and Definitions

<sup>171</sup> Marrs Wanda (1989) New Age Lies to Women. Austin, Texas: Living Truth Publishers, p. 88.

Griscom, explains that when a person enjoys a sexual encounter of any sort and achieve orgasm he becomes one with the universal spirit: **“The unmanifest, which is spirit, funnels in on that which takes form, such as the sexual, genital areas.”**<sup>172</sup>

Russ Wise, in conjunction with many other scholars profess that the Goddess has returned. She who brought judgment on the hillsides of apostate Israel – the Ashteroth from Canaan whose altars were condemned by Yahweh – is being esteemed and embraced by today’s followers of witchcraft, radical feminism, the occult, and increasingly, those in the liberal church.

Neo-pagans look toward an idealized feminine age to heal the world. To them, the masculine age has been an age of obliteration and broken relationships. But “feminine energies” promise to bring balance to the damaging aspects of the Piscean Age—so says this emerging myth.<sup>173</sup>

#### 10.4 The Identity of the Goddess

Wikipedia refers to any goddess as being associated with motherhood, fertility, creation or the embodiment of the earth. When equated with the Earth or the natural world such goddesses are sometimes referred to as Mother Earth or as the Earth Mother.<sup>174</sup>

According to Paula Price<sup>175</sup>, by definition; a goddess is a female deity worshipped in and by ancient civilizations for their believed powers of fertility which included prostitution, transvestitism, homosexuality, orgies, for this reason, sexual deviancies.

---

<sup>172</sup> Griscom Chris (1987) *Ecstasy is a New Frequency*. New Mexico: Bear & Company, p. 97.

<sup>173</sup> Wise Russ (2004) *Goddess Worship*. ([http://www. Christianinformation.org/article.asp?artID-96](http://www.Christianinformation.org/article.asp?artID-96)).

<sup>174</sup> Mother Goddess ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mohter\\_goddess](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mohter_goddess)).

<sup>175</sup> Price, Paula. (2006) *The Prophets Dictionary*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 238.

There have been many different mother goddesses throughout history and in the present day, including such deities as the Blessed Virgin Mary (Roman Catholic), Shakti, or Devi the divine feminine force, Durga who is the warrior aspect of the Divine Mother (Hinduism), Gaia, the Greek Mother Goddess, Isis, Egyptian Goddess of Motherhood and Fertility, Aphrodite, or Venus in Roman Methodology, just to name a few.

Dr Pat Holliday, refers to the spirit of Lilith, a powerful sexual spirit, and a territorial spirit. She is equated with a “first Eve,” the feminine dark side of the divine goddess such as Isis, Astarte, the Black Madonna or Queen of Demons and other false gods. The myth of Lilith involves a totality-distorted version of the Biblical Creation and Adam and Eve.<sup>176</sup>

The New Age woman, the Goddess is life itself. She is the spirit that permeates the universe. Her image is one of sexual power, ecstasy, and spiritual mastery. “**She is deity,**” explains Marrs.<sup>177</sup>

Marrs further notes that she is the very same mystery woman who, after Eve, was glorified as the Mother Goddess in ancient Babylon. In Revelation the true identity of the other Goddess is exposed. Her name is Mystery Babylon.

***So he carried me away in the spirit into the wilderness: an I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and then horns. And the women was arrayed in purple and scarlet colour, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication: And upon her forehead was a name written, mystery, babilon the great, the mother of harlots and abominations of the earth. I saw the women drunken with the blood of saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus: and when I saw her, I wondered with great admiration.***

***Revelation 17:3-6***

---

<sup>176</sup> Holiday Pat (2007) Sexual Magic. Incubi & Succube. Asmodeus & Osmodeus. Florida: Agape Publishers, p. 39.

<sup>177</sup> Marrs Wanda (1989) New Age Lies to Women. Austin, Texas: Living Truth Publishers, pp. 16-17.

Marrs explains that the New Age movement and religion is Mystery Babylon, the last day's worldwide church of Satan. This Queen, who presides over this worldwide church, the Mystery woman of Sin, is as Marrs explains, Satan's Mistress, and she is ambitious and lust-filled, voluptuous and beautiful goddess. Satan wants every woman to be just like the goddess. He wants every woman to become his mistress, his unholy bride. We must become the goddess.

#### 10.4.1 The Goddess of Witchcraft

Practitioners of Witchcraft consider the goddess as the giver of life. Jean Shinoda Bolen,<sup>178</sup> M.D. in her book *Goddesses in Everywoman*, remarks: **"The Great Goddess was worshipped as the feminine life force deeply connected to nature and fertility, responsible both for creating life and for destroying life."**

Starhawk, the Berkely based witch referred to earlier, says in her bestselling book *The Spiral Dance*, that **"the model of the Goddess, who is imminent in nature, fosters respect for the sacredness of all living things. Indeed, she is Gaia, the earth goddess. Because of that, witchcraft claims itself as a religion of ecology. It claims its goal is harmony with nature so that life may not just survive, but thrive."**<sup>179</sup>

#### 10.4.2 Kali the Mother Goddess

Kali, the mother Goddess, also called the Goddess of Earth, Nature, Destruction, Creation and Renewal, is according to Michael Ford the Black Destroyer, as well as the nurturing mother.

---

<sup>178</sup> Bolen Jean Shinoda (1984) *Goddess in Everywoman*. San Francisco: Harper & Row, p. 21.

<sup>179</sup> Starhawk (1989) *The Spiral Dance: A Rebirth of the Ancient Religion of the Great Goddess*. NY: Harper & Row, p. 25.

The image of Kali is violent, chaotic, and bejeweled with skulls and decapitated heads, her rolling tongue promise both blood thirst and carnal abandonment.

Kali's sexual polarities are dramatically illustrated in depictions of Shakti in her pitch-black destructive appearance, squatting with necrophillic lust to absorb the erection of the dead corpse-white Shiva, prostate upon a funeral pyre.

She is frequently represented as a black demonic Goddess, often conceived as the ultimate form of deity. According to Ford, Kali is life giving, a nurturing and loving mother, granting ecstasy to those who invoke her in the rites of Tantra, through which the sexual combination of opposites set in motion the process of Creation.

Through the divine Woman the essence of Magic and Witchcraft is found.<sup>180</sup> She rules over sexual activities, dark magic, fear, revenge, regeneration and reincarnation.<sup>181</sup>

Uzorma states that occultists in the present age of man are within the "age of Kali," which is the age by which the men are ruled by Goddess Kali via the love of money, hypocrisy, quarrel, etc.<sup>182</sup>

## 10.5 Sex and Magic

Holiday continues that the fundamental principle of sex magic is the concept that the sexual energy, or libido.<sup>183</sup> Of humans is the most powerful force it contains, and harnessing the unique states that arise through sexual activity provides special experimental conduits for the transcendence of normal reality.

---

<sup>180</sup> Ford Michael W (2006) Book of the Witch Moon Choronzon Edition. Succubus Publishing, p. 96.

<sup>181</sup> Conway DJ (2002) Moon Magic: Myth & Magic. Crafts & Recipes. Rituals & Spells. Llewellyn Publication, p. 236.

<sup>182</sup> Uzorma Iyke N (2007) Exposing the Rulers of Darkness in Recognition of the Highest Power, pp. 70-72.

<sup>183</sup> Libido: Sexual urge or desire.

Holliday explains further that the fundamental applications of sexual magic concern the use of the orgasm. One type of sex magic is based upon the thought of releasing the orgasm.

## 10.6 Kundalini and Holy Sex

The practice of Tantra or sexual yoga is drawn into a person being able to incarnate as the goddess. Through sexual ritual, the woman becomes aware of, communicates with, and is guided by the Higher Self (demonic powers). Sex Magic, or Love Magic is described by the practitioners of this magic, as the attempt to bind the passions of another, or to capture them as a sex object through magical means rather than through direct activity.

Autor Geoffrey Parrinder<sup>184</sup> explains that Tantra was the rediscovery of the mystery woman, for every woman become an incarnation of the Shakti, the divine woman and mother **“...For Tantra the greatest energy was sexual, and the sexual organs represents cosmic powers..”**

Parrinder continues that sexual intercourse of any kind was treated in a ritual fashion, between husband and wife, or different partners, or with a temple girl. Sexual union was transformed into a ceremonial rite, through which human couples become a divine pair.

Kundalini Yoga,<sup>185</sup> or Kundalini Tantra or more commonly known in western cultures as Holy Spirit,<sup>186</sup> Kundalini is the energy of one's highest potential. Some have called this “spirit rising”, “serpent power” or the motivating, evolutionary force within us. The Hindu interpretation of the Kundalini is the Vital life force and very sexual in nature.

---

<sup>184</sup> Parrinder Geoffrey (1980) Sex and World Religions. London: Sheldon Press, p. 36-37.

<sup>185</sup> Kundalini Yoga: See Terms and Definitions

<sup>186</sup> This is not the Holy Spirit, know to Christians as one of the deities of the Trinity of God.

Schreck claims that Kundalini, which literally means “She who is hidden,” is the literal presence of the dormant goddess within every human body (male or female). Tantrikas teach that sexual ecstasy is the single most important trigger of the Kundalini experience. During the sexual rite, the physical transference of the Kundalini energy from one partner to the other can be experienced with all the force of an electrical shock.<sup>187</sup>

According to ancient Hindu religious teachings and yoga science, the Kundalini is responsible for sexual activity in a sublimated form, and higher consciousness. Kundalini, personified as a goddess and divine power, is often described as a serpent that sleeps at the base of the spine and, when aroused, darts upward, bringing enlightenment or pain.

It operates unconsciously until awakened through tantric sex, initiating the process of spiritual growth and enlightenment. According to Gene Kieffer, director of the Kundalini Research Foundation, Kundalini is the most powerful mechanism in the body because it is both energy and consciousness.

The Serpent of Fire is the symbol of Kundalini. In awakening the Kundalini, the objective is to ascend the serpent (powerhouse of energy) from the base of the spine, through all the seven chakras<sup>188</sup> and out through the crown chakra<sup>189</sup> at the top of the head.

## 10.7 Kundalini Awakening

Satan taught, and the New Age believes that sex is an important pathway to becoming the Goddess.

---

<sup>187</sup> Schreck, Schreck Nikolas; Schreck Zeena (2002) *Demons of the Flesh: The Complete Guide to Left-Hand Path Sex Magic*. Creation Books. ([www.creationbooks.com](http://www.creationbooks.com)) pp. 48-52.

<sup>188</sup> Seven Chakras: See Terms and Definitions

<sup>189</sup> Crown Chakra: See Terms and Definitions

They believe that through divine sexual intercourse (tantric sex) one can attain spiritual ecstasy and divinity. Unusual powers can be acquired if the sex act is conducted with the goddess in mind as can unholy thoughts and carnal desires.<sup>190</sup>

### 10.7.1 Shaktism and the Kundalini Awakening

Shaktism is a denomination of Hinduism that worships *Shakti* or *Devi* in her many forms, both gentle and fierce. Shaktas use mantra, tantra, yantra, yoga and puja to invoke cosmic forces and awaken the *Kundalini* Power. Shaktism is, along with Saivism<sup>191</sup> and Vaisnavism,<sup>192</sup> one of the three primary schools of Hinduism. Shaktism reveres Devi as the absolute, ultimate godhead. She is the Supreme Brahman itself. The “one without a second,” with all other forms of divinity, female or male, considered to be merely her diverse manifestations.<sup>193</sup>

According to tantra philosophy, of which *kundalini* is an intrinsic part, *Brahman*, the ultimate source, created the universe by dividing into two polarities. One is Shiva, which is the masculine and unmanifest energy that is the source of creation. The other is Shakti, his dynamic feminine component who manifests and support creation. These dual forces are also present in the human body. Shiva has his abode at the crown of the head, in the *sahasrara chakra*. Shakti, the life force, takes her place at the base of the spine, at the *mooladhara chakra*, where as Devi Kundali sleeps, curled in three-and-a-half coils.

---

<sup>190</sup> Marrs Wanda (1989) *New Age Lies to Women*. Austin, Texas: Living Truth Publishers, p. 183.

<sup>191</sup> Worship of Shiva, the compassionate One, is the oldest form of Hinduism that is still practiced. The male genitalia was worshipped in the prehistoric times in the form of *Linga* that later came to be identified with the god of fertility, Shiva. The final goal of Shaivism is realizing one's identity with Shiva in perfect union and non-differentiation. (<http://www.boloji.com/hinduism/021.htm>).

<sup>192</sup> Worship of Vishnu and his various avatars especially Rama and Krishna in a profoundly devotional form is the basis of Vaishnavism. Intense devotion to a personal god, Vishnu through Bhakti yoga is the path to salvation. (<http://www.boloji.com/hinduism/021.htm>).

<sup>193</sup> Shaktism. Wikipedia. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shakta>).



*Kundalini*, from the root word *kundala*, literally means 'that which is coiled.' She is often likened to a serpent, and is personified as a goddess, sometimes with the aspect of Durga (as creator), Kali (the destroyer) or Bhujangi (the serpent). In the Western world the Kundalini is symbolized by the medical symbol of the caduceus, the rod with two snakes coiled around it in spirals. At the top are two wings, which are images of Mercury or Hermes who are the messengers of the Gods. The caduceus is the symbol for healing, health, and transformation. The center rod symbolizes the spinal cord. In Yoga philosophy the center cord is called the Sushumna and it represents the grounding, neutral cord of the three parts of the rising Kundalini.

For the human being to attain union with Brahman, the two polar aspects of Brahman, Shiva and Shakti, must meet. As long as the two are separate, the psyche cannot be whole and the unhappiness of the human condition will prevail. According to Tantra, enlightenment is achieved when the sleeping goddess awakes and hastens to meet her lord, high up in the crown *chakra*. It is within the kundalini where contact is made between the infinite divine creative energy and the finite physical sexual energy. For the Soul to gain tis highest spiritual potential while incarnated in a physical form, the great mass of Kundalini energy locked in the root chakra must be released to travel up to the crown chakra. From this union of earthly and heavenly energies comes spiritual rebirth and wholeness.

This same phenomena has been recognized and described (in indigenous semantics) by nearly every culture in the world.

Dr Suzan Carroll explains: "When the Goddess Kundalini has traveled up the spine to meet her Divine Mate, the union of Spirit and Matter are consummated. Kundalini is known in the Eastern world as the Goddess Shakti. When Goddess Shakti is awakened, she sweeps us up in Her tremendous passion to reunite with Her Lord Shiva in the crown chakra.

The **Mystical Marriage** symbolized the combining of the male and female energies within our bodies and the awakening of our multidimensional consciousness. Then, we will be clear enough for our Soul to inhabit our physical form and live its Divine Purpose through us.”<sup>194</sup>

Nikolas Schreck claims the Kundalini is the hieros gammos, or divine marriage, played out within the body’s microcosm. It consecrates the wedding of Shiva and Shakti as a carnal union of sexual opposites between two physical bodies.<sup>195</sup>

## 11 CONCLUSION<sup>196</sup>

It is clear that sexual perversion is driven by Satan as part of his plan of the destruction of godly bloodlines. From a Biblical perspective, any sexual deviancy is considered a sin. Sin originated with Satan and which always result in consequences.

Sex in itself is not the reason why so many people and Christians are trapped in a sexual deviant lifestyle nor is it due to being inborn for ALL that God created was considered good.

Scholars fail to define sexual perversion. In essence it includes any and all immoral sexual thoughts – words uttered sexually perverse in nature – activities where one prostitute oneself for the sake of pleasure. It is not worshipping God, but sex and the god of self.

---

<sup>194</sup> Caroll, Suzan (2001) Kundalini and the Divine Mother. (<http://www.cabiz.net/heartlink/kundalini.htm>).

<sup>195</sup> Schreck Nikolas; Schreck Zeena (2002) Demons of the Flesh: The Complete Guide to Left-Hand Path Sex Magic. Creation Books. ([www.creationbooks.com](http://www.creationbooks.com)).

<sup>196</sup> Alchemy: “Alchemy is an ancient path of spiritual purification and transformation; the expansion of consciousness and the development of insight and intuition through images. Alchemy is steeped in mysticism and mystery. It presents to the initiate a system of eternal, dreamlike, esoteric symbols that have the power to alter consciousness and connect the human soul to the Divine.” (<http://www.crystalinks.com/alchemy.html>).

Psychologists fail to treat the root problem in that they can't perceive things of a spiritual nature, they also refuses to consider the demonological aspect of sexual perversion simply because they are blinded (Deuteronomy 29:29).

The Bible testifies to the spiritual inheritance of sexual sin through the bloodline is a reality and inevitable. Every sexually perverted word uttered along with immoral deeds can result in curses. Satan's through sexual immorality has brought many a Christian leaders to a fall destroying their lives, their families and their ministries.

***Satan wants to wipe out all knowledge and 'WORDS' of Jesus Christ, written or spoken. In this he targets a believer's mouth. To commit oral sex is to sexual pervert the mouth and opens the door to the "curse of fellatio" which incapacitates the person's mouth making it impossible for the person to proclaim the Word of God as well as well as speaking about God in front of others. People are often too afraid to speak about the Word of God in front of strangers and it is in this that a spirit of fear works in close relationship with this curse.***

"Live sex chat" over the phone is a clear indication of the "mouth" been corrupted and defiled where words of a sexually perverted nature is proclaimed as the person lives out his dark fantasies which usually result in acting out physically as-well as the person heeds to the lust of the flesh.

Numerous Christians struggle with oral sex and speaking perverse things thinking that it is ok for it is done within the confinement of marriage. The Bible is clear that it is a sin and that there is consequences to all sin; death.

**God wants to use our mouths as an "instrument to speak through" to reach the World, and the unsaved.** Our attitude should speak, "here I am Lord, please speak through me" as was the case with the Prophets of the Bible.

No Battle has ever been one through passivity. **Freedom from sexual perversion, addiction and or pornography but to mention a few starts with your mouth for deliverance is in your mouth and on your lips.**

**From this we see the fundamental importance of “the role of the mouthpiece” from captivity to freedom.** Contained in your mouth is the power to call on God, to repent, to show remorse and to speak life and death into this situation, casting out demons and breaking the curses. God will never force anyone to change; to give up that sin which befriended you. The message of the cross is this; ask and you will receive says the Lord.

2 Chronicles 7:14 reads;

***If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land.***

**2 Chronicles 7:14**

-----oOo-----



## *Deliverance and the Role of the Counsellor Pertaining to the Sanctification of the Mouthpiece Out of Bondage and Captivity to Verbal Victory*

---

***If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land.***

***II Chronicles 7:14***

### **1 INTRODUCTION**

Captivity dwells in passivity even when hope and faith are present, inaction to open one's mouth and call on to God will result in a battle lost.<sup>1</sup> To nurture appetites and relationships that are unnatural according to Biblical teachings are a form of enslavement.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ferrell Dr Ana Mendez (2009) *Regions of Captivity*. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, p. 31.

Sin has the potential to render a person in bondage, whether he is a compulsive liar, or whether he is ensnared in a sexual deviant life style. Sin is sin and God hates it. In reality, all forms of enslavement are because of sin.

No one person trapped in the clutches of Satan, blinded by sin, is able to accomplish the transition to freedom alone, for if he does not recognise the lie, how will he recognise the truth that Jesus can and wants to set him free?

The Bible teaches that the purpose of the “Law” contained in the Bible, is to expose sin. Why then do so many Christians think it is ok to tell a little “*white lie*” for the sake of the greater good if the Bible affirms that liars are amongst those who won’t inherit the Kingdom of God (Revelation 21:8). How can a believer praise and curse with the same mouth? A mouth that lies; how can it speak of loving Christ if there is no truth in a lie? Is something more sinister and evil behind the problem?

The deepest problems of Christians living a lie, can be attributed to the fruit of their lips, condemning themselves, or in the context of this thesis, due to the mouth been used as a sex organ for sexual gratification. These in question, requires a total process of divine transformation – the transformation of the inner man and the renewal of the mind as well as breaking any curses related to the persons mouth, an instrument God wants to speak through.<sup>2</sup>

A purely self-motivated effort of transformation will fail because of the deep and powerful roots of sexual perversion.<sup>3</sup> Change occurs only, however slowly, as the one in Captivity submit the struggle to God and Christian Counsellors who stand with them in the process of becoming whole.

All of mankind desire wholeness as the need for inner healing is experienced by everyone. The reality of the road to freedom is this; there is no instant answer; no magical formula and no easy solution.

---

<sup>2</sup> Malan Dr Christina EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God’s Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. SA: Self-published, p. 354.

<sup>3</sup> Comiskey, Andrew (1989) Pursuing Sexual Wholeness. USA: Creation House, p. 14.

It is only in the name of Jesus Christ that the Father will hear and fulfil each and every decree of prayer and petition for deliverance, restoration and inner healing.

The key to deliverance is to repent and for men to be awakened to the consciousness of the Father. Only in the name of Jesus Christ shall the Spirit of God pass through the “whole spirit and soul and body” to transmute the love and the cause of all that is below the righteousness of God in a person’s life.

Only in the name of Jesus Christ will the Holy Spirit transmute the cause of discord in a believer’s life, and banish the cord, the yoke, the burden of the principalities of the air keeping the soul in captivity in regions of dark places and spiritual prisons.

Those who sincerely submit to the Father, in accordance with the teachings of the Bible, are raised through the Holy Ghost Power to the realm of blessed perfection. These are they who have the bonafide power in the universe to live and have life in abundance as the Children of God, free from manipulations and strongholds of principalities and the powers of darkness. Matthew 16:17 reads;

***Blessed are you, for flesh and blood has not revealed this to you, but My Father who is in heaven.***

***Matthew 16:17***

In essence; all starts with the Father. The aim of this thesis is to expose deliverance for what it is, a tool to set the captives free for those who dare to expand and enlarge their vision being obedient to their Godly ordained calling.

Ignorance of the spiritual real is one of the main reasons why many are ineffective when it comes to what deliverance is and how it works.<sup>4</sup> In order for the life of Christ to shine from within, every believer must be set free from any and all unhindered blockages.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup> Ferrell Dr Ana Mendez (2009) Regions of Captivity. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries, p. 14.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid, p. 26.

In summary the answer of this thesis will be given in the following points:

- Jesus is the God that heals.
- The role of the counsellor in aiding the victim.
- Addressing the issue of the lying tongue with reference to the father of all lies.
- Addressing the issue of a mouth defiled through immoral sexual acts committed with the mouth.
- Sins and curses relating to the mouth as an instrument Satan wants to corrupt and use for destruction.
- The way out from bondage to freedom through fasting, prayer and deliverance and Spiritual.
- The fact that spiritual warfare is compulsory in the life of the believer.

For the purpose of this thesis, the following abbreviations and there meanings will be used right through this Chapter:

- C/C: Referring to the Christian Counsellor
- Victim: Referring to all who are living the lie, being under the influence of the strong man – the lying spirit; hence, everyone who is enslaved in some sort of sin related to their mouths.

## 2 JEHOVAH RAPHE – THE GOD THAT HEALS

The road back to God pertaining to Satan's onslaught on one's life can be summarized in these words by Mahatma Ghandi;<sup>6</sup> **"First they ignore you, then they ridicule you, then they fight you, and then you win."**

Mankind has a Healer or Deliver in Jesus Christ. The lord accomplished everything on the Cross for us to be victorious, unhindered and unstrained.

---

<sup>6</sup> Goodreads. (<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/conflict>).



Dr Manda Barnard<sup>7</sup> writes; “In the ministry of Divine healing it is challenging to remember and renew one’s mind to believe that, by His Stripes we are healed” (1 Peter 2:24).

## 2.1 Lord Do Not Delay

The psalmist cried out;

***But I am poor and needy: make haste unto me, O God: thou art my help and my deliverer; O LORD, make no tarrying.***

***Psalm 70:5***

King David knew the necessity of being close to God. The road to deliverance and inner healing can be summarized by the phrase; ***“you are my help – my deliverer – do not delay.”***

The role of the mouth as an instrument for deliverance and spiritual warfare is demonstrated in the life of David in his multitudes of petitioning to God.

In Psalm 6:4 we see his plea to God;

***Return, O LORD, deliver my soul: oh save me for thy mercies' sake.***

***Psalm 6:4***

The Lord is the amour to walk in freedom from any sin, bondage, sexual slavery, a lying tongue and all kinds of addictions.

The question is asked; what should we do, or rather, what should the victim do?

---

<sup>7</sup> Barnard Manda (2012) Exegesis Entailing Holy Spirit Life Transformation Concerning the Immanence of Divine Healing, p. 423

### 2.1.1 One in Need of Deliverance and Inner Healing

Humanity are to come to realization that if one is no threat to Satan it means one is most probably already destined for Hell, and that Satan succeeded condemning another soul. Coming to understanding the need for spiritual warfare and deliverance in the life of every believer is the reward for obedience - George McDonald.<sup>8</sup> The lesson is this; take physical action for ***“in passivity nothing is won”***.

The emphasis is on making petition to the Lord your God by acknowledging you are in need to be delivered from anything that hinders your walk with God, preventing you to step into your divine calling as a believer.

To be blunt; if you struggle with pornography, lying, stealing, or any kind of sexual deviancy including oral and or anal sex, the truth is, it is your choice! God does not tempt any one (James 1:13).

For those in captivity and enslavement to sin, it is not only a question of hearing the Word, rather, receiving it, believing it and making it yours. Sin concealed must be exposed; the victim must bring any and all sin to light through confession followed by repentance.

God demands it but He will not force you. The Truth exposes the lie along with any hidden secrets and curses. The captive must be open and prepared to confront any and all sin in his life. It is a call to walk in holiness with your Redeemer.

I Peter 1:16-19 reads;

***Because it is written, Be ye holy; for I am holy. And if ye call on the Father, who without respect of persons judgeth according to every man's work, pass the time of your sojourning here in fear: Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers; But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:***

***I Peter 1:16-19***

---

<sup>8</sup> Discipleship Quotes. (<http://www.tentmaker.org/quotes/discipleshipquotes.htm>).

Holiness has never been the driving force of many. It is, however, mandatory for anyone who wants to enter the kingdom of God.

#### **2.1.1.1 The Road Back to Holiness Through Repentance**

The victim's part is illustrated in the account of "The Prodigal Son" as portrayed in the book of Luke Chapter 15:11-32.

Despite the audacity of the younger son's request, the father grants it!

***And the younger of them said to his father, Father, give me the portion of goods that falleth to me. And he divided unto them his living. And not many days after the younger son gathered all together, and took his journey into a far country, and there wasted his substance with riotous living.***

***Luke 15:12-13***

This reflects the amazing indulgence that God shows toward us, exercising our free will. God knows that the misuse of our free will have no better results than it did with the prodigal son's misuse of his freedom.

The question is; what did the son actually give up? He rejected what his earthly father had to offer, paradise on earth; a place where inheritance and provision was secured to go, voluntarily, into exile into a gentile, pagan country where he could live loosely. Mankind in Adam and Eve also rejected what God had to offer which brought about the Fall of MAN (Genesis chapters 2,3).

He gave up which was rightfully his by inheritance so that he could live in sin and fund his sinful lifestyle by what he took from his father. God condemns such actions as stated in Revelation 2:4;

***Nevertheless I have somewhat against thee, because thou hast left thy first love.***

***Revelation 2:4***

Eventually the resources he had where exhausted and a hard time came.

***And when he had spent all, there arose a mighty famine in that land; and he began to be in want. And he would fain have filled his belly with the husks that the swine did eat: and no man gave unto him.***

***Luke 15:14,16***

Reduced to a state of hunger he had to subject himself to pagan humiliation, feeding swine. In this state of ***“isolation”*** he was worse off than the pigs for he would have been happy just to eat as well as the pigs but nobody gave him anything to eat. Alone in a ***“foreign country”*** he has been brought to a low state. He recalled how his father treated even his hired servants better;

***And when he came to himself, he said, How many hired servants of my father's have bread enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger!***

***Luke 15:17***

The road back to God the Father necessitates to ***“rise out of your state of depravity”***, that is, to take a conscious decision to change for the better in returning to the land of your Fathers provision, your first love.

James 4:8 reads; ***“Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded.”***

In addition God tells us, ***“return to Me your first love; If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land”*** (II Chronicles 7:14).

God says, ***“open your mouth and call to me and I will hear your voice”*** and forgive your sin. In this is illustrated the first and second step to follow out of captivity in to freedom.

In summary:

- Open your mouth and speak – keeping quite will solve nothing.
- Make petition - Call to God.
- Repent and ask for forgiveness of your sin.
- Acknowledge you want to come home to the Father who loved you first.

The principle of deliverance and inner healing is evident in Jesus' teaching when He said; ***"I will heal your land."***

What are we to learn from the actions of the prodigal son?

They teaches us the depths to which the misuse of our free will bring us, depraved, caught up in greed, lying persistently, sexual immorality - seeking after other gods in order to fulfil the lust of the eyes and of the flesh. If we are bent on leaving God, things will go bad; we will be found lost and humiliated in an uncaring world.

The hard reality of the matter is, the further we stay from the Father's loving care, the worse off we will be; in this our best course is to return to God and His forgiveness. Freedom and deliverance is impossible without making a conscious decision to do exactly this.

**And I will give you rest:** When the prodigal son returns to his father, we see God the Fathers compassion for all who has gone astray.

***And he arose, and came to his father. But when he was yet a great way off, his father saw him, and had compassion, and ran, and fell on his neck, and kissed him.***

***Luke 15:20***

The climax is found in Luke 15:21-22;

***And the son said unto him, Father, I have sinned against heaven, and in thy sight, and am no more worthy to be called thy son. But the father said to his servants, Bring forth the best robe, and put it on him; and put a ring on his hand, and shoes on his feet:***

***Luke 15:21-22***

In love which can't be measured, which the depth of can't be fathomed, in His love, we see the Father's compassion and love for His children. Nothing will be resolved if you hide from God, no deliverance, no inner healing and no healing of your land.

From verse 15 we see that Jesus not only wants to give us "new robes," but the "best robe" He has, bringing you out of captivity into freedom receiving the "seal" of the Holy Spirit as "a ring is put on your hand", receiving rest as you put on "the shoes of peace" (Luke 15:22b) given to us by the Father.

Interestingly there is a sense of mystery pertaining to deliverance in the sense that it is hidden from those who deem themselves wise. Matthew 11:25 reads; ***"At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes."***

Jesus goes on saying; ***"All things are delivered into Me from the Father"*** (Matthew 11:27a).

Jesus calls all to come into Him, to labour in the land that He destined for us and not in a foreign land out of His will for our lives.

Jesus recognizes that some will eventually go astray after other gods, yet He says, ***"return to Me you heavy laden, and I will give you rest"*** (Matthew 11:28).

- **The Seal of Promise**

This was a son who chose the unnatural above the natural, one who chose to live a lie by forsaking the truth and that what his father had in store for him to spend all he had on harlots giving in to sexual perversion. Yet, God reveals His heart for everyone who is in some form of captivity, ensnared in the clutches of Satan when He said; ***“thy brother was dead”*** (Spiritual death - Eternal death), and see ***“alive again”*** is he ***“who was lost”*** but now he ***“is found.”***

This shows us God’s reaction when we return and call out to be saved from sin. God doesn’t begrudge us for what we have done; He doesn’t take us back reluctantly; He takes us back joyously! Eagerly!

- **The Spiritual lessons learned:**

From this parable one can draw a number of spiritual lessons which are:

- One can turn his back on his heavenly Father and leave Him of one’s own free will.
- One can be a genuine son of God – who is spiritually “alive” – and be “lost” through sin.
- Mortal sin is a reality rendering one isolated and depraved, caught up in all kinds of perversion.
- One can end up in a foreign land outside of God’s will for your life.
- One can, however, return to the Father and be accepted by Him with great eagerness.
- Believers who have never fallen should not resent fellow brothers who come back; rather, share in the Father’s joy.
- Your inheritance is secure in heaven as you chose to stay with the Father.
- Deliverance and inner healing is possible, the choice is yours.
- God wants us in a place of rest and peace out of the clutches of sin.

Finally, the question arises; do you want to return to God; are you prepared to give up that sinful habit which befriended you?

### 3 THE CHRISTIAN COUNSELER

The three basic questions in life are; Who am I, What is my purpose and How do I go about keeping safe? The way to freedom for the sexually enslaved is identifying and dealing with the root problems and not by treating the symptoms.

#### 3.1 The Role of the Christian Counsellor

The Christian counsellor is a weapon in God's hands to work His will in the lives of Christians.

***And he said, The things which are impossible with men are possible with God.***

***Luke 18:27***

A Christian regardless of what the problem is or what life troughs at him, first and foremost, should seek God's face. What then is the role of the counsellor?

The role of the counsellor is to be the mediator between God and the counselee or the victim as referred to throughout this chapter. It is in this that the role of the "mouthpiece" can't be overlooked as an instrument through which God can do His miracles.

The counsellors' lips must portray a message of hope to stir life from within the victim by using words of life, hope, encouragement and victory. As in the words of Dr Jeff Owens; "**hope is a positive expectation**"<sup>9</sup>. As long as a person is breathing, there is hope.

---

<sup>9</sup> Owens, Dr Jeff (1998) Practical Counseling Principles for Christians. USA: Owens Publications, p. 77.



The Bible is

***But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that ye sorrow not, even as others which have no hope.***

***1 Thessalonian 4:13***

In general attempts of defining or describing a Christian counsellor tend to emphasize God's instrument that does the helping, the techniques or skills that are used, and the goal in leading the captive to freedom.

From this perspective the Christian counsellor is:

- A deeply committed person and spirit-filled child of God who hears the voice of the Holy Spirit.
- One who applies God-given abilities, skills, training, knowledge, insights and divine revelation.
- One who is called to guide the victim to personal wholeness in spirit, soul and body.
- One who utilizes every spiritual weapon to his disposal including the "Word" and the "mouth piece" as an instrument for God to do deliverance through spiritual warfare.
- One who enquires' of the Lord to be guided by the Holy Spirit as illustrated in the life of King David.
- One who Has the gift of discernment of spiritual things.

The success and effectiveness of Christian counselling rests on identifying problem areas of captivity including generational curses and applying divine revelation as prompted by the Holy Spirit.

Since the mind is where the battle against sin is won or lost, the soul of man is in need for divine healing given that he first comes to salvation in Christ Jesus. No deliverance is possible prior to being born-again.

### 3.2 Perception Verses Belief

The victim's perception should be weighed against his belief. Does the victim actually believe that God can free him? The question abounds; from which view point must the C/C address victimization?

According to Dr Mark Johnson<sup>10</sup> **“when children grow up in a dysfunctional—and consequently toxic—home environment, they sustain profound losses. Survivors of childhood neglect or outright abuse, suffer significant debilitation—physically, mentally, and spiritually at the hands of people who usually are closet to them.”**

In this rest the importance for the Christian counsellor to see the results of victimization not only from a psychological standpoint but a spiritual one.

The damage on a “spiritual level” is frequently the most difficult to recognize and to deal with because it is concealed in the mind. This spiritual damage involves an inability to think properly or to feel anything that bears witness to what is concealed in the heart in relation to the numbing strategies and the lies people have been taught make it impossible to cry out to God.

As survivors of abuse and neglect, the victims feel that something precious has been stolen from them, and rightly so. Frequently, these have lost their purity, innocence, wholeness, well-being, and sense of belonging. Those losses can result in a broken and contrite spirit.

***For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.***

***Isaiah 57:15***

---

<sup>10</sup> Johnson Dr Mark (1992) Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded. USA: Servant Publications, pp. 23, 24.

Due to being victimized, the victims came to numerous erroneous conclusions regarding their worth as human beings and the moral choices available to them. They grew up believing that they were the exception. Somehow they feel so damaged or despicable that they alone lacked whatever intangible qualities makes a human being “deserving” of love and acceptance. They never realized that they had intrinsic value or that they deserved to be loved and accepted simply by virtue of their being human.

When Satan can, and he does, abuse Christian’s circumstances to fill their minds with lies that they have no worth, they become vulnerable to all the other lies he imparts. If a Christian have no worth, then his feelings and perceptions must also be worthless. The thing is parents do set an example. If these convey the message that Mommy’s reliance on alcohol drugs or Daddy’s violent temper is “normal,” then it must be true, or so they are brought up to believe.

Here with lies the dilemma; it does not take long after people came to faith in Christ to realize they continue to struggle with “pre-conversion habits” of the flesh. In this is a warning; post-conversion problems often lead counsellors to doubt the salvation experience which is by no means automatic in that they fail to recognize that persistent sinful habits can be related to generational curses coming down the bloodline.<sup>11</sup>

### **3.3 Curses and Generational Influences**

According to Brand, a re-born spirit filled Christian still carries the familiarity of generational curses, influences, family-of-origin experiences, and a lifetime of choices. Family history is embodied in the habit structure of people’s lives. Every person has a history that includes righteous and evil deeds. Bloodline inherited problems and trauma sometimes provide the basis where the victims questions God’s love, care and ability.<sup>12</sup>

---

<sup>11</sup> Brand, Prof Dr Connie MJ. (2012) The Way Out of Captivity. Diepsloot Seminar. Pretoria.

<sup>12</sup> Ibid.

This thesis is in agreement with Brand, Barnard and Malan that generational curses can and do come through the bloodline if sin is not dealt with in the previous generation.<sup>13</sup>

### 3.4 The Counsellor and the Counselee

Setting the victim free demands that the counsellor move beyond simple sin management or behaviour modification. Effective Christian counselling must provide guidance and means by which both parties enter into an intentional, conscious spiritual decision in agreeing that freedom is possible in Christ Jesus; hence, the establishment of faith in Christ and His work on the Cross.

The effect will be the type of spiritual formation in the counselee that over time develops the type of character, mind, and holy habits that resonate with the life of Christ.

In short; God blesses the Church with various ministry offices (apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastor and teachers) for the purpose of equipping God's children and aiding them in the process of sanctification.

In the words of Graham Cooke<sup>14</sup>; **“Christians do not become new persons by changing their behaviour; rather they need to discover who they already are in Christ Jesus.”**

The penalty that is particularly related to inherited sin is spiritual death. In referring to Ephesians 2:1-3 Brand further notes that death always indicates a separation of some kind, so spiritual death means separation from the life of God in this present time.<sup>15</sup>

---

<sup>13</sup> Barnard, Dr Manda. (2012) Exegesis Entailing Holy Spirit Life Transformation Concerning the Immanence of Divine Healing, p. 78.

<sup>14</sup> Welton Jonathan (2012) Eyes of Honor. USA: Destiny Image, p. 16.

<sup>15</sup> Brand Dr Connie MJ (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to Destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness. Unpublished Doctorate Dissertation. P. 2187.

## 4 THE MIND

According to Derek Prince:<sup>16</sup> “The natural mind is self-centred; the renewed mind however, is God-centred for as long as we remain self-centred, we are prisoners of ourselves which necessitates the need to adopt a God-centred mind which liberates us from slavery.”

In the process restoration and healing, the impulsive liar has to do some things also. To change his life he must change the way he think. Behind every sinful deed, there is a sinful thought. Every behaviour is motivated by a belief and every action is prompted by an attitude. The Bible testifies to this, “***Be careful how you think; your life is shaped by your thoughts***” (Proverbs 4:23 – TEV). The mind of the victim has to be renewed.

Romans 12:2 reads;

***And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.***

***Romans 12:2***

Without the mind of the victim beginning to renew, he will not come to the knowledge of the Will of God for his life.

Hebrews 8:10 adds by saying;

***For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:***

***Hebrews 8:10***

---

<sup>16</sup> Prince Derek (2008) Protection from Deception. USA, Whitaker House, p. 173.

God promises that He will be there for him if he chooses God. God will put His laws into his heart and into his mind; He will be a Father to Him and he will be a child to Him.

Corinthians 2:16 reads;

***For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ.***

***Corinthians 2:16***

Philippians 2:5 adds by saying;

***Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus:***

***Philippians 2:5***

Jesus was a servant ever so obedient to the Father; obedient unto the death of the Cross. This is what God demands from the liar, the attitude of Jesus.

Ephesians 4:23 reads;

***And be renewed in the spirit of your mind;***

***Ephesians 4:23***

The victim's mind has to be renewed after he is born again followed by repentance. All the old thoughts and thought patterns have to be exchanged for new ones.

II Corinthians 10:5 reads;

***Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;***

***II Corinthians 10:5***

The inner life of the liar and his distorted thinking caused him to exchange the truth for a lie. Secondly those who sexually defiled their mouths, find that they are unable to effectively witness for Christ where as some cant witness at all due to a curse. In both these cases, the road to freedom starts by winning the battle in the conscious mind. All evil thoughts must be cast down and brought to submission to the Word of God.

Vain imaginations are those corrupted negative images and possibilities that form within the spirit of the mind when a person lingers on evil thoughts.<sup>17</sup> The warfare that attacks person's mind operates within his soul, particularly his thought life and within his imagination. The person has to refuse to let Satan introduce evil imaginary into his imagination. He has to bind every evil image and cast them down. The Bible teaches this principle;

Philippians 4:8 reads;

***Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honest, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, think on these things.***

***Philippians 4:8***

One of the new things that the liar should learn is to focus his thoughts and his mind on the things above. The person has to take control of his mind and thought life. II Timothy 1:7 reads;

***For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.***

***II Timothy 1:7***

The question is; what does the phrase "a sound mind" means? It is a mind controlled. Why is it so important?

---

<sup>17</sup> Malan Dr Christina EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God's Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. SA: Self-published, p. 354.

After being delivered, there is always possibility to return to the old ways of feelings and thinking. How is this possible? Because many have never fully understood the way of His, Christ's healing nor grasps the necessity to wage warfare to overcome continuing habits of wrong thinking, wrong feelings, lying and sexual deviance. Few have yet comprehended the depths of the battle to renew the conscious mind. It is not as simple as deciding to change the way one think.

Malan states; **"The mind owns deep ruts – long-practiced ways of thinking which are not overcome easily."**<sup>18</sup> Satan will attack and war for the victim's mind and his mouth. Demons will afflict his mind and try to put thoughts in his mind to manipulate him into expressing **"verbal diaree"** especially that of an immoral sexual nature or a lie.

The rule of the corrupt mind begin to dislodge when the victim receives the Lord Jesus Christ as his personal Lord and Saviour, when he hear, speak and do the Word of God. Therefore the carnal mind will fight back. It casts up seemingly wise thoughts, objections and scepticisms, trying to involve the captive in unnecessary reasoning and foolish sayings. The victim has to take control off his life and choose to respond to every thought, word spoken and imagination expressing it in light of the Word.

The question is; what does the Bible teach on the corrupt mind? Titus 1:15 reads;

***Unto the pure all things are pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled.***

***Titus 1:15***

Lying has opened many other doors for evil spirits trying to take complete control of the person's mind.

---

<sup>18</sup> Malan Dr Christina EM (2010) The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God's Purpose for Godly Bloodlines. SA: Self-published, p. 354.



One of the outflows of corrupt and defiled mind is speaking sexual filth usually leads to using the mouth as a sex organ amongst all things.

***And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled.***

***Colossians 1:21***

Evil speaking leaves the mind of the sinner alienated, far away from God. The Cross is the only way to be reconciled with God again.

***Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as other.***

***Ephesians 2:3***

“Loshon-Hora” paves the way to satisfying lusts and desires of the flesh and mind, which caused them to be violent in passion.

***This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that ye henceforth walk not as other Gentiles walk, in the vanity of their mind, Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart: Who being past feeling have given themselves over unto lasciviousness, to work all uncleanness with greediness.***

***Ephesians 4:17-19***

Ignorance and hardness of the heart of the part of the victim has caused him to be alienated from God and his understanding darkened. He has given his “**mouth**” over to speaking all uncleanness, greediness and lies.

***But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into the law sin which is in my members.***

***Romans 7:23***

Paul warns that the sinful nature always try to bring him back into the captivity of sin:

***For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.***

***Romans 8:5-8***

One way to combat this is to meditate on the Word of God. In John 17:19 Jesus said, ***“I sanctify Myself for them, that they also may be sanctified in Truth.”*** Jesus is the answer in that the truth is the only way by which he will be sanctified.<sup>3</sup>

#### **4.1 The Mind and Door Openers**

There are various things that can open doors for a spirit of Mind Control of which fear is on and colours the way you think. Everything in the mind is one-sided to reach a result pre-arranged by fear. Consider the Hebrew nation as she came out of Egypt. No matter how many miracles the people witnessed God do, they could not shake the spirit of fear which led to disobedience and ultimately their death.

#### **4.2 Evidences of Mind Control**

This spirit of Mind Control usually brings headaches as well as unteachableness, hardness of mind, stubbornness, depression, unbelief, and unwillingness.<sup>19</sup> Some Christians go through years of teaching but never learn anything.

#### **4.3 Deliverance From Mind Control**

Occult mind control is related to Old Testament witchcraft and the ruling spirit of witchcraft is Babylon or also known as the spirit of Jezebel. The table beneath refers to spirits used by the ruling spirit of Mind Control:

---

<sup>19</sup> Ing Richard (1996) Spiritual Warfare. USA, Whitaker House, pp. 237-238.

Bands on Head	Headaches	Mental Disease
Unbelief	Doubt	Faithlessness
Giant Squid	Tentacles	Chanting
Meditation	Strange Religions	Mantras
Hopelessness	Tiredness	Oppression
Exhaustion	Unconsciousness	Mental Blank

**Table 10:** Spirits used by Ruling Spirit of Mind Control<sup>20</sup>

In addition to the above spirits, you need to recognize that mind control opens the gates to other clusters of spirits; if a person falls for the belief that she brought about the death of her sibling, spirits such as Fear of Discovery, Self-Accusation, Condemnation, Self-Hate, Suicide, and Shame, might come in.

Below is a table of various other possible spirits to be evicted along with the ruling spirit.<sup>21</sup>

Stupidity	Error	Hypnosis
Cults	Blindness	Darkness
Compulsiveness	Strange Habits	Strange Clothes
False Holy Spirit	Strange Voices	Misunderstanding
Confusion	Depression	Passivity of Mind
Misleading Spirit	Disagreement	Passivity of Body
Disorderliness	Distraction	Disconcertedness
Untidiness	Bewilderment	

**Table 11:** Other spirits to be cast out along with ruling spirit

---

<sup>20</sup> Ing Richard (1996) *Spiritual Warfare*. USA, Whitaker House, p. 239.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid, p. 239.

#### 4.4 Meditation and the Mind

Meditation represents one of the most treacherous techniques ever devised by Satan. Satan even duped our schools into dumping prayer in favor of adopting meditation and chanting, all under the guise of relaxation techniques, mental awareness.

A very interesting book is Jessie Penn-Lewis' publication "*War On The Saints*." In her book, she exposes Satan's attacks on the minds and bodies of men and women by convincing them to "wait" on God by creating a passive mind and body.

We notice many schizophrenic patients "zoning out" even when they are not on drugs. These victims need to retake their minds by forcing themselves to concentrate on whatever they are doing. Once they adopt the habit of going passive, they are easily swayed by voices and ideas passed to them by Satan.

Satan also attempts to control men's minds through modern devices. Although the conscious mind cannot comprehend backward messages, the subconscious mind can. Psychologists also found that if you place a single frame with a message every twenty frames in a film, the conscious mind cannot pick it up. But the subconscious mind can.

Pictures of some sordid scene or satanic message can be cleverly hidden in commercial ads. Television, radio, movies, and magazines present demonic messages every day. Violence, rebellion and sex.

- The Word Of God

The Word of God is Truth and it brings faith (Romans 10:17). We need to have our minds constantly cleansed with the washing water of the Word. It is the Word that drives out deception and lies. We stand on the Word because it is Truth.

It is extremely difficult for Satan to deceive you if you have the Word of God buried in your heart. That is why we measure everything against the Word of God. If the idea or thought is contrary to the Word of God, it is not from God; it is a lie. Step by step, we need to be cleansed of all unrighteousness, all lies, and all things not of God. It is still the engrafted Word that is able to save our souls.

#### 4.5 Replacing Lies With Truth

Spiritual growth also refers to the process of replacing lies with truth. Jesus prayed, ***“Sanctify them by the truth; your word is the truth”*** (John 17:17 – NIV<sup>22</sup>). Sanctification requires divine revelation. The victim’s life is filled with lies and he must let God reveal these lies to him. When the lie is identified, the power of the lie is broken. Secret lies give the enemy the power over it.

The Lord said that He knows everything about the victim’s life; nothing can be hidden from Him (Daniel 2:22). Just as God allowed the Israelites to take over the Promised Land ***“little by little”***<sup>23</sup> so they wouldn’t be overwhelmed, He prefers to work in incremental steps in the life of the person; the same goes for deliverance.

Deliverance is not an instant fix; it is also a walk of sanctification with the Lord and is done little by little, as God shows. Deliverance is done when the victim is mature enough to keep his deliverance through a holy life and warfare.

Growth could be painful and scary; and new habits take time to develop. Perseverance is a Godlike attribute; do not be discouraged. God said, ***“These things I plan won’t happen right away. Slowly, steadily, surely, the time approaches when the vision will be fulfilled. If it seems slow, do not despair, for these things will surely come to pass. Just be patient! They will not be overdue a single day!”*** (Habakkuk 2:3 – LB<sup>24</sup>)

---

<sup>22</sup> NIV: See Abbreviations

<sup>23</sup> Deuteronomy 7:22; Exodus 23:23-30

<sup>24</sup> LB: See Abbreviations

Psalms 107:10-14 reads; ***“Such as sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, being bound in affliction and iron...they cried unto the LORD...and He saved them out of their distresses...brought them out of darkness and the shadow of death, and brake their bands in sunder.”***

The Lord is now bringing new light and fresh revelation to lead us to freedom and victory in every area of our lives. Until recent years, it was almost impossible to speak of demonic oppression in believer or suggest that a faithful Christian could have iniquity in him and be held prisoner in areas of his or her life.

The truth is that Jesus came not only to deliver us from sin, but from the power of darkness (iniquity) and to set all free from our bondage. This freedom doesn't happen automatically when we recite the sinner's prayer. We must truly nail our sins and iniquities to the cross to be delivered from the prisons of our souls and bodies.

In Hosea 4, the Lord said: ***“My people perish for lack of understanding...”***

The lack of understanding in this area has produced the bitter fruit of a powerless and defeated Christianity that is not producing the impact this generation demands. The sufferings of Christ have purchased our freedom and healing. When we choose to dwell with darkness, we allow a measure of our lives to remain in a shadow. However, Jesus calls us to live in the light, which is greater freedom, knowledge, and intimacy with the Lord.

King David wrote, ***“Bring my soul out of prison so I may praise their name:”*** (Psalm 142:7a). The words of the prophet Jeremiah also say ***“I am with you,” declares the LORD, “to save you”*** (Jeremiah 30:11).

Rejoice! God is raising and gifting His prophets and His people with deep spiritual knowledge to take us to victory in every part of our lives. As we put our faith in God, we can be confident that nothing can keep us from His touch and His love!

When we partner with The Father in breaking the ties of the oppressed, our light will shine for all to see as we proclaim the “Good News” (Isaiah 58).

This is an era of new revelation that will usher the Church into a true manifestation of His glory. Open your spirit to the Lord and decide once and for all to get rid of every hindrance that is stopping you from conquering your promised land, the fullness of your soul, and the use of your mouth as an instrument of holiness.

**Final Words:** Seeking sexual gratification can make one a slave of the forces of darkness.<sup>25</sup> Brand states that the only sexual act, which totally transcends every degree of manipulation, is that which fulfils God's command in Genesis 1:28. Demons of the occult realms are very much aware the sexual intercourse between a man and his wife, solely for procreation, cannot be manipulated. Opening the door to occultism and witchcraft operations through sinful sex where the enemy seeks full control of the mind and the mouth of a person.

Brand confirms that such people are further manipulated to seek for solutions through occultism or witchcraft operations, whereby they are then even further manipulated. Only the Father gives prefers solution to every problem of man through Jesus Christ.<sup>26</sup>

#### 4.6 The Spiritual Battle Pertaining to Strongholds and Freedom of the Mind

Dr Olukoya<sup>27</sup> in his wise words reveals; ***“In the spiritual world, you cannot afford to be silent. By closing your mouth, you keep your heavens closed. The rule is loud and clear: “No sound, no voice, no deliverance.”***

The battle is in the spiritual realm, losing the wrong things from your loved one's old nature and destroying the strongholds they have built to protect those things. Bind your loved ones to the blood of Jesus that the healing atonement of the blood will be constantly before and about them.

---

<sup>25</sup> Brand Dr Connie MJ (2009) From Bondage to Freedom. Conference held at Pretoria, 2 August 2009.

<sup>26</sup> Ibid.

<sup>27</sup> Olukoya Dr DK (2003) Your Mouth and Your Deliverance. Nigeria: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries, p. 31.

Bind them to the grace and love and mercy and power and authority and forgiveness and dying-to-self work of the cross. Bind their feet to paths of righteousness to steady their steps.

Cast down the wrong attitudes and patterns of thinking and their strongholds. Loose, shatter into minute fragments and lacerate the evil imaginations the enemy has set up in their minds.

A basic outline for binding and loosing prayers to be used: To hold them steady, bind the individual to the will of God, the truth, the blood of Jesus, the mind of Christ and the work of the cross. Bind the strong man, Satan.

Tearing down the strongholds: One can pull them out of the fire, but one have to continue losing their strongholds to keep them from voluntarily returning there by continue to loosen until the Holy Spirit reveals they have begun to take over the reins of their own deliverance.

One can only accomplish a complete stripping and tearing down of strongholds in your own old nature. A fellow believer can definitely and powerfully impact someone else's old nature, but one cannot completely crucify that old nature. One can bind them to the things of God, stabilizing and steadying them while their minds focus on what they're hearing from the mind of Christ. With prayers of losing, one can undermine the strongholds in their old nature and one can undercut the enemy's deceptions.

#### **4.6.1 Putting Down the Old Self**

Through believers prayers of binding and loosing, one are rolling away the stones and tearing off the old garments such as wrong attitudes, wrong patterns of thinking, wrong ideas and beliefs, wrong desires, wrong behaviours and habits and the power and effects of word curses and generational bondages. Once one lose these, then the final steps belong to the individual one have prayed for.



Lazarus did not roll away his own stone; Jesus told the people to do it. Lazarus heard Jesus' voice call him, he stepped out, still bound in the old garment.

People around Lazarus had to lose the grave clothes and set him free. After the people obeyed this command, they stepped back and Lazarus walked fully forth into life.

There is nothing that stands between one's loved ones and God that cannot be loosed:

- Internal Sources of Influence:
  - 1) Wrong attitudes
  - 2) Wrong patterns of thinking
  - 3) Wrong beliefs
  - 4) Wrong ideas
  - 5) Wrong desires
  - 6) Wrong behaviors
  - 7) Wrong habits
- External Sources of Influence:
  - 8) Word curses
  - 9) Generational bondages

Every one of these sources of negative influence is eagerly nurtured and reinforced by Satan's devices.

On the next page is a prayer a believer can use to disrupt Satan's hold on himself or someone else's life:

Pray as follows:

*"In the name of Jesus Christ, I bind \_\_\_\_\_'s body, soul and spirit to the will and purposes of God for his/her life. I bind \_\_\_\_\_'s mind, will and emotions to the will of God. I bind him/her to the truth and to the blood of Jesus. I bind his/her mind to the mind of Christ, that the very thoughts, feelings and purposes of His heart would be within his/her thoughts. I bind \_\_\_\_\_'s feet to the paths of righteousness that his/her steps would be steady and sure. I bind him/her to the work of the cross with all of its mercy, grace, love, forgiveness, and dying to self.*

*"I loose every old, wrong, ungodly pattern of thinking, attitude, idea, desire, belief, motivation, habit and behavior from him/her. I tear down, crush, smash and destroy every stronghold associated with these things. I lose any stronghold in his/her life that has been justifying and protecting hard feelings against anyone. I lose the stronghold of unforgiveness, fear and distrust from him/her.*

*"I lose the power and effects of deceptions and lies from him/her. I lose the confusion and blindness of the god of this world from \_\_\_\_\_'s mind that has kept him/her from seeing the light of the gospel of Jesus Christ. I call forth every precious word of Scripture that has ever entered into his/her mind and heart that it would rise up in power within him/her.*

*"In the name of Jesus, I lose the power and effects of any harsh or hard words (word curses) spoken to, about or by \_\_\_\_\_. I lose all generational bondages and associated strongholds from \_\_\_\_\_. I lose all effects and bondages from him/her that may have been caused by mistakes I have made. Father, in the name of Jesus, I crush, smash and destroy generational bondages of any kind from mistakes made at any point between generations. I destroy them right here, right now. They will not bind and curse any more members of this family.*

*"I bind the strong man, Satan, that I may spoil his house, taking back every material and spiritual possession he has wrongfully taken from \_\_\_\_\_. I lose the enemy's influence over every part of his/her body, soul and spirit. I lose, crush, smash and destroy every evil device he may try to bring into his/her sphere of influence during this day. I bind and lose these things in Jesus' name. He has given me the keys and the authority to do so. Thank you, Lord, for the truth. Amen"*

In Summary:

1. Whether or not loved ones want help is not the issue. Strongholds keep them from wanting help and strongholds can be dealt with through loosening prayers.
2. Those who refuse help are "not in their right minds," which can be dealt with by binding their mind to the "right mind," the mind of Christ.
3. It is God's will that "whosoever" should be saved. Since Satan's goal is to control mankind's will, you can best thwart his effort by binding "whosoever's" will to the will of God.

4. Loved ones under the blindness of the enemy either do not recognize truth any longer or never knew it. Binding them to truth helps them to “see.”
5. When one pull others out of the fire, binding stabilizes them and losing strongholds keeps them from returning there.
6. Binding and losing can shatter and destroy the effects of mistakes one made as a parent, including those now affecting grandchildren as well.
7. Binding and losing prayers can impact world leaders, government officials. Use them to bind all Christians who desire freedom from captivity.

## 5 SPIRITUAL WARFARE AND THE WAY TO FREEDOM PERTAINING TO FAITH, PRAYER AND FASTING

This thesis will deem to proof that there is a road to freedom from bondage and captivity to sexual perverseness with the emphasis on the Jezebel spirit and all related spirits.

### 5.1 The Spiritual Weapons of War

The three main weapons pertaining to spiritual warfare includes prayer, faith and holiness.

The Bible is clear: “***For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war according to the flesh. For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal but mighty in God for pulling down strongholds***” (2 Corinthians 10:3-4).

Peter Wagner<sup>28</sup> in his book “Engaging the Enemy” is quoted in saying; “**The central, foundation activity for spiritual warfare is prayer. In one sense prayer is a weapon of warfare, and in another sense it is the medium through which all of the other weapons are utilized.**”

---

<sup>28</sup> Wagner Peter C (1991) Engaging the Enemy. U.S.A: Regal Books, pp. 7,8.

### 5.1.1 The Mouth Piece as an Instrument for Spiritual Warfare

The Lord has fashioned the workings of the universe in a way such that there is provision of tools for everything that needs to be done. In the same way, God has fashioned the tongue as a tool for holy purposes and not to be abused.

Luke 21:15 reads;

***For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.***

***Luke 21:15***

In Proverbs 18:21 adds; “***Death and life are in the power of the tongue: and they that love it, shall eat the fruit thereof***”

This member of the body can also be an instrument of destruction pertaining to the spirituality of man the mouth has caused more problems than any other organ in the body. The problem is that many mouths are working overtime when the brain is on vacation, when the eyes are set on the things of this world and the lust of the flesh.

Generally, whenever a person is getting mentally deranged, it is through the tongue that it first manifest. Reality necessitates that one is no longer a master of his words once they have left his mouth. In this is the principle that one's words comes one's master.

***Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap.***

***Galatians 6:7***

The mouth can assassinate one's breakthroughs. It is there for a case of; if you cannot improve on your silence, keep silent.

Whenever there are many words uttered there is usually little sense there and it shows poverty of thoughts. Whenever a Christian speak; not only is his heart, but his mind on parade.

### 5.1.2 Provocation at the Corridor of Breakthroughs

The enemy has a way of preventing breakthroughs through the use of Christians tongue. Satan knows that what becomes of a Christian leader is largely determined by the words he speaks or what other speak of him.

A person will be condemned or justified by his own words. The words one speak determine one's destiny. In essence the tongue has the power to **do** and **undo**.

***No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the LORD, and their righteousness is of me, saith the LORD.***

***Isaiah 45:17***

Christians are to condemn, using their mouths, any tongue that rises against them in judgement. Those who keep quiet, the enemy will take advantage of.

The question abounds; what is the lesson to be learned?

That **“where silence reigns, breakthroughs are buried”!**

Considering the account of Goliath, he knew the principle of the tongue; he looked at David and cursed him by his own gods.

David did not keep silent; he cursed him in return; in the name of Jehovah. David did not allow Goliath to have the final say and he overcame the battle in word spoken firstly which manifested in Goliaths at David's hand.

Negative sounds result in destruction; positive sounds result in life, blessings and deliverance.

***The hand of the LORD was upon me, ..., and set me down in the midst of the valley which was full of bones, ..., and, lo, they were very dry. And he said unto me, Son of man, can these bones live? And I answered, O Lord GOD, thou knowest. Again he said..., Prophecy upon these bones, and say..., O ye dry bones, hear the word of the LORD. Thus saith the Lord GOD unto these bones; Behold, I will cause breath to enter into you, and ye shall live: So I prophesied as I was commanded: .... and behold a shaking, and the bones came together, bone to his bone. And when I beheld, lo, the sinews and the flesh came up upon them, ... but there was no breath in them. Then said he..., Prophecy unto the wind, ..., son of man, and say..., Thus saith the Lord GOD; Come from the four winds, O breath, and breathe upon these slain, that they may live.***

***Ezekiel 37:1-9***

God spoke the world into existence. Dr D.K. Olukoya<sup>29</sup> rightfully declares; “No person can eat the law of utterance” victory is in your mouth.

The power to rebuke Satan is in the tongue. The only thing Satan will respond to is the Word of God; for it is written:

But he answered and said, It is written, “***Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.***” (Matthew 4:4)

### **5.1.3 Propheying in Problem Areas**

If a person confess something negative, (i.e. The problem is still there after praying), Satan will seize that opportunity to stage a “come back.” A person’s negative confession creates an open door for the enemy to use. The moment a person combines his belief with what he say in his mouth (i.e. confession), it produces faith!

---

<sup>29</sup> Olukoya Dr DK (2003) Your Mouth and Your Deliverance. Nigeria: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries, p. 31.

If there is one thing to be learned, it is this: “faith in combination with the power of words, move mountains.”

As mentioned in Chapter One; words are spirit and they are life.

A persons words are powerful seeds; as they grow, one reaps what one says. If it is freedom, one will reap freedom. If it is poverty and failure that is what one will reap.

It is highly impossible to confess wealth and reap poverty; neither is it possible to confess breakthrough and reap frustration. The only thing which can block one’s prayer from coming to life is a wrong full or selfish motive. A Christian cannot be fed up with prayers for deliverance and expect to be delivered; his words are forces of deliverance, keep on sowing the right words; they are seeds of life.

#### 5.1.4 Spiritual Warfare and Words of Commitment to God

This principle is demonstrated in Isaiah 44:26 which reads; ***“That confirmeth the word of His servant and performeth the counsel of His messenger that saith of Jerusalem: Thou shalt be inhabited and to the cities of Judah. Ye shalt be built and I will raise up the decayed places thereof.”***

Our Father in heaven is committed to perform that which is released from the mouth of His children. However He has nothing to act upon until they have uttered a word.

The same principle is illustrated in Mark 16:20: ***“Ant they went forth and preached everywhere, the Lord working with them and confirming the word with signs following.”***

In both cases; God confirmed the WORDS that the Apostles spoke, by WORKING miracles according to what they SAID.

### 5.1.5 What is Spiritual Warfare?

Wagner<sup>30</sup> in response to the question adds as follows; **“If prayer is the central activity for spiritual warfare, the central attitude for those of us in the battle is faith and obedience.”**

Spiritual warfare is not about praying repetitive prayers every Sunday. It is casting down strongholds, loosening soul ties, taking captive every thought in disobedience to God’s word and it all starts with opening the mouth and declaring the right words. Grounded as absolute faith in Christ in the correct areas of one’s life.

***We having the same spirit of faith, according as it is written, I believed, and therefore have I spoken; we also believe, and therefore speak;***

***II Corinthians***

***4:13***

***That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.***

***Romans 10:9,10***

In essence; there is no proof of belief unless the person open his mouth and speak out.

### 5.1.6 The Enemy is Listening

Demons on the other hand also act upon what a people says. By you declaring: “I am sick;” they deliver sickness.

Declaring sexual perverseness things with your mouth pave the way for the flesh to sin. Ecclesiastes 5:6 affirms: **“Suffer not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin.”**

---

<sup>30</sup> Wagner, Peter C (1991) Engaging the Enemy. U.S.A: Regal Books, p. 8.



Should one experience consistent affliction; it might well be because of things one has proclaimed in ignorance. Below is a basic but by no means a comprehensive list of some declarations one can apply.

- **Declarations of Deliverance:**

- 1) **Speak determination into your life:** The woman with the issue of blood determined to be healed by touching the hem of the Lord Jesus Christ's garment. She said: "*If I may touch but His clothes. I shall be whole.*" (Mark 5:28).
- 2) **Speak destruction unto evil plantations:** Anything you don't want in your life, you speak to it (all by name) and burn the roots of the enemy into ashes.
- 3) **Speak protection unto yourself, your property and everything that concerns you:** Barricade and your and your family's lives with the fire of the Holy Ghost against the powers of the oppressors.
- 4) **Speak victory and testimony into your life or the area of concern:** When you do it regularly and consistently. You need to reorientate yourself and your mouth into speaking positive things into your life.

As mentioned previously, those who struggle to pray allowed in front of people, it can be due to demonic spirits contesting the person's voice.

The following declaration is suggested:

Every evil power contesting my voice in the name of Jesus Christ be silent!

## 5.2 Faith and Prayer: A Union of Holiness

The question is; what does faith do? Through faith one establishes one's relationship with God. One is saved by grace through faith (Ephesians 2:8).

In essence; Faith cannot be understood apart from obedience to God. The union of faith and obedience can be summed up in one word: holiness.

Faith demands that a Christian makes a verbal declaration with his mouth. Part of the power in prayer is making powerful confessions with your mouth and pronounce each out loud up to three times.

### 5.2.1 The Aspect of Holiness Pertaining to Spiritual Warfare

Holiness means being so full of God that there is no room for anything else! One no longer loves the world or the things of the world.

Instead of doing the things of the world, one does the will of God. I John 2 summed it up in the context of spiritual warfare: “***You are strong and the word of God abides in you, and you have overcome the wicked one***” (I John 2:14), the god of the world and all his temptations.

If one pray with an attitude of faith and obedience, the specific weapons which God has given Christians for spiritual warfare will be effective in defeating Satan. One of these weapons is:

- Praying and asking in the Name of Jesus

There are several Biblical references which refer to the importance of Jesus’ name. Mark quotes Jesus as saying that one must cast out demons in His name (Mark 16:17). In addition Jesus said, “***If you ask anything in My name I will do it***” (John 14:14). An authority is given to Jesus the name which is above every name (Philippians 2:9).

Other weapons include fasting, the Blood of Jesus, being in agreement with God’s word and praise and worship.

### 5.3 Binding and Loosing Pertaining to the Area of the Mind in Surrendering Wrong Desires, Wrong Attitudes and Ungodly Habits

Olukoya<sup>31</sup> states; “If one wish to know the mind of a man, just listen to his words and one will know the kind of person he is. This is sure, one’s words will colour one’s life.”

The Question arises; can binding and loosing prayers be extended to the unsaved person as well? Liberty Savard<sup>32</sup> an ordained minister states that these prayers are very effective for unsaved, backslidden and rebellious loved ones.

The Bible teaches; “***Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life. And of some have compassion, making a difference; and others save with fear, pulling them out of the fire...***” (Jude 21-23).

Binding ones will to the will of God and one’s mind to the mind of Christ helps one achieve the former part of this command.

The question is; how to reach into the fire of Satan’s kingdom to pull souls out which don’t want to be helped?

The reason why it might be related to the fact that these souls are not in their right mind, hence, they don’t have the mind of Christ. Souls who are confused experience, guilt, unbelief, anger, depression, deception and/or any other form of harassment are captives of their natural carnal minds controlled by their fleshly nature.

Romans 8:1 teach that those who walk according to the flesh will be condemned. What can Christians do to help these souls?

---

<sup>31</sup> Olukoya, Dr D.K. (2003) Your Mouth and Your Deliverance. Nigeria: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries, p. 27.

<sup>32</sup> Savard Liberty S (1992) Shattering Your Strongholds. USA: Bridge-Logos Publishers, p. 163.

### 5.3.1 The Right Mind: Having the Mind of Christ

Having the right mind refers to one who;

- Accepts and believe in the Word and its promises (Act 17:11).
- Is capable of obeying the law of God (Romans 7:25).
- Has the mind of Christ, who is capable of transforming a person (Romans 12:2, I Corinthians 2:16; Philippians 2:5).
- Has a willing mind (II Corinthians 8:12,19).
- Has a sound mind (II Timothy 1:7).
- Shows a renewed attitude (Ephesians 4:23; Matthew 3:8)

In other words; the “right” mind is in unity with the mind of Christ Jesus. Any Christian can partake of that unity, it is just a matter of desiring to do so and walking in the spirit (Romans 8:1).

Sadly though not all believers are willing to get this close to the mind of Christ. To surrender one’s thoughts to Christ’s means giving up ungodly patterns of thinking and attitudes regardless how firmly entrenched or deserved they may seem.

The question still remains; how can a Christian help those who don’t have the right mind? In loving correction present the futility of their ungodly mind set to them by backing it up with scripture. The idea is not to see the wrong in these people, rather to identify the spirit behind the wrong in them and pray accordingly.

Christians can also stand on the promise of Matthew 16:19, “***Whatsoever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven...***”, and bind their minds to the mind of Christ. God will bind their minds to Christ’s mind in heaven and their thought life will show a change of heart. Christians are to plant the seed, God will give the water through the Holy Spirit.

### 5.3.2 The Implications of the Term “Whosoever” as Seen in a Biblical Perspective in Relation to Authority

God wants to answer Christians prayers for their unsaved loved ones. The Word teaches; He “**...so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that WHOSOEVER believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved**” (John 3:16-17).

The Bible is also clear that God is “**...longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance**” (II Peter 3:9). Paul exhorts believers that prayer be made for all men, “**For this is good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour; Sho will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth**” (I Timothy 2:3-4).

God yearns for the “whosoever” to be saved and come into the knowledge of His truth. Satan’s goal is to bend the will of “whosoever,” you can best thwart his efforts by binding “whosoever’s” will to the will of God. Satan will try to break that bond by offering the Babylonian system of this world hence, he will harass the old nature.

The harder cases however are apathetic, full of pride, in denial, self-sufficient and rebellious of nature. II Corinthians 4:4 reads “**...The god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.**”

From this verse is clear, these people do not recognize truth any longer or never knew it. They do not have the mind of Christ, nor can they see, believe or understand the will of God.

In conclusion; bind them to the truth and loose wrong patterns of thinking and beliefs in order for them to receive the truth. Bring these loved one’s before God daily and claim their souls from the fire through using the spiritual weapons to one’s disposal.

## 5.4 The Battle of Fasting

The term fasting refers to voluntary abstaining from food and drink for a given period of time.

Wagner<sup>33</sup> with regards to the relation between spiritual warfare and fasting writes as follows; **“some forms of spiritual warfare require fasting as a prerequisite for victory.”**

Jesus explained to His disciples; **“*This kind does not go out except by prayer and fasting*”** (Matthew 17:21).

In adding; the highest power encounter in Biblical history was Jesus’ temptation in the wilderness where He fasted for 40 days. Did that weaken Him? Yes, it weakened Him physically, but it strengthened Him spiritually. Paul says, **“*When I am weak, then I am strong*”** (II Corinthians 12:10).

Christians must be careful that they take the proper attitude toward fasting as a privilege which draws them closer to God and makes us more sensitive to the voice of the Holy Spirit.

## 5.5 Fasting

In agreeing with Elmer Towns<sup>34</sup>; the purpose for fasting is **“breaking every yoke”** in conquering all mental and emotional related problems and fears that would weaken the spirit of the believer.

Fasting is a spiritual discipline designed to “loose the bonds of wickedness” in breaking free from strongholds that keep believers in bondage.

---

<sup>33</sup> Wagner, Peter C (1991) Engaging the Enemy. U.S.A: Regal Books, p. 11.

<sup>34</sup> Towns, Elmer (1996) Fasting for Spiritual Breakthrough. U.S.A.: Zonder Van, p. 7.

- The Secret Source of Power

Dr Laura De Giorgio<sup>35</sup>; a hypnotherapist<sup>36</sup> refers to a spiritual fast as the secret source of power obtainable via meditation, whereby a person focus all his thoughts on what is external and within a person. This New Age<sup>37</sup> teaching contradicts Colossians 3:2 stating that Christians should “set their minds on things that are above and not on things that are below.” Joshua 1:8 ads; ***“This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.”***

Fasting is a process of seeking God face and enquiring off the Lord pertaining to issues of life and death. Seeking ones inner thoughts and opening the mind to the supposed “secret source of power” is nothing else than opening a door for demonic activity in ones live and becoming demon possessed.

Watchman Nee<sup>38</sup> in his book “The Spiritual Man” lists five ways of giving control of one’s mind to Satan;

- By not daily meditating on God’s word.
- By deliberately considering and living out sin in one’s mind.
- Through willful ignorance of God’s truth’s and moral absolutes.
- By accepting any suggestion in the mind as if from God without questioning it.
- By deliberately blanking one’s mind to receive spiritual knowledge from mediums and spirits as well as the dead (through necromancy or divination).

---

<sup>35</sup> Spiritual Fasting (<http://www.in5d.com/spiritual-fasting-a-source-of-power.html>)

<sup>36</sup> **Hypnotherapy:** A form of psychotherapy utilized to create unconscious change in the patient in the form of new responses, thoughts, attitudes, behaviors and/or feelings. It is undertaken with a subject in hypnosis. A person who is hypnotized displays certain unusual characteristics and propensities, compared with a non-hypnotized subject, most notably heightened suggestibility and responsiveness. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/hypnotherapy>).

<sup>37</sup> New Age: See Terms and Definitions

<sup>38</sup> How Satan Gains Control of the Mind (<http://www.layevangelism.com/reference/spiritual-warfare/spiritual-warfare7.htm>).

Christians are instructed to set their minds on the Spirit and not the flesh:

***For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.***

***Romans 8:6-8***

God does nothing in secret, God has no hidden agenda; the Holy Spirit is the one true power source in what the Spirit will guide one into all truth (John 16:13). The question still remains, where did fasting originate and who instigated this principle?

In the words of Pope Shenouda<sup>39</sup> III fasting is the first commandment known to humanity for God instructed Adam to refrain from partaking of the fruit of the tree knowledge of good and evil (Genes 2:16,17) but allowed mankind to eat from the rest. He states by abstaining from food, humanity rises above the level of the physical body and above matter, and that this is the wisdom fasting<sup>40</sup>.

Had mankind succeeded in triumphing over the body and the desire for that which God prohibited and controlled his bodily senses that saw the forbidden fruit as an appetizing sight, it would have proven that his soul had overcome his bodily desires. Regardless, Eve's lust of the eyes dominated over her and together with Adam's disobedience brought about mankind's fall.

This set the course for humanity to engage in several other bodily sins, including sexual immorality hence, the condemnation of those who walk after the flesh and not the spirit (Romans 8:1).

Concerning temptation; Jesus Christ addressed this particular point, to overcome the desire for food in times of fasting as well as every other temptation Satan offered.

---

<sup>39</sup> Shenouda Pope H.H. III (1997) The Spirituality of Fasting. Dar El Tebaa El Kawmia, p. 9.

<sup>40</sup> Ibid, p. 10.



Christ illustrated the principle that man was not a mere body but also a soul nourished by **“every word that proceeds from”** the **“mouth of God”** (Matthew 4:4). In essence, fasting is not a new spiritual principal introduced in the New Testament but an old commandment. Deuteronomy 8:3 states as follows;

***And he humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that he might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the LORD doth man live.***

***Deuteronomy 8:3***

King David's life was one of prayer and fasting; ***“I humble myself with fasting”*** (Psalm 35:13); ***“I wept and chastened my soul with fasting”*** (Psalm 69:10), and ***“My knees are weak through fasting”*** (Psalm 109:24). King David also fasted for breakthrough pertaining to his sons' health (II Samuel 12:16).

The principle of fasting and prayer by the Apostles (Acts 13:2,3); ***“As they ministered to the Lord and fasted”***, the Holy Spirit made verbal proclamation and said; ***““Now separate to Me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them.” Then, having fasted and prayed, and laid hands on them, they sent them away.”***

Jesus in addressing the disciples referred to two important elements regarding fasting as-well as its relation to casting out devils;

Matthew 17:17 reads; ***“O faithless and perverse generation”***

- ***“Faithless”*** firstly implies a faithless generation and reiterates that fact that Christians will accomplish nothing without faith in Jesus Christ.
- ***“Perverse”*** refers to a time where the people were caught up and practiced all kinds of perverse and wicked things.

In addition, Matthew 17:19-20 states; “***Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out? And Jesus said unto them, Because of your unbelief...***”.

- “***Unbelief***” implies faithlessness which illustrates the need for absolute and total faith in Jesus Christ in order to expel demons. The same apply for breaking soul ties, strongholds and setting the captives free.

Matthew 17:21 emphasises the relation between prayer and fasting not only concerning expelling evil spirits but spiritual warfare in general; “***However, this kind does not go out except by prayer and fasting.***”

Such is the power and need of prayer and fasting to accomplish spiritual breakthroughs that it was not only confined to individuals, but to marriage as well.

***Defraud ye not one the other, except it be with consent for a time, that ye may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency.***

***I Corinthians 7:5***

Fasting and prayer go side by side. Without prayer, fasting is nothing more than starvation or an exercise in dieting. With prayer, fasting enables you to discipline your body. It helps you to mortify the evil desires of your flesh. It helps your spirit to come alive. Jesus affirmed that fasting is appropriate for His followers in Luke 5:35; “***But the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them, and then shall they fast in those days.***” In adding Psalm 109:24 reads; “***My knees are weak through fasting; and my flesh faileth of fatness.***”

**Spiritual Fasting**<sup>41</sup>: A Secret Source of Power by Dr. Laura De Giorgio a well-known and respected hypnotherapist.

---

<sup>41</sup> Spiritual Fasting (<http://www.in5d.com/spiritual-fasting-a-source-of-power.html>)

Natalie Nichols<sup>42</sup>, founder of “Shades of Grace Ministries” relating to fasting holds that; “When you engage in a fast, you are wrestling for control of your life.” Nicole quotes Dr Elmer Towns in saying; **“When you make a choice to fast, you strengthen yourself to stand against a force that has enslaved your spiritual appetite.”**

The path to freedom for the sexually enslaved starts with confessing the problem with one’s mouth, followed by making a choice to be delivered from the external powers responsible for one’s bondage.

- Steps to deliverance in addition to fasting include:
  - Renounce Counterfeit Control for all sexually related sins.
  - Acknowledge Self-Deception in that Satan binded you through ways justification.
  - Cut all soul ties relating to social sin on the father and mother side up to 10 generations.
  - Submit to prompting of the Holy Spirit.
  - Take personal responsibility
  - Disown sinful influences which can include certain friend groups and family members etc.

By no means is this a comprehensive list of steps, rather a guide which can be followed. Most importantly, there is no exact formula, hence adhere to the voice of the Holy Spirit and apply the spiritual tools to one’s disposal and follow the practical steps applicable.

## 6 DEALING WITH HIDDEN CURSES

The ancient as well as the modern day idol worshippers have only succeeded in adding embellishment to what God already cursed.

---

<sup>42</sup> Breaking Bondage, The Disciple’s fast. (<http://www.shadesofgrace.org/2010/01/02/fasting-day-19-breaking-bondage-the-disciples-fast/>), p. 6.

The curse placed on idol worship ends up affecting various parts of the body. If you or your ancestors were into idol worship, you are cursed.

The Bible states; ***“They that make them are like unto them. So is everyone that trusteth in them”*** (Psalm 115:8).

## 6.1 Idolatry

The most serious curse hanging over the heads of men and women is the curse of idolatry. The question is; what does the Bible teach in this regard?

The Bible teaches a very serious indictment against all forms of idolatry in Psalm 115:1-8:

***Not unto us, O LORD, not unto us, but unto thy name give glory, for thy mercy, and for thy truth's sake. Wherefore should the heathen say, Where is now their God? But our God is in the heavens: he hath done whatsoever he hath pleased. Their idols are silver and gold, the work of men's hands. They have mouths, but they speak not: eyes have they, but they see not: They have ears, but they hear not: noses have they, but they smell not: They have hands, but they handle not: feet have they, but they walk not: neither speak they through their throat. They that make them are like unto them; so is every one that trusteth in them.***

***Psalm 115:1-8***

Idol worship has placed many lives into severe bondage due to being cursed.

Psalm 115:5 says; ***“THEY HAVE MOUTHS BUT THEY SPEAK NOT.”***

That explains why these and their offspring encounter some hindrances in their witness for Christ simply because **“their mouths are cursed!”**

The victim has a great deal of difficulty receiving the baptism of the Holy Spirit; those of them who claim to be baptized by the Holy Ghost only **“speak fake”** and **“powerless tongues.”**<sup>43</sup>

The **mouths** of these always attract problems, in that;

**“THEIR MOUTHS ARE THE SOURCES OF THEIR PROBLEMS DUE TO THE CURSE OF IDOLATRY.”**

## **6.2 Detecting Curses in Your Life**

One must know how to identify curses so that you can reject them before they ever find a landing place in one's life.

To prevent a curse from being attached to your life you must pray for a spirit of discernment to operate in your life in order to detect these curses afar off.

### **6.2.1 The Three Basic Methods of Detecting Curses<sup>44</sup>**

According to Olukoya these are three steps one can use to detect curses in your life.

#### **6.2.1.1 Knowledge of Biblical Curses**

There are around 70 specific sins in the Bible that would bring curses upon people. Search the scriptures to be sure you are not involved in any sin.

---

<sup>43</sup> Olukoya Dr DK (2001) Dealing with Hidden Curses. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries, p. 93.

<sup>44</sup> Ibid, p. 82.

Following is a table referring to some of the most common sins that do result in a person or generation being cursed:

Adulterous men and women (Numbers 5:27).
Disobedience to the Lord's commandment (Deuteronomy 11:28).
Idolatry (Exodus 20:5).
Those who keep or own cursed objects (Deuteronomy 7:25-26).
The earth is cursed by reason of man's disobedience (Isaiah 24:3-6).
Those who rob God of tithe and offering (Malachi 3:9).
All fornicators and adulterers (Job 24:15-18).
The proud (Psalm 119:21).
Those who place their trust in man rather than the Lord (Jeremiah 17:5).
Those who reward evil for good (Proverbs 17:13).
Illegitimate Children (Deuteronomy 23:2).
Those who are involved in witchcraft (Exodus 22:18).
Those who follow horoscope (what the stars say) (Deuteronomy 17:2-5).
Those who do no discipline their children (I Samuel 2:17, 27-36).
Those who refuse to warn others of sin (Ezekiel 3:18-21).
All homosexuals and lesbians including those who practise oral sex (Leviticus 20:13).
Having children out of wedlock (Deuteronomy 23:2).
When you refuse to forgive others. After asking God to forgive you.
Those who sacrifice to false gods (Exodus 22:20).
Necromancers and fortune tellers (Leviticus 20:27).
Those who are carnally minded (Romans 8:6).
Those who lie – curse of death. (Revelation 21:8).

**Table 12: Some Common Curses<sup>45</sup>**

---

<sup>45</sup> Olukoya Dr DK (2001) Dealing with Hidden Curses. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries, p. 84-89.

First and for most one must understand that if you refuse to come to the help of the Lord, you are under a curse.

Judges 5:23 states as follows; ***“Curse ye Meroz, said the angel of the LORD, curse ye bitterly the inhabitants thereof; because they came not to the help of the LORD, to the help of the LORD against the mighty.”***

The penalty for sin is death, hence, any unrepented sin could result in a curse.

Deuteronomy 21:22-23 states;

***And if a man have committed a sin worthy of death, and he be to be put to death, and thou hang him on a tree: His body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but thou shalt in any wise bury him that day; (for he that is hanged is accursed of God;) that thy land be not defiled, which the LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance.***

***Deuteronomy 21:22-23***

#### **6.2.1.2 Compare Your Life with the Blessings that God Has Promised Those who Love Him**

Be honest and ask yourself; is your life characterized by blessings; are you a borrower or a lender; are you always falling from one sickness to another; do you enjoy God's favour?

The questions one should ask oneself are; do you enjoy peace in your life? What does your relationship with God or your wife look like? Are you speaking death or life all the time?

If your answers to these questions are profitable, then you are living a blessed life! However; the truth is that **“there is no grey area, you are either blessed or cursed!”**

### 6.2.1.3 Searching for the Effect of Living a Cursed Life

The following are all possibilities of an accursed existence.<sup>46</sup>

• Poverty	• Torments
• Regular traumatic experiences	• Cycle of tragedies
• Debts	• Failure
• Insanity	• Defeat
• Chronic Sickness	• Spiritual hindrances
• Domination by inferior forces	• Suicidal tendencies
• Abandonment by God and man	

**Table 13:** Effects of possible curse in a person's live

The biggest sign of a curse in a person's life is the abstinence of heartfelt repentance. II Chronicles 7:14 reads; ***“If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land.”***

Evidence of some other possible curses are: Arthritis at young age, asthma, bedwetting, serious eye trouble, diabetics and alcoholism.<sup>47</sup>

### 6.3 A Biblical Case Study of a Hidden Curse

Joshua 6:26 reads; ***“And Joshua adjured them at that time, saying, Cursed be the man before the LORD, that riseth up and buildeth this city Jericho: he shall lay the foundation thereof in his firstborn, and in his youngest son shall he set up the gates of it.”***

---

<sup>46</sup>46 Olukoya Dr DK (2001) Dealing with Hidden Curses. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries, p. 91.

<sup>47</sup>47 Olukoya Dr DK (2001) Dealing with Hidden Curses. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries, p. 97.



Joshua decided to do something in order to ensure that the walls of this city would never be built again; Joshua issued a curse upon Jericho.

In addition I Kings 16:34 reads; ***“In his days did Hiel the Bethelite build Jericho: he laid the foundation thereof in Abiram his firstborn, and set up the gates thereof in his youngest son Segub, according to the word of the LORD, which he spake by Joshua the son of Nun.”***

The curse continued to take effect five hundred years after it has been issued. Hiel lost his first son at the commencement of the building and lost his last son at the time of completion. According to the dictates of the curse. With the appropriate knowledge of the terms of the curse the problem could have been solved if the curse had been cancelled by someone with Joshua’s level of prophetic anointing.

## **6.4 Breaking Hidden Curses**

Hidden curses must be dealt with in order for a person to be free. To become a winner in spiritual warfare one must observe the rules of the battles and you need to follow the guidelines which will guarantee your and the victim’s safety and victory.

### **6.4.1 Acknowledge the Source of Your Power**

Our power comes from the headquarters of power in the universe located in the third heaven. Jesus Christ is the Ultimate Authority by Which Curses are Broken through the mighty working power of the Holy Spirit.

### **6.4.2 Learn How to use Your Spiritual Weapons**

God gave us powerful spiritual weapons. These are: prayer, fasting, the Word spoken and applied, praise and worship and the sword of the Spirit.

### 6.4.3 Identify Your Enemies

Identify the evil personalities behind what you are going through and locate the root cause of the problem. Failure to do this will render you ineffective grasping at straws.

### 6.4.4 Target the Weakness of Your Enemies

Satan operates through fear and lies but he is fighting a war which he already lost. It is important that you know the limitation and the weakness of your enemy or else there is no point fighting a battle you are about to lose prior to it starting.

### 6.4.5 Be Battle ready – Be Alert

Satan never gives notice to his victims. Be ready for battle every moment of the day; however, to be ready at all times, one must be free from sin! Sin will weaken you and the enemy will recognize any weak spot in your effort.

### 6.4.6. The Victory is Yours

In all you do; rejoice for the joy of the Lord is your strength. Practice self-control and flee from any sin.

- **Final Words:** Some cases do prove stubborn and resistant to prayer and it seems as if you reached a dead end. This quite often happens when on the verge of breakthrough (See Chapter Three – Spirit of Kadesh Barnea). You will discover at that point that an invisible barrier has been mounted against the victim's life.

Never get embittered as this can become both frustrating to the minister and the victim. Pray and ask the Lord to open your eyes and you will recognize the activities of some powerful forces that do not operate according to natural laws.

Understand the fact that many people are operating under hidden curses; these hidden curses can constitute great barriers to healing, spiritual growth, and breakthroughs.

Note that hidden curses can hinder one from being healed which necessitated breaking the curses of infirmity.<sup>48</sup> Prayers of healing will not work if the victim is under the umbrella of infirmity. Likewise the prayer of prosperity will not work until the curse of poverty is broken.

Hidden curses are hidden as the name implies. The curses are generally enforced by the main spirit assigned to affect it. They stay in hiding and carry out clever operations until their victims are led to the point to total destruction.

## 6.5 Solution to Braking Curses

Galatians 3:13-14 reads; ***“Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree: That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.”***

In adding; ***“Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;”*** (Colossians 2:14: ).

From the above we note that the Bible affirms that curses can be cancelled through the power of the Lord Jesus Christ.

### 6.5.1 Practical Steps in Order to Cancel Evil Curses

The following steps can be followed as a guide line to cancel evil curses:

---

<sup>48</sup> Olukoya Dr DK (2001) Dealing with Hidden Curses. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries, p. 54.

- |   |
|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Seek the Lord's face.</li></ul>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Repent form all known and unknown sins.</li></ul>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Confess the sins that are known to you. Ask God to forgive you the sins you may not remember.</li></ul> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Renounce all ancestral covenants.</li></ul>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Repent of all ancestral sins.</li></ul>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Accept God's forgiveness and forgive yourself.</li></ul>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Forgive all who have ever offended you.</li></ul>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Renounce all contact with demonic religions or objects.</li></ul>                                       |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Destroy any demonic object in your possession, including the devil's music.</li></ul>                   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Break the curse by aggressive prayers.</li></ul>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Cast out every demon of curse, because there is always a demon that ensures the curse works.</li></ul>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Claim the blessings.</li></ul>  |

**Table 14:** Practical Steps to Cancel Evil Curses<sup>49</sup>

One cannot move into a new realm of divine blessings unless one is completely free from every known and unknown curse.

It must be stressed that the person must possess his possession in Christ – take back the ground from the enemy.

#### **4.5.2 Prayer Point – Spiritual Warfare Prayer**

The Christian Counsellor must lead the victim in prayer to be expressed verbally and with meaning.

---

<sup>49</sup> Olukoya Dr DK (2001) Dealing with Hidden Curses. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries, pp. 98,99.

Following are some prayer points that can be followed:

- I break and I loose myself from every hereditary curse, in the name of Jesus Christ.
- Every demonic bondage through parents or ancestors break, in the name of Jesus Christ.
- Lay your two hands on your head as you take this prayer point: I choose blessings and I refuse curses, in the name of Jesus Christ.
- I Choose life and not death, in the name of Jesus Christ.
- Lay your two hands on your head: Every demon of curse release me, in the name of Jesus Christ.
- Let fire fall and destroy every work of the enemy, in the name of Jesus Christ.

By no other name can a curse be broken or cancelled. Matthew 28:8 testifies to that;

***And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.***

***Matthew 28:18***

Brand states that deliverance and braking of curses are not restricted to any language; in all of 25 years plus, Afrikaans was the Language Brand used with great success.<sup>50</sup>

## **5 CONCLUSION**

Sin renders Christian to demonic affliction and infiltration. The mind of a person is Satan's playground for it is here where the Battle against sin is won or lost. Every sinful dead starts with a sinful thought which have a negative impact on a person's behaviour to the extent where strongholds form in the mind. This results in repetitive sinful patters in a person's life, whether saved or unsaved.

---

<sup>50</sup> Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2012) The Way Out of Captivity, Diepsloot Seminaar. PTA.

Scripture tells us that what the heart is full of, the mouth overflows. All evil thoughts originate in the heart, this leads to the mind contemplating these which results in one of two scenarios. The Christian who is of sound mind will discern this attack and bring every sinful thought to obedience according to the Word of God. The other scenarios are one of where Satan exercises mind control due to bondage of some kind as a result of sin.

Even partial control of a victim's mind will result in the person through life being manipulated to the extent where these evil thoughts are expressed verbally. A person either speaks life or death in this case it is death in the form of lies, deceit or things sexually perverse of nature. Satan wants control of a person's mind and his mouth for the fruit of one's lips is either blessing or curses.

Many Christians are plagued with hidden curses in their lives. Sin in the previous generations, if not dealt with will result in curses being passed down through the blood line from generation to generation. As a result we find that Christians are unable to shake off certain sinful habits which will only stop once the curses are detected and cancelled.

Pertaining to the mouthpiece, the "strong man" or "lying spirit" is the main culprit exercising control over the mouth of a believer. In this Satan wants to use the mouth of Christians against them not only to defile them but to speak lies and destruction.

**Liars are amongst these as stated in Revelation 21:8 which will not inherit the Kingdom of heaven** and as such Satan's aim pertaining to the mouth is three fold.

- To use it as weapon to defile the Christians mouth.
- To use it as a weapon to speak destruction and death over himself and others.
- To get the person to lie persistently and deceive him in accepting the lie as the new truth.

Satan's aim is to use people's mouth as weapons for mass destruction. The Bible teaches us that God is Holy and as we ought to be as well. This includes every member of the body and the tongue. As such God expects us to speak life and not to defile the mouth by using it as a sex organ for sexual gratification.

Jesus Christ is our deliverer and His will for us is to be "whole" in spirit, body and soul. Nothing is impossible for God. Those who lie persistently, those who are entangled in sexual perversion of which the mouth is part off; Jesus can and want to brake the strongholds in your life and lead's you out of bondage into freedom.

The choice is yours for the way to freedom starts by showing heartfelt remorse followed by making a conscious decision to want to be free and return to the Lord. If you don't ask you won't receive and it is in this that the role of the mouthpiece form captivity to freedom is realized for **"your freedom is in your mouth."**

-----oOo-----







---

Love shall finally reign throughout God's creation. There shall be no more sin, no more pain, no more tears, hunger or death. The creation shall be all that God created it to be, all that he has fought for it to be, and all that He died for it to be. All who suffered life as a nightmare, shall be vindicated. In a way we can scarcely begin to imagine, the sufferings of this nightmare, the Lord promises, will be dwarfed by the joy of creation's fulfillment when He in all His love and glory shall reign (Romans 8:18-25; II Corinthians 4:17-18; I Peter 1:6-9).

But we must not think that God's victory concerns only human welfare. To the contrary, as Christ's work was cosmic before it was anthropological, so too the Biblical proclamation of God's ultimate victory concerns the cosmos as a whole before it centers on us. The whole creation now travails under the curse of the illegitimate tyrant who has seized it, and the whole creation shall ultimately benefit when this "god of the world" is toppled and creation is freed.

Hence when the Lord has finally destroyed this anticreation tyrannical evil, He shall "restore everything, as He promised long ago through His holy prophets" (Acts 3:21 NIV). In sharp contrast to the war that has been raging for eons, God shall at this time "gather up all things in Christ, things in heaven and things on earth" (Ephesians 1:10), so that His presence may fill "all in all" (Ephesians 1:23; cf. 4:10).

Again, “among the benefactors of this cosmic restoration are all those humans who ‘have **proclaimed “yes Lord”** to the fractious invitation to accept this love and fight on His side.’”

The manifestation of Christ’s victory shall at the same time be the manifestation of Satan’s and his hierarchy’s defeat. When Light shall be fully manifested, darkness will be brought to nothing. When love shall reign universal, there shall be no longer any place among the living for speaking lies, hatred, apathy, greed, jealousy sexual perversion or any such disposition. When divine justice shall rule, and it will, all that is wrong, all that will not be reconciled, shall be punished. In short, when God’s presence and glory shall fill “all in all,” there simply shall be no place in the kingdom for anything or anyone that continues to resist Him. This is the central point of Biblical teachings on hell.

The Bible describes hell as almost the complete absence of being. Absent in hell is light, water and the blood of Jesus. For example, Scripture describes the fate of Satan, his legions and all those humans who have lied and aligned themselves with him. These entities are now unsalvageable broken vessels who do not and will not do what they were created to do; therefore, total waste, refuse. Each one had the possibility of sharing in God’s triune life throughout eternity, they are tragically now good for nothing, fit only for destruction.

All such rebels, therefore, shall be brought to nothing (Matthew 10:28; Mark 1:24; I Corinthians 1:19; 3:17; 6:13; 15:24-26; II Thessalonians 2:8; Philippians 1:28; Hebrews 2:14; 10:39; Jas 4:12; II Peter 2:12; 3:10-11; Jude 10). Under the weight of God’s justice, they shall all “perish” (Luke 13:3; John 3:16; 10:28; I Corinthians 1:18; II Corinthians 2:15; 4:3; Romans 2:12; II Thessalonians 2:10, II Peter 3:9). They are like chaff that is burned up in a fire that cannot be quenched (Matthew 3:12; 13:30; cf. Isaiah 1:31). Similarly, in the light of God’s universal rule, Scripture affirms that these rebels shall “be no more...like smoke they vanish away....the posterity of the wicked will be cut off” (Psalm 37:10, 20, 38). They “shall be as though they had never been” (Obadiah 16) and “like a dream when one awakes” (Psalm 73:20).

Along slightly different lines, having rejected the Creator of life itself, these defeated rebels can now be compared to dead, rotting, worm-infested corpses (Romans 6:21, 23; Jas 1:15; Isaiah 66:24; Mark 9:48). From yet a slightly different angle, these raging rebels can be compared to people who are thrown out of the banquet, cast “into the outer darkness” (Matthew 8:12; 22:13; 25:30).

There is no place for the wicked, angelic or human, in the kingdom of God. When the light and the life of God’s triune love and life shines sovereignly over the whole of His creation, all that is darkness, all that is against love and all that is against life must (to mix metaphors) be vanquished, extinguished, destroyed, burned up and relegated to the garbage dump “in the outer darkness.” However, this is not said to satisfy all our questions about the “topography” or “temperature” of *Gehenna* (hell) but to warn all who can still change to do so if they need to. The message is this: all enemies of God, angelic and human, liars and the sexually perverted as well as all of sinful man, shall certainly be defeated, they shall certainly be justly judged; and this judgment shall certainly be nightmarish for them. To describe it as endless fiery torment is not to exaggerate its terror (Revelation 14:9-11; 20:10; cf. Matthew 25:41, 46; Luke 16:24). In choosing against God, Satan and all his followers are forever choosing against life and love for Jesus is the way, the truth and the life (John 14:6).

The New Testament is thoroughly conditioned by a warfare worldview. In this view the whole of the cosmos is understood to be caught up in a fierce battle between two rival kingdoms. This view entails that the earth has, quite literally, become a fierce war zone and a desecrated battlefield.

Jesus entered this war zone to set up the rightful rule of God over against the illegitimate rule of Satan. Jesus’ healings, miracles, exorcisms, resurrection, as well as much of His teaching, make sense only as various aspects of a unified ministry within the context of this worldview. Within this apocalyptic context the early church understood the central significance of Christ’s death and resurrection. The cross and resurrection were, above all else, the act by which God vanquished His archenemy. Our salvation is at once the liberating result of this conquest and one further means by which God is reclaiming the earth for his glory.

## Conclusion

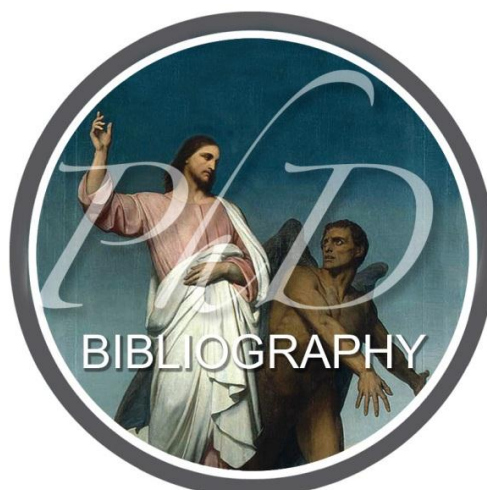
---

The fatally wounded kingdom of darkness still reigns upon the earth. Despite Christ's victory, the New Testament continues to define the Christian life in warfare terms. The outcome of the war is settled, but there are still important battles to be fought. Fighting them is what the Christian life is all about. Spiritual warfare is not a choice, it is compulsory for we are called to fight and not to dwell in passivity. "It is impossible for man in the days of ...the Church, to have to do with God without at the same time, in some way, having to do with Satan. These two...fill all existence. The confidence and hope of the Christian in all of this is that Christ has once and for all time vanquished the enemy, and that someday this victory over Satan and the cessation of all the evil that flows from him shall be perfectly manifested.

In ending; may this Book of the Law not depart from our mouths that we shall meditate on it day and night, so that we may be careful to do according to all that is written in it to go and proclaim with our mouths, the Gospel of Christ.

As fellow brothers and sisters in Christ Jesus; let's refrain from any and all forms of "lying" for liars will not spend eternal life with the Lord Jesus Christ.

-----oOo-----



---

## BOOKS

1. Aaberg Denis G (2007) *Seducing Spirits*, Xulon Press.
2. Arnold, Clinton E (1997) *Three Crucial Questions about Spiritual Warfare*. Grand Rapids.
3. Backus William (2000) *What Your Counselor Never Told You*. Minneapolis, MN; Bethany House.
4. Backus William and Chapian Marie (2000) *Telling Yourself the Truth*. USA: Bethany House Publishers.
5. Baer, Randall (1989) *Inside the New Age Nightmare*. Lafayette, LA: Huntington House.
6. Barbara Robert G. (2004) *Revelation the Fourth Son*. R.O.C.: Enlighten Noah Publishing.
7. Barbara Robert G. (2003) *Revealing the Bible's Truth*. R.O.C.: Enlighten Noah Publishing.
8. Barbara Robert G. (2004) *The Rod of Iron*. R.O.C.: Enlighten Noah Publishing.
9. Barnard Manda (2012) *Exegesis Entailing Holy Spirit Life Transformation Concerning the Immanence of Divine Healing*.
10. Barnhouse, Donald Grey (1965) *The Invisible War*. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Zondervan.
11. Basham, Don W (1972) *Deliver Us From Evil*. Grand Rapids, MI; Chosen.
12. Beeson, Ray & Mills, Kathi (1993) *Spiritual Warfare and Your Children*. Nashville, Tennessee; Nelson
13. Benner, David G (1992) *Strategic Pastoral Counseling: A Short Term Structured Model*. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker Book House.
14. Benny Hinn (1997) *Good Morning Holy Spirit*. USA: Thomas Nelson.
15. Bevere John (1997) *The Fear of the Lord*. USA: Creation House.
16. Billheimer, Paul E (1981) *Destined to Overcome*. Minneapolis, MN; Bethany House.

17. Bloomer George G (2003) *The Battle Plan, Strategies for Engaging in Spiritual Warfare*. Denver CO; Legacy Publishers International.
18. Bobgan, Martin & Deidre (1981) *The Psychological Way: The Spiritual Way*. Bethany House Publishers.
19. Bolen Jean Shinoda (1984) *Goddess in Everywoman*. San Francisco: Harper & Row.
20. Bounds E M. *Satan - his personality-power-overthrow*. Baker Book House.
21. Bounds, E M. *Guide to Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House.
22. Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (1998) *Rejection: Healing of Bruises and Wounds*. PTA: Râdâh Academy, Self-published.
23. Brand Dr Anke (2010) *Sexual Sins Deriving from Alternative Lifestyles Destructing Marriage without God's Securing Intervention*. SA, Self-published.
24. Brand, Dr Connie. *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Startegie*. Unpublished. Radah Academy.
25. Brand Connie M.J. (2000) *Spiritual Warfare Three, The Sin War*. SA: Self-published, Preface.
26. Brand Dr Connie (2002) *Sexual Brokenness and Deviation. Part III*. Pretoria: Self-Published.
27. Brand Connie M.J (2005) *An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective*.
28. Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ . (2006) *Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence \pertaining to the Structures and Startegies to destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Volume 1*: PTA: Self-published.
29. Brand Dr Connie (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Two; The Kingdom Principles of the Bible as Root to Spiritual Warfare*. Pretoria: Self-Published.
30. Brand Dr Connie MJ (2009) *From Bondage to Freedom*. Conference held at Pretoria.
31. Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ (2012) *Article for Conference*.
32. Brand Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) *Lecture: Satan's Assault*. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng
33. Brand, Prof Dr Connie MJ. (2012) *The Way Out of Captivity*. Diepsloot Seminar. Pretoria.
34. Brand Prof Dr Connie MJ, *Personal conversation*, Pretoria 2013.
35. Bridges Jerry (1983) *The Practice of Godliness*. Colorado: NavPress.
36. Brooke Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy to Silence the Son of God*. usa. Havest House Publishers.
37. Brooks, Thomas (1984) *Precious Remedies Against Satan's Devices*. The Banner of Truth Trust.
38. Brown Rebecca (1992) *Prepare for War*. New Kensington, PA; Whitaker House.
39. Brown Rebecca M.D. (1995) *Unbroken Curses*. USA: Whitaker House.
40. Brown Tom (2008) *Devil Demons and Spiritual Warfare*. USA: Whitaker House
41. Bubeck Mark I. (1975) *The Adversary*. USA: Moody Press.
42. Bubeck Mark I. (1984) *Overcoming the Adversary*. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago.

43. Bubeck Mark I. (1997) Raising Lambs Among Wolves. USA: Alpha Publishers
- Bufford, Rodger K (1988) Counselling and the Demonic. Dallas, Texas; Word.
44. Chase, Paul (1992) The Soldier, The Athlete, The Farmer. USA: Keys to Freedom Ministries.
45. Cho, Paul Y. (1984) Prayer: Key to Revival. Pta S.A.: Struik Christian Books.
46. Christenson Evelyn (1990) Battling the Prince of Darkness. UK: Scripture Press.
47. Christenson, Evelyn (1991) Battling the princes of Darkness. England; Scripture Press.
48. Clark, Jonas (1995) Exposing Spiritual Witchcraft. Florida; Spirit of Life Publishing.
49. Clow, Barbara Hand (2001) Liquid Light of Sex. Rochester, Vermont; Bear & Company.
50. Collins, Francis S. (2006) The Language of God. USA: Free Press.
51. Collins, Gary R (1988) Can you trust psychology? Downer's Grove, IL; InterVarsity.
52. Comiskey, Andrew (1989) Pursuing Sexual Wholeness. USA: Creation House.
53. Conway DJ (2002) Moon Magic: Myth & Magic. Crafts & Recipes. Rituals & Spells. Llewellyn Publication.
54. Copeland Kenneth and Gloria (1998) Pursuit of His Presence. USA: Kenneth Copland Publishers.
55. Cronje Frans (2011) Sermon on Rejection. PTA. Râdâh Academy.
56. Cunningham Loren (1991) Daring to Live on the Edge. England: Hodder and Stoughton.
57. Dalton, W J (1965) Christ's Proclamation to the Spirits, Analecta Biblica, no. 23. Rome; Pontifical Biblical Institute Press.
58. Diamond, S A (1996) Anger, madness, and the daemonic. Albany, NY; State University of New York Press.
59. Dickason Fred C (1990) Demon Possession & the Christian. Westchester, Illinois; Crossway Books.
60. Dickason Fred C. (1993) Larsons Book of Spiritual Warfare. USA: Thomas Nelson Inc.
61. Durant Will and Ariel (1968) The Lessons of History. Simon and Schuster.
62. Ferrell Dr Ana Mendez (2009) Regions of Captivity. Printed in the USA: Voice of Light Ministries.
63. Ferrell Ana Mendez. ( ) High Level Warfare. USA. Voice of Light Ministries.
64. Ferrell Ana Mendez (2006) Eat my Felsh, Drink my Blood. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries.
65. Ferrell Emerson L (2009) Immersed in Him. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries.
66. Flesh: - Godwin, Rick (1999) Flying Higher. USA: Creation House.
67. Ford Michael W (2006) Book of the Witch Moon Choronzon Edition. Succubus Publishing.
68. Foster Richard (1985) Money, Sex and Power. USA: Harper and Row.
69. Frangipane Francis (1994) The Three Battle Grounds; The Mind, The Church, The Heavenly Places. USA: New Wine.
70. Garret, Susan (1939) The Demise of the Devil: Magic and the Demonic in Luke's Writings. Minneapolis; Fortress.

71. Garrison Mary (1976) How to Try a Spirit – By their fruits you will know the. USA: Unknown.
72. Garrison, Mary (1980) How to Conduct Spiritual Warfare. Hudson, Florida. Gaston Bachelard,
73. Geilser N (1999) The Problem of Evil. Baker Encyclopaedia of Christian Apologetics; Baker Books.
74. Geisler Norman L (1978) The Roots of Evil. Grand Rapids; Zondervan. (1976) Christian Apologetics. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker Book House.
75. Gibson. Noel & Phyl (1993) Evicting Demonic Intruders. West Sussex, England; New Wine Press.
76. Goldhill Simon (2004) Love, Sex & Tragedy. USA: London.
77. Green, Michael (1981) Exposing the Prince of Darkness. Ann Arbor, MI; Servant Publications.
78. Griffin, David (1991) God, Power and Evil; Evil Revisited: Responses and Reconsiderations. Albany; SUNY Press.
79. Griscom Chris (1987) Ecstasy is a New Frequency. New Mexico: Bear & Company.
80. Gurnall, William (2002) The Christian in complete armour, Vol 1. Finland: The Banner of Truth Trust.
81. Gurnall, William (2002) The Christian in complete armour, Vol 2. Finland; The Banner of Truth Trust.
82. Hammond, Frank D (1991) Demons and Deliverance in the ministry of Jesus. Impact Christian Books.
83. Hammond Frank (2004) Demons and Deliverance. USA: Synergy Publishers.
84. Haniah Laneen Anavah (2004) The Spirits of Sexual Perversion Handbook. Victoriously Free! Publishing.
85. Harris Joshua (2003) Sex is not the problem (lust is). USA: Multnomah Publishers, Inc.
86. Hawkins, Craig S. (1998) Goddess Worship, Witchcraft and Neo-Paganism. Grand Rapids, MI; Zondervan.
87. Heimbichner Graig (2003) Blood on the Altar. USA: Independent History and Research.
88. Hickey, Marilyn (2000) Breaking Generational Curses. Tulsa, Oklahoma; Harrison House.
89. Hillesum, Etty (1983) An Interrupted Life. New York; Pocket Books.
90. Hilton Donald L (2009) He Restoreth My Soul. USA, Forward Press Publishing, LLC.
91. Hislop, Alexander (1959) The Two Babylons. Neptune, New Jersey; Loizeaux Brothers.
92. Holiday Pat (2007) Sexual Magic. Incubi & Succube. Asmodeus & Osmodeus. Florida: Agape Publishers.
93. Horrobin Peter (2003) Healing through Deliverance. Kent, UK; Sovereign World.
94. Horrobin, Peter J (1991) Healing Through Deliverance. Volume 2. The Practice of Deliverance Ministry. Kent, UK: Sovereign Word.
95. Huch, Larry (2006) 10 Curses that Block the Blessing. USA: Whitaker House.
96. Huggins Larry (1993) The Blood Speaks. USA: Bridge Publishing.
97. Ing, Richard (1996) Spiritual Warfare. USA: Whitaker House.



98. Jackson Pamela (2002) Preparing for the Battle. ? : Bra Boy & Wilkins Jr J.J.
99. Jacobs Cindy (1997) Possessing the Gates of the Enemy. USA: Chosen Books.
100. Jacobs, Cindy (2001) Deliver Us From Evil. Vereeniging; Christian Art Publishers.
101. Jerry Drs Robeson Carol (1985) Strong Man's His Name ... What's His Name? USA: Whitaker House
102. Johnson, Mark (1992) Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded. Ann Arbor, MI; Servant Publications.
103. Joyner, Rick (2002) Breaking the Power of Evil. Shippenburg, PA; Destiny Image Publishers. (1995) Mobilizing The Army of God. U.S.A; Morningstar Publications. (1994) Mobilizing the Army of God. United States in America; Whitaker House.
104. Jung, Carl Gustav (1977) Psychology and the Occult. Princeton University Press.
105. Kinnaman, Gary D. (1990) How to Overcome the Darkness. Grand Rapids, MI; Chosen Books.
106. Koch Kurt (1972) Between Christ and Satan. West Germany: Evangelization Publishers
107. Kraft Charles H. (1993) Deep Wounds/Deep Healing. USA. Regal Books.
108. Kuyper Abraham (2009) Concise Works of the Holy Spirit. USA: AMG Publishers.
109. Kylstra, Chester & Betsy (2001) Restoring the Foundation -An Integrated Approach to Healing Ministry, 2nd Edition. Florida; Proclaiming His Word Publications.
110. Knight George W (2005) The Illustrated Bible Dictionary. Thailand: Barbour Publishing, p. 290.
111. Ladd, George E (1964) Jesus and the Kingdom. New York; Harper and Row.
112. La Fontane, J.S (1985) Initiation: Ritual Drama and Secret Knowledge. UK; Penguin Books.
113. LaVey Anton (1998) Satan Speaks. Los Angeles: Feral House.
114. Legako, Pat, Gribble, Cindy (2007) Deliverance: Rescuing God's People: Developing and Operating the Ministry. Tate Publishing and Enterprises.
115. Levenson, Jon (1988) Creation and the Persistence of Evil: The Jewish Drama of Divine Omnipotence. San Francisco; Harper & Row.
116. Lewis Allen David (1992) Smashing the Gates of Hell. USA: New Leaf Press.
117. Lewis C.S. (1998) Joy. Hong Kong: Nelson Publishers.
118. Lewis C.S. (1998) Faith. Hong Kong: Nelson Publishers.
119. Liardon Roberts (1964) Breaking Controlling Powers. USA: Harrison House
120. Liardon, Roberts (1994) School of the Spirit: Operating Powerfully in the Spirit Realm. Orlando, Florida; Creation House.
121. Liebenberg Prof Wimpie A (2005) Seminar - "God's Plan for the Ages." Pretoria.
122. Ling, T (1961) The Significance of Satan: New Testament Demonology and Its Contemporary Significance. London; SPCK.
123. Lutzer Erwin W. (2002) Seven Snares of the Enemy. Cape Town SA: Christian Art Publishers

124. MacArthur, John (1996) *The Body Dynamic*. United States of America; Chariot Victor Publishing.
125. MacGregor, G H C (1955) *Principalities and Powers: The Cosmic Background of Paul's Thought*, NTS 1.
126. Malan, Dr Amelia (2008) *Exegetical Evidence Pertaining to the Immanence of the Eternal Feminine from Antiquity Culminating in the Dawn of the Age of Aquarius*. Pretoria: Self Published.
127. Malan Dr Christina EM (2010) *The Perversion of Mankind through Sexual Brokenness and Deviation with Special Reference to Homosexuality, Destroying God's Purpose for Godly Bloodlines*. SA: Self-published.
128. Malan Dr Tessie (2013) *Seminar: The Dark Side of Leadership*. Rādāh Academy: Pretoria.
129. Marrs Wanda (1989) *New Age Lies to Women*. Austin, Texas: Living Truth Publishers.
130. Martin, Walter (1992) *The Kingdom of the Cults*. Minneapolis, Minnesota; Bethany House Publishers.
131. Marzulli, L. A. (2004) *The Revealing: The Time Is Now*. Grand Rapids, MI; Zondervan.
132. McClain Alva J (1968) *The Greatness of the Kingdom*. Chicago; Moody.
133. McDowell Josh (1998) *The Father Connection*. USA: Broadman & Holman.
134. McQuate Scott D. (1007) *Blue Print for Bondage*. USA:
135. Mendez Ferrell Dr Ana. (1010) *Regions of Captivity*. USA: Destiny Image.
136. Michigan; Baker. (1992) *Powers of Darkness: Principalities and Powers in Paul's Letters*.
137. Moore Thomas. (1998) *The Soul of Sex*. USA: Harer Collins Publishers.
138. Morris Dr. Henry (2008) *The Long War Against God*. USA: Master Books.
139. Mullen Michael (2005) *War of the Angels*. USA: Autor House Morrison, C D (1960) *The Powers That Be: Earthly Rulers and Demonic Powers in Romans 13:1-7, SBT2/29*. Naperville, Ill.; Allenson.
140. Munroe Myles (1992) *In Pursuit of Purpose*. USA: Destiny Image,
141. Murphy Ed (1996) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville, Tennessee; Thomas Nelson Publishers.
142. Murphy Dr Ed (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare, Revised and Updated*. Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers.
143. Myers, C (1988) *Binding the Strong Man: A Political Reading of Mark's Story of Jesus*. Maryknoll, N.Y.; Orbis.
144. Nash, Ronald (1988) *Faith and Reason*. Zondervan. Naydler, Jeremy (1996) *Temple of the Cosmos*. Vermont; Inner Traditions.
145. Nee Watchman (1998) *The Spiritual Man. Volume 1*. CA: Living Stream Ministries.
146. Newport Trevor ( ) *Divine Appointments*. Self Published
147. North, Gary (1986) *Unholy Spirits: Occultism and New Age Humanism*. Fort Worth; Dominion Press.
148. Olukoya Dr DK (2003) *Your Mouth and Your Deliverance*. Nigeria: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries.
149. Orchnson Anna E (2004) *Sexual Sin. God's Law and God's grace. Understanding the Consequences for the Individual, Family and the Nation. Then Embrace God's Grace*. SA: House of David Publishing.

150. Owens, Dr Jeff (1998) Practical Counseling Principles for Christians. USA: Owens Publications
151. Page, Sydney H.T. (1995) Powers of Evil. Grand Rapids, Michigan; Baker Books House.
152. Page, T (1995) Powers of Evil: A Biblical Study of Satan and Demons. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker.
153. Parrinder Geoffrey (1980) Sex and World Religions. London: Sheldon Press.
154. Parrott, Les (2000) The Control Freak. Wheaton, IL; Tyndale Publishers.
155. Payne Dr Karl I. (2011) Spiritual Warfare. USA: WND Books.
156. Pendley, H (1976) Views of the Demonic in Recent Religions Thought. Ph.D. diss. Southern Baptist Theological Seminary.
157. Penn-Lewis, Jessie (1996) Secrets of Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House Publication.
158. Pentecost, J Dwight (1996) Your Adversary The Devil. Grand Rapids, MI; Kregel Publications.
159. Peretti, Frank (1989) Piercing the Darkness. Westchester, Ill.; Crossway. (1986) This Present Darkness. Westchester, Ill.; Crossway.
160. Peterson, M (1982) Evil and the Christian God. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker Book House.
161. Pfeiffer, Chares F, Vow Howard F, Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers.
162. Philpott, Kent (1999) Amanual of Demonology and the Occult. USA: Zondervan Publishing House.
163. Philpott Kent (1973) A Manual of Demonology and the Occult. USA: Zon der van Publishers.
164. Plantinga, Alvin (1977) God, Freedom, and Evil. Grand Rapids; Eerdmans.
165. Powlison, David (1995) Power Encounters: Reclaiming Spiritual Warfare. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker Books.
166. Prince Derek (1986) Does Your Tongue Need Healing. USA: Whitaker House.
167. Prinse Derek (1987) Spiritual Warfare. USA: Whitaker House.
168. Prince Derek (1999) Life Changing Spiritual Power. India: Derek Prince Ministries.
169. Prince Derek (1998) They Shall Expel Demons.UK: Derek Prince Ministries.
170. Prince Derek. (2006) Lucifer Exposed. UK: Derek Prince Ministries-International.
171. Prince Derek (2007) Foundations for Righteous Living, India, Derek Prince Ministries.
172. Prince Derek (2007) You Shall Receive Power. USA: Derek Prince Ministries.
173. Prince Derek (2008) Protection from Deception. USA, Whitaker House.
174. Price Dr Paula (2006) The Prophet's Dictionary, The Ultimate Guide to Supernatural Wisdom. USA: Whitaker House.
175. Prophet, Elizabeth C. (2000) Fallen Angels and the Origins of Evil. Montana: Summit University Press.
176. Radmacher Earl (1977) You and Your Thoughts: The Power of Right Thinking. Wheaton, Tyndale House.
177. Randy C. Alcorn (1985) Christians in the Wake of the Sexual Revolution. Portland, Ore: Multnomah.

178. Richards Dr James B. (2004) Satan Unmasked. USA: Milestones INT Publishers.
179. Richards, James B. (2004) Satan Unmasked. Huntsville, AL; Impact Ministries.
180. Richards, Larry (1998) Every Good and Evil Angel in the Bible. Nashville; Thomas Nelson Publishers.
181. Rob. (2011) Demon Proofing Prayers. USA: Destiny Image Publishers Inc.
182. Robeson, Jerry & Carol (1994) Strongman's His Name II. New Kensington, PA; Whitaker House.
183. Robeson Drs Jerry & Carol (1985) Strong Man's His Name ...What's His Game. USA: Shiloh Publishing.
184. Russell, Jeffrey Burton (1972) Witchcraft in the Middle Ages. London: Cornell University Press.
185. Ryle J.C., forward by Lloyd-Jones, Martyn D (1952) Holiness, Its Nature, Hindrances, Difficulties, and Roots. Great Britain: Burleigh Press.
186. Ryrie Charles (1999) Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth. Chicago: Moody Press.
187. Savard Liberty S (1992) Shattering Your Strongholds. USA: Bridge-Logos Publishers.
188. Savard Liberty (2000) Freedom Here & Now. Gainesville Florida; Bridge-Logos Publishers, Bridge-Logos Publishers.
189. Savard Liberty (2001) Keys to Understanding Soul Ties, Soul Power & Soulish Prayers. Florida: Bridge-Logos Publishers.
190. Schlier, Heinrich (1961) Principalities and Powers in the New Testament. New York; Herder and Herder. Schmidt, K L. Die Natur-und Geisteskräfte im Paulinischen Erkennen und Glauben. Publisher Unknown.
191. Schnoebelen, William & Sharon (1993) Lucifer Dethroned. Chino, CA; Chick Publications.
192. (1991) Masonry Beyond the Light. Chino, CA; Chick Publications. (1990) Wicca: Satan's Little White Lie. Chino, CA; Chick Publications.
193. Schuller Robert H (1999) Believe in the God who Believes in You. USA: Thomas Nelson Publishers.
194. Shenouda Pope H.H. III (1997) The Spirituality of Fasting. Dar El Tebaa El Kawmia.
195. Sherman Dean, (1995) Spiritual Warfare for every Christian, How to live in victory and retake the land. Seattle WA; Ywam Publishing. (1990) Spiritual Warfare For Every Christian, How to live in victory and retake the land. Seattle; Ywam Publishin g.
196. Sherrer, Quin & Garlock, Ruthanne (1991) A Woman's guide to Spiritual Warfare. Ann Arbor, MI; Servant Publications.
197. Starhawk (1989) The Spiral Dance: A Rebirth of the Ancient Religion of the Great Goddess. NY: Harper & Row.
198. Subritzky, Bill (1985) Demons Defeated. Tonbridge, England; Sovereign World.
199. Sumrall, Lester (1983) 101 Questions & Answers on Demon Powers. Tulsa, Oklahoma; Harrison House.
200. Sumrau Lester (1993) The Gifts and Ministries of the Holy Spirit. USA: Whitaker House

201. Sumrall Lester (1993) *The Names of God*. USA: Whitaker House.
202. Sumrall Dr Lester (2001) *Demonology and Deliverance*. India: Sumrall Publishing.
203. Sumrall Lester (2003) *Demons: The Answer Book*. USA: Whithmaker House.
204. Tippet Sammy (1994) *Fit for Battle*. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago.
205. Towns, Elmer (1996) *Fasting for Spiritual Break Through*. U.S.A.: Zonder Van.
206. Towns Elmer L (2006) *Concise Bible Doctrines*. USA: AMG publishers.
207. Tozer A.W. (1990) *I talk Back to the Devil*. USA: Christian Publications.
208. Tozer Dr A.W. (2007) *Tozer: Mystery of the Holy Spirit*. Florida, Bridge-Logos.
209. Tripp, Tedd (1995) *Shepherding A Child's Heart*. Wapwallopen, Shepherd Press.
210. Unger, Merrill F (1986) *Demons in the World Today*. Tyndale House.
211. Uzorma lyke Nathan (2005) *Occult Grandmaster now in Christ*. Volume One. Nigeria: Glorious People Nig. Ltd
212. Uzorma lyke N (2007) *Exposing the Rulers of Darkness in Recognition of the Highest Power*.
213. Vallotton Kris. (2012) *Spirit Wars*. USA: Chosen Books.
214. Victor George. (2007) *Hitler: The Pathology of Evil*. USA: Potomac Books Inc.
215. Vine, William E (1953) *An Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words*. London; Oliphants.
216. Vitz, Paul (1994) *Psychology As Religion: The Cult of Self-Worship*, 2nd edition. Grand Rapids; Eerdmans.
217. Wagner Peter C (1991) *Engaging the Enemy*. U.S.A: Regal Books.
218. Wagner Peter C (2001) *Confronting the Queen of Heaven*. Colorado; Wagner Publications. (1992) *Warfare Prayer*. Ventura, California; Regal Books. (1991) *Engaging the Enemy, How to Fight and Defeat Territorial Spirits*. California, USA; Regal Books. (1990) *Wrestling with Dark Angels*. Ventura, CA; Regal Books.
219. Warner Timothy M (1991) *Spiritual Warfare, Victory over the Powers of This Dark World*. Wheaton, Illinois; Crossway Books.
220. Water Mark (2005) *AMG's Encyclopedia of Jesus' Life and Time*. Tennessee, AMG Publishers.
221. Watts, Alan (1972) *This Is It*. Random House. (1959) *Beat Zen, Square Zen and Zen*. San Francisco; City Lights.
222. Welton Jonathan (2012) *Eyes of Honor*. USA: Destiny Image.
223. White Thomas B. (1990) *The Believers Guide to Spiritual Warfare*. USA: Regal Books.
224. Wiebe, B (1990) *Self-Definition and Self-Discovery in Early Christianity: A Study in Changing Horizons*. David J Hawkins and Tom Robinson (ed.) Lewiston, N.Y.; Mellen.
225. Wierwille, V. P. (1982) *Jesus Christ Our Promised Seed*. New Knoxville, Ohio; American Christian Press.
226. Wink, Walter (1984) *Naming the Powers*. Philadelphia; Fortress Press. (1986) *Unmasking the Powers*. Philadelphia; Fortress Press. (1992) *Engaging the Powers*. Minneapolis; Fortress Press. (1998) *When the Powers Fall*. Minneapolis; Fortress Press.
227. Wink Walter (1998) *Unmasking the Powers*. USA: Fortress Press.

228. Wuest, Kenneth S (1954) *In These Last Days*. Grand Rapids; Eerdmans. Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody; Massachusetts; Hendrickson Publishers.

## ARTICLES

1. **After The Fall: Washington DC 2013**  
(<http://www.theoccidentalobserver.net/2012/06/portraits-of-masters-of-porn-the-systematic-promotion-of-recreational-sex-sexual-callousness-and-sexual-deviancy/>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013

## INTERNET RESOURCES

1. **Aristotle.**  
(<http://gardenofpraise.com/ibdarist.htm>).  
Date Accessed: January 2013
2. **At Hand: The Tactics of Feminist Media Practice.**  
(<http://www.strikingdistance.com/sd9701/c3ijan97/willis/willis1.html>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
3. **Breaking Bondage The Disciple's fast.**  
(<http://www.shadesofgrace.org/2010/01/02/fasting-day-19-breaking-bondage-the-disciples-fast/>)  
Date Accessed: October 2013
4. **Bunyan Characters - Third Series, by Alexander Whyte.**  
(<http://www.gutenberg.org/files/2308/2308-h/2308-h.htm>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
5. **Caroll, Suzan (2001) Kundalini and the Divine Mother.**  
(<http://www.cabiz.net/heartlink/kundalini.htm>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
6. **Cassandra Clare: We live and breathe words.**  
(<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/words>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
7. **Catholic Faith and Reason.** (<http://www.catholicfaithandreason.org/st-basil-the-great-330-379-ad.html>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
8. **Controversial View in Spiritual Warfare.**  
(<http://www.patheos.com/blogs/jesuscreed/2013/01/15/controversial-view-in-spiritual-warfare/>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
9. **Defending Against Rumours, Lies and Propaganda.**  
([http://marketing.about.com/od/crisis\\_communication/a/public-relations-rumors-lies-propaganda.htm](http://marketing.about.com/od/crisis_communication/a/public-relations-rumors-lies-propaganda.htm)).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
10. **Definition of fellatio.: Oral stimulation of the penis, from Latin, literally, to suck**  
(<http://www.urbandictionary.com/define.php?term=fellatio>).

- Date Accessed: October 2013
11. **Descartes' View of Sense Perception.**  
(<http://jdcard.com/descar.htm>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
  12. **Diabolus: Devil In many religions, the major personified spirit of evil, ruler of Hell, and foe of God.**  
(<http://www.thefreedictionary.com/Diabolus>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
  13. **Discipleship Quotes.**  
(<http://www.tentmaker.org/quotes/discipleshipquotes.htm>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
  14. **The Doctrine of Sin.**  
(<http://bible-org/article/doctrine-sin>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
  15. **Dying with Christ Through Baptism.**  
([http://www.crossroadsinitiative.com/library\\_article/915/Buried\\_With\\_Christ\\_in\\_Baptism\\_St\\_Basil.html](http://www.crossroadsinitiative.com/library_article/915/Buried_With_Christ_in_Baptism_St_Basil.html)).  
Date Accessed: July 2013
  16. **The Essence of Christian Witness.**  
([http://www.st-benedict.org/Articles/Bearing\\_witness.htm](http://www.st-benedict.org/Articles/Bearing_witness.htm)).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
  17. **Essential Secrets of Psychotherapy: What is the "Shadow"?**  
(<http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/evil-deeds/201204/essential-secrets-psychotherapy-what-is-the-shadow>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
  18. **Eunuch: Refers to a male who may have been castrated.**  
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/eunuch>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
  19. **Exposing Prophetic Witchcraft.**  
(<http://www.jonasclark.com/prophetic-ministry/exposing-prophetic-ministry-witchcraft.html>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
  20. **Fatal Addiction: Ted Bundy's Final Interview.**  
(<http://www.pureintimacy.org/f/fatal-addiction-ted-bundys-final-interview/>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
  21. **Faith, Hope, and Love Part II**  
([http://www.kenboa.org/text\\_resources/teaching\\_letters/lens/mens/fellowship/6968](http://www.kenboa.org/text_resources/teaching_letters/lens/mens/fellowship/6968))  
Date Accessed: July 2013
  22. **Gene and Earline Moody Deliverance Manual. Sexual Deliverance Manual. Sexual Sins Summary.**  
([www.moodymanual.com/demonbuster.com/sexuals3.html](http://www.moodymanual.com/demonbuster.com/sexuals3.html))  
Date Accessed: October 2013
  23. **Gills Exposition of the Bible: Ecclesiastes 7:9-10**  
(<http://biblehub.com/exlesiastes/7-9.htm>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
  24. **Goodreads.**  
(<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/50584-your-beliefs-become-your->).

- Date Accessed: November 2012
25. **Good reads.**  
(<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/preaching>).  
Date Accessed: November 2012
26. **Healing our Spiritual Wounds.**  
(<http://yourspiritualtruth.com/2012/07/12/healing-our-spiritual-wounds/>).  
Date Accessed:
27. **How Satan Gains Control of the Mind**  
(<http://www.layevangelism.com/qreference/spiritual-warfare/spiritual-warfare7.htm>)  
Date Accessed: September 2013
28. **Language.**  
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Language>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
29. **The Lying Spirit**  
([http://ccipublishing.net/yahoo\\_site\\_admin/assets/docs/THE\\_LYING\\_SPIRIT2-5-2012.841\\_35922.pdf](http://ccipublishing.net/yahoo_site_admin/assets/docs/THE_LYING_SPIRIT2-5-2012.841_35922.pdf))  
Date Accessed: September 2013
30. **Masters of Porn: The Systematic Promotion of Sexual Deviance.**  
(<http://www.theoccidentalobserver.net/2012/06/portraits-of-masters-of-porn-the-systematic-promotion-of-recreational-sex-sexual-callousness-and-sexual-deviancy/>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
31. **Mother Goddess**  
([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mohter\\_goddess](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mohter_goddess)).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
32. **Mystery of the Iniquity.**  
(<http://mysteryoftheiniquity.com/2011/11/12/zombie-killing-machine/>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
33. **Nee Watchman. The Laten Power of the Soul.**  
(<http://www.worldinvisible.com/library/nee/5f00.0634/5f00.0634.c.htm>).  
Date Accessed: July 2013
34. **Oral sex.**  
([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oral\\_sex](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oral_sex)).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
35. **Original sin.**  
([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Original\\_sin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Original_sin)).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
36. **Is Pornography a Drug Addiction?**  
(<http://www.netnanny.com/blog/is-pornography-a-drug-addiction/>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
37. **Positive words.**  
(<http://www.creativeaffirmation.com/positive-words.html>).  
Date Accessed: February 2013
38. **Propaganda.**  
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Propaganda>)  
Date Accessed: October 2013
39. **Prophecy vs Divination.**



- (<http://freewebs.com/churchandgenocide/pvd.pdf>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
40. **Querant: An individual who goes to psychic readers – involve tarot card reading.**  
(<http://www.seadict.com/en/en/querant>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
41. **Quotes about communication.**  
(<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/communication>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
42. **Quotes About Perversion.**  
(<http://www.goodreads.com/quotes/tag/perversion>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
43. **Resist the Devil.**  
([http://www.twolisteners.org/Resist\\_The\\_Devil.htm](http://www.twolisteners.org/Resist_The_Devil.htm)).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
44. **Review on “The Regions of Captivity.**  
(<http://www.amazon.com/Regions-Captivity-Most-Powerful-Delivered/product-reviews/0768432332>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
45. **Schreck, Schreck Nikolas; Schreck Zeena (2002) Demons of the Flesh: The Complete Guide to Left-Hand Path Sex Magic. Creation Books.**  
([www.creationbooks.com](http://www.creationbooks.com))  
Date Accessed: September 2013
46. **Secrets of mind and reality.**  
(<http://www.mindreality.com/truty-about-relationship-between-god-and-satan>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
47. **Self-destructive behavior in addition prone people**  
(<http://blogs.psychcentral.com/sex-addiction/2013/10/self-destructive-behavior-in-addiction-prone-people>)  
Date Accessed: September 2013
48. **Sex, Jezebel, and The Spirit of Whoredom by Jonas Clark**  
(<http://www.jonasclark.com/spiritual-warfare-prayer/sex-dedction-jezebel-spirit-whoredoms.html#xzz2fVhOem2x>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
49. **Signed or Spoken, Children Need Natural Languages.**  
(<http://www.bcs.rochester.edu/people/newport/pdf/Bavelieretal-Cerebrum03.pdf>).  
Date Accessed: June 2013
50. **Signifiers.**  
(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/signifier>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
51. **Signifier and Signified.**  
([http://changingminds.org/explanations/critical\\_theory/concepts/signifier\\_signified.htm](http://changingminds.org/explanations/critical_theory/concepts/signifier_signified.htm)).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
52. **Sodomy.**  
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sodomy>).  
Date Accessed: July 2013

53. **Soul Ties Part 1.**  
(<http://faithfuldiplomat.com/?p=33>).  
Date Accessed: March 2013
54. **Spiritual Fasting**  
(<http://www.in5d.com/spiritual-fasting-a-source-of-power.html>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
55. **Spiritual Warfare.**  
(<http://www.raystedman.org/warfare/warfare1.html>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
56. **Spiritual Warfare.**  
(<http://www.colindye.com/2011/12/17/spiritual-warfare/>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
57. **There's a Miracle in Your Mouth.**  
([http://www.johnhamelministries.org/miracle\\_in\\_your\\_mouth.htm](http://www.johnhamelministries.org/miracle_in_your_mouth.htm)).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
58. **Three Fallacies Of Third Wave Spiritual Warfare.**  
(<http://www.deceptioninthechurch.com/threefallacies.html>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
59. **The physical effect of words, prayers, music and environment on the crystalline structure of water**  
(<http://www.highexistence.com/water-experiment/>).  
Date Accessed: March 2013
60. **Toward the Prophetic: A New Direction in the Practice of New Thought.**  
(<http://www.religion-online.org/showarticle.asp?title=3574>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
61. **Wesley John.**  
(<Http://voices.yahoo.com/20-famous-quotes-prayer-7275146.htm>).  
Date Accessed: October 2013
62. **Why people lie and the Psychology of Lying.**  
(<http://www.blifaloo.com/info/lying-why/php>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
63. **Wise Russ (2004) Goddess Worship.**  
(<http://www.Christianinformation.org/article.asp?artID=96>).  
Date Accessed: August 2013
64. **Witchcraft: The Power and Magic of Words**  
(<http://voices.yahoo.com/witchcraft-power-magic-words-451971.html?cat=7>).  
Date Accessed: September 2013
65. **A wounded spirit.**  
(<http://www.gospel.org.nz/index.php/articles/articles-by-rodney/168-a-wounded-spirit>)  
Date Accessed: September 2013

-----oOo-----



---

<b>AMP</b>	:	Amplified
<b>BBE</b>	:	Bible in Basic English
<b>GW</b>	:	God's Word
<b>NASB</b>	:	New American Standard Bible
<b>NIV</b>	:	New International Version

-----oOo-----





---

**Alchemy:** Alchemy is an influential philosophical tradition whose practitioners have, from antiquity, claimed it to be the precursor to profound powers. The defining objectives of alchemy are varied, but historically have typically included one or more of the following goals: the creation of the fabled philosopher's stone; the ability to transform base metals into the noble metals (gold or silver); and development of an elixir of life, which would confer youth and longevity.<sup>1</sup>

**Androgynous:** A person that has male and female sex organs.<sup>2</sup>

**BDSM:** BDSM is a variety of erotic practices involving dominance and submission, role-playing, restraint, and other interpersonal dynamics. Given the wide range of practices, some of which may be engaged in by people who don't consider themselves as practicing BDSM, inclusion in the BDSM community and/or subculture is usually dependent on self-identification and shared experience.<sup>3</sup>

**Crown Chakra:** The Crown Chakra is a door of universal energy and conscience; through it you can reach a higher state of awareness. Sahasrara leads you beyond materialism to the true nature of life which is abundant in joy, purpose and curiosity. The guidance begins outside yourself, but during this process you will find inner direction.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Alchemy. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alchemy>).

<sup>2</sup> Androgynous. (<http://www.thefreedictionary.com/androgynous>).

<sup>3</sup> BDSM. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/BDSM>).

<sup>4</sup> Crown Chakra. (<http://balancechakra.com/?CategoryID=548&ArticleID=821>).

**DNA: Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)** is a molecule that encodes the genetic instructions used in the development and functioning of all known living organisms and many viruses. DNA is a nucleic acid; alongside proteins and carbohydrates, nucleic acids compose the three major macromolecules essential for all known forms of life.<sup>5</sup>

**Homosexuality:** An observance of ancient pagan fertility rites where persons of the same sex copulate in worship of the old spirits that required fecundity offerings. The Bible calls male homosexuality sodomy, because that is what the fertility gods of primarily eunuch and prostituting men submitted to in supplying sexual favors for the ancient rulers, worshippers, and the deities they served.<sup>6</sup>

**Humanism:** is a group of philosophies and ethical perspectives which emphasize the value and agency of human beings, individually and collectively, and generally prefers individual thought and evidence (rationalism, empiricism) over established doctrine or faith (fideism).<sup>7</sup>

**Incest:** Sexual intercourse between persons so closely related that they are forbidden by law to marry.<sup>8</sup> Leviticus 18:6 "*You must never have sexual intercourse with a close relative, for I am the Lord.*" Leviticus 20:11, 12, 17, 19-21; Deuteronomy 22:30; 27:20, 22, 23.

**Kundalini Yoga:** Kundalini yoga (Sanskrit kuṇḍalinī-yoga कुण्डलिनी योग), also known as laya yoga, is a school of yoga. Based on a 1935 treatise by Sivananda Saraswati, kundalini yoga was influenced by the tantra and shakta schools of Hinduism.<sup>9</sup>

**Larynx:** the part of your throat that contains the vocal cords.<sup>10</sup>

**Loshon Hora:** The Hebrew term lashon hara (or loshon hora) (Hebrew לִשׁוֹן הָרָע; "evil tongue") is the halakhic term for derogatory speech about another person.<sup>11</sup>

**New Age:** The New Age movement is a Western spiritual movement that developed in the second half of the 20th century. Its central precepts have been described as "drawing on both Eastern and Western spiritual and metaphysical traditions and infusing them with influences from self-help and motivational psychology, holistic health, parapsychology, consciousness research and quantum physics".[2] The term New Age refers to the coming astrological Age of Aquarius.<sup>12</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup>DNA. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/DNA>)

<sup>6</sup> Price Dr Paula (2006) The Prophet's Dictionary, The Ultimate Guide to Supernatural Wisdom. USA: Whitaker House, p. 265.

<sup>7</sup> Humanism. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Humanism>)

<sup>8</sup>Incest. (<http://www.thesaurus.com/dictionary/incest>).

<sup>9</sup> Kundalini yoga. ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kundalini\\_yoga](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kundalini_yoga)).

<sup>10</sup> Larynx: (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/larynx>)

<sup>11</sup> Lashon hara. ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lashon\\_hara](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lashon_hara)).

<sup>12</sup> New Age. ([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New\\_Age](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_Age)).

**Swinging:** Swinging or (rarely) partner swapping is a non-monogamous behavior, in which singles or partners in a committed relationship engage in sexual activities with others as a recreational or social activity.<sup>13</sup>

-----oOo-----

---

<sup>13</sup> Swinging. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Swinging>).

## Terms and Definitions

---






---

## LIST OF FIGURES:

Figure 1 – Water before prayer .....	31
Figure 2 – Water after prayer .....	31
Figure 3 – You make me sick, I will kill you .....	31
Figure 4 –Adolph Hitler .....	31
Figure 5 – Thank you .....	32
Figure 6 – Love and Appreciation .....	32
Figure 7 – The Larynx .....	41
Figure 8 – After The Fall .....	246

## LIST OF TABLES:

Table 1 – Manifestations of the perverse spirit .....	54
Table 2 – Some of the Manifestations of the Spirit of Divination and the Familiar Spirit .....	64
Table 3 – Objects that are used in fortunetelling .....	65
Table 4 – Qualifications for Witnessing .....	124
Table 5 – Hebrew words describing sin .....	178
Table 6 – Greek words describing sin .....	179
Table 7 – Ruling spirits .....	207

---

Table 8 – Additional ruling spirits.....	208
Table 9 – Ways that soul ties can be created .....	217
Table 10 – Spirits used by Ruling Spirit of Mind Control.....	283
Table 11 – Other spirits to be cast out along with ruling spirit.....	283
Table 12 – Some Common Curse .....	310
Table 13 – Effects of possible curse in a person's live .....	312
Table 14 – Practical Steps to Cancel Evil Curses.....	316

-----oOo-----